This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

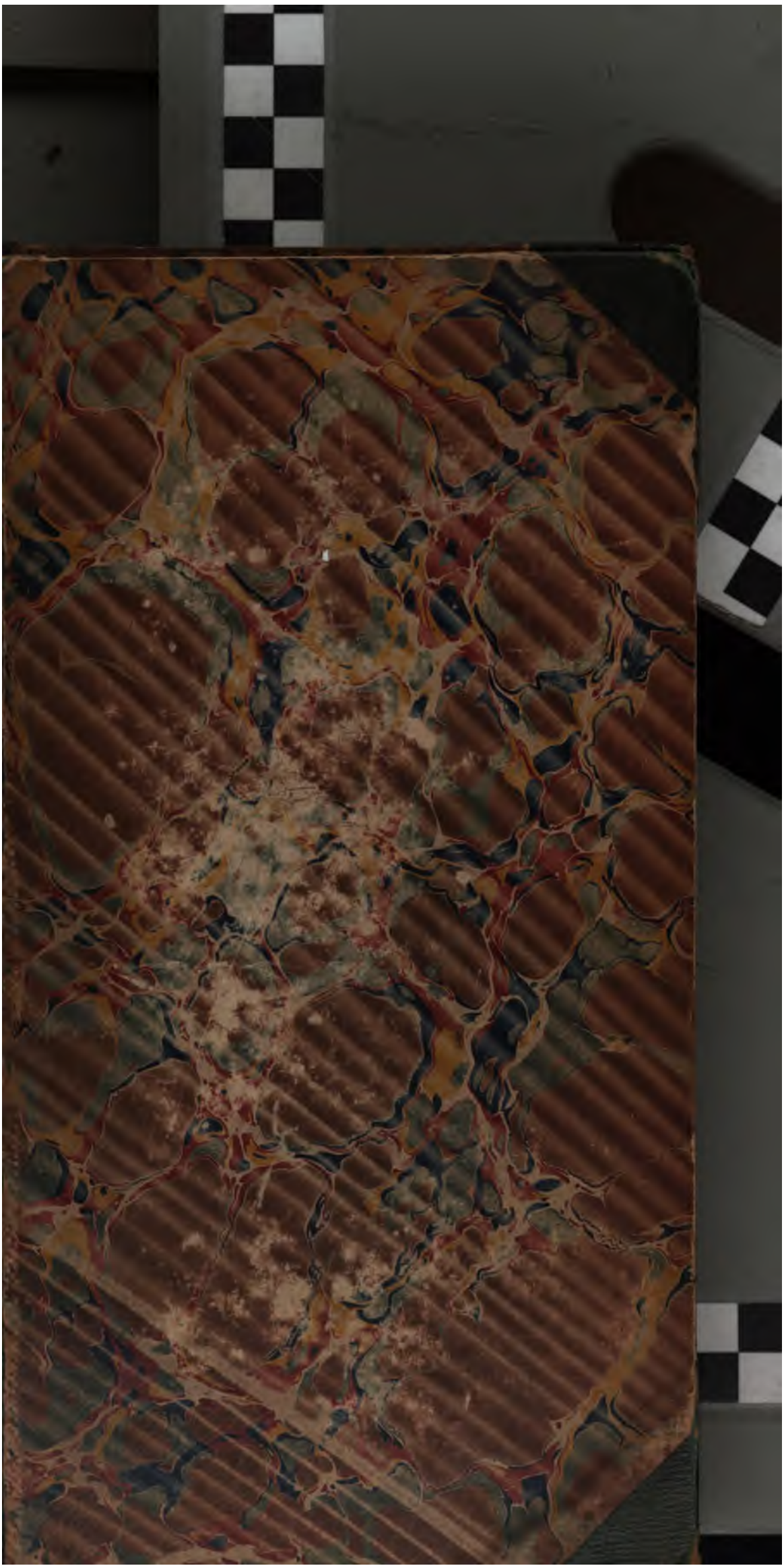
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

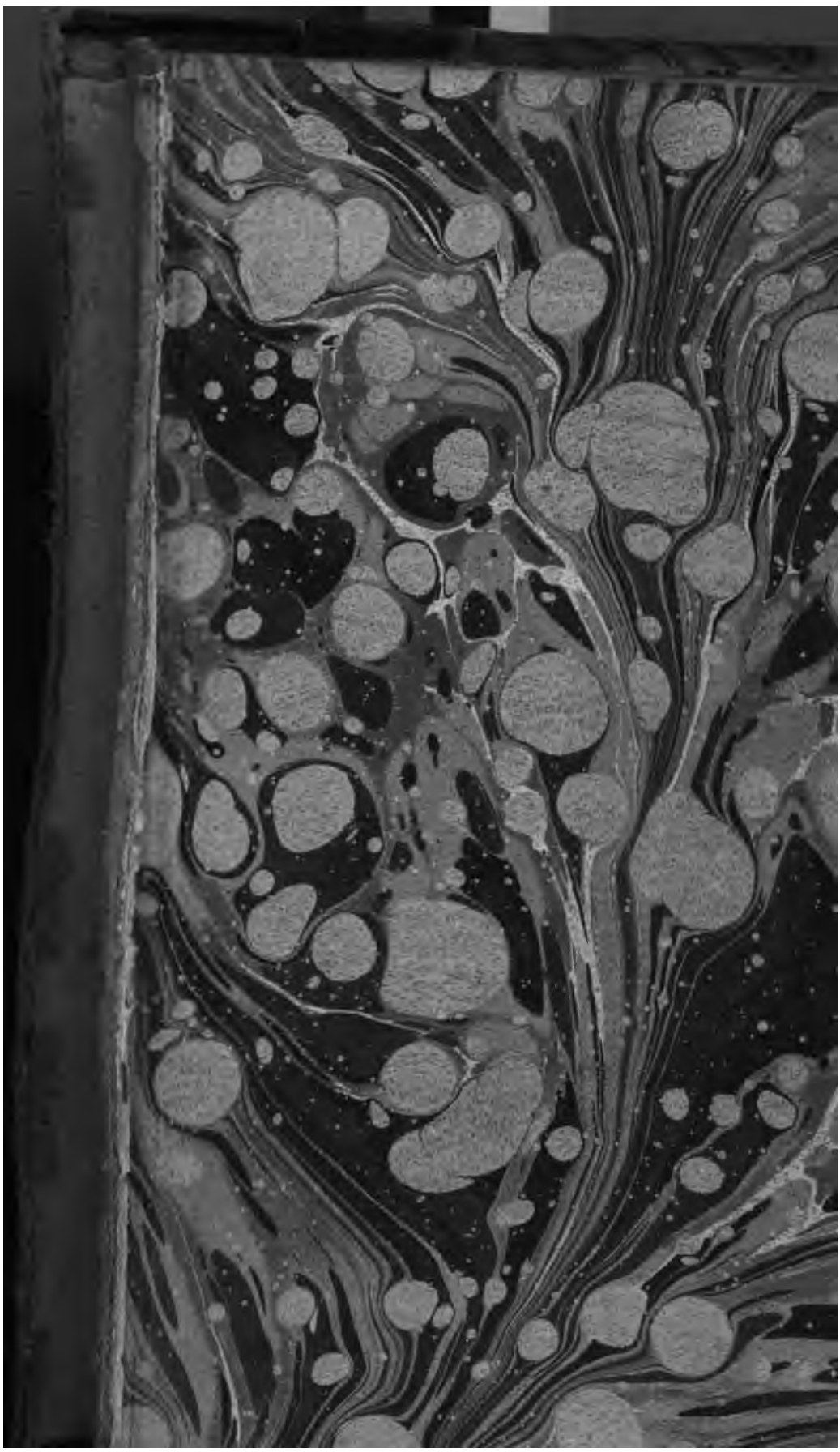
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



ARTES
VERITAS
SCIENTIA
LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN
TURRIS
WILSON DOBIE WILSON



DA
22
.H4
V.1

THE

WORKS

OF

Thomas Hearne, M.A.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

VOL. I.

CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

Mercier and Chervet, Printers,
Bartholomew Close, London.

ROBERT
OF
GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

Transcrib'd, and now first publish'd, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN LIBRARY By THOMAS HEARNE, M. A.

To which is added,
Besides a Glossary and other Improvements, a Continuation (by the Author himself) of this Chronicle from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library.

In two Volumes.

OXFORD,
Printed at the THEATER,
M. DCC. XXIV.

Marcus Zuerius Boxhornius *ad initium Orationis Dominicæ, antiquissima Alemanorum lingua à se (una cum aliis id genus) editæ, Lugduni Batavorum* A. D. CIↃIↃCL. 18°.

Ex dialecto vide rerum humanarum inconstantiam, & collige antiquitatem, eamque venerare.

THE CONTENTS.

I. THE Publisher's Preface. pag. v.

II. Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN Library; with a Continuation of the same (by the Author himself) transcrib'd from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library, by the Care and at the Expenses of the learned Dr. RICHARD MEAD. 1, 465

III. *De mirabilibus Britanniæ*, out of an old folio MS. in Vellam, given me by Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Esq. 572

IV. The Foundation of the Abbey of Glocester, and the change of the same before the Suppression thereof in the Reign of King Henry the Eight. By William Malverne, Abbat of that Monastery. 584

V. A Petegreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnyally descendyng, yn to King Henry the vi. Out of the MS. of Robert of Gloucester, that belongs to the Heralds Office. 585

36414

VI. A Letter to Mr. Bagford, containing some Remarks upon Geffry Chaucer and his Writings. 596
VII. The Preface of Mr. John Stowe to one Edition of his Summary (that comes to the Year 1573.) by which my Conjecture about Mr. Murray's Fragments (that I have printed at the End of Heming's Chartulary) is confirm'd. 607
VIII. Some Remarks, in a late, but unknown, hand, at the Beginning of the Cottonian MS. of Robert of Gloucester, relating to the age of the Author, and containing two Passages from a MS. Copy of this Historian, that was formerly in the hands of the learned Mr. Thomas Allen. 609
IX. Glossary. 612
X. Index. 744

THE

THE PUBLISHER'S

PREFACE.

THE Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester. §. 1. *The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts.* Borstall *the same with the Saxon* Burg-stall. Brill *an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but* Burgh Hill *or* Burgh on the Hill. §. 11. *Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient* βασιλεία *to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle.* §. 111. *Ferdinando Pulton, the great Law-*

yer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer. § IV. *Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other. The first, and not the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author.* §. V. *Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the Business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon Times the Princes, and other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wiltshire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.* §. VI. *Robert of Gloucester's Account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry* III, *very remarkable in all it's Circumstances.* §. VII. *Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The* Partwell, *mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with* Walton Well. Walton Well *the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which St. Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called* Holywell. *The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.* §. VIII. *Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to truth in his Rhythms*

Rhythms, answers the Custom of the Pythagoreans and old Britains. §. IX. *He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Heralds Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen.* VI. §. X: *Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the end of his MS. which is here likewise printed.* §. XI. *But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to K. Richard* I. §. XII. *The Author of which Rhythms about Richard* I. *seems to have been Robert of Brunne.* §. XIII. *This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurrs in Stowe.* §. XIV. *Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard* I. *I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library.* §. XV. *The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS.* §. XVI. *Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign.*

Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished. §. XVII. *Which, however, is pass'd over by one, who endeavour'd to settle his Age from Proofs extracted from his Chronicle.* §. XVIII. *Our Author rightly observes the vast disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edward the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.* §. XIX. *Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.* §. XX. *Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers.* §. XXI. *Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West side of Stockwell Street.* §. XXII. *The strange mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.* §. XXIII. *Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur.* §. XXIV. *The Name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton.* §. XXV. *This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter.* §. XXVI.

§. I.

§. I. IT cannot but be of great Disservice to any branch of Learning, when such Persons, as are fam'd for their skill in it, take all opportunities of depretiating those Books, that are the most proper Helps for obtaining a Knowledge in it. Among such I may, therefore, deservedly reckon those, that decry, and speak against, Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, as if the Fragments, that have been occasionally published of him by some of our greatest Antiquaries, were sufficient satisfaction to any one, that is curious. *We may probably* (saith [1] the Compiler of the English Historical Library) *bring in also* Robert *of* Gloucester, *for another of his* [Mat. Paris's] *Contemporaries, since Archbishop* [2] Usher *and* [3] *Mr.* Camden *are both positive, that he liv'd some Time in the Reign of King* Henry *the Third. His Rhyming Chronicle is in* [4] English; *and the Reader may have a Taste of it, (as much, it may be, as ever he'll desire) either from* [5] *Mr.* Selden, *or* [6] *Mr.* Wood. But I know several curious Persons, that are so far from be-

The Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester.

[1] Ed. fol. p. 62. [2] Hist. Eccles. Brit. p. 29. [3] *Remains*, p. m. 8. [4] Bibl. Cott. *Caligula* A. 11. [5] *Titles of Hon.* p. 535. [6] Hist. & Antiq. Oxon, Par. I. p. 112.

ing satiated with the published Fragments, that the more they have read them, the more earnestly they have desired and wish'd to see the whole Work. And tho' I ought not to be reckon'd among such curious Persons, yet I can testify thus much for my self, that, when I first saw a MS. of this Author (which was when I was even a young Undergraduate) in the Bodleian Library, being one of the first MSS. I ever perus'd there, I was wonderfully delighted with it, and could not but often signify, that I was not at all pleas'd with those, that insinuated, that there was enough of him already published to gratify any curious Reader. Nor can I at all think, that my late ingenious and learned Friend Robert Keck, Esq. (who was formerly Gentleman-Commoner of University College, and died[r] in the Year 1719.) repented the Charges he had been at, in having the said Bodleian MS. transcrib'd, for any other reason, than because he found, that it was a very imperfect MS. and did not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester, which he might have met with in the Cottonian Library, as he was, without doubt, afterwards fully appriz'd of by his Friends.

---

[r] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 84. p. 7, 8.

§. II. Indeed Mr. Keck was a young Gentleman extremely inquisitive after Books in old English, and the nearer they were to the Conquest, so much the better pleased he was with them. For which reason 'tis no wonder, that he should several times express a great Dissatisfaction, when he understood, that, after all his Charges, he had not got either an intire, or an authentick Robert of Gloucester. He had a design either of publishing this old Historian himself, or, at least, of assisting some body else in the publication of him; which could not but, therefore, make him the more concern'd, that his Copy was not of better Authority. He knew perfectly well, that such old English Books are of wonderful use in acquiring a knowledge in the Saxon Tongue, which continued to be spoke (tho' with great Alterations) in Robert of Gloucester's time[1], and many Years after, and it began to be most of all disus'd, when Geffry Chaucer undertook to refine (as they termed it) the Language. But now of all Books of this kind, I know none hardly so valuable as this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, and upon that account, were there no other reason, it is very proper to be read over and considered by all such as are willing to be acquaint-

The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. Borstall the same with the Saxon Burg-stall. Brill an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but Burgh hill or Burgh on the Hill.

[1] See page 364. of this Chron.

ed

ed with the old Saxon Tongue, a Language which even the vulgar are very fond of talking of, though they are perfectly ignorant of it; in so much that I have known some of the Country Common People shew an unusual Pleasure, when they have seen so much as the old Saxon Letters. And 'tis with great Attention that they will listen to the Derivation of Places from the Saxon Tongue. The People of Borstall in Buckinghamshire are mightily pleas'd, when any one tells them, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon Burg-steall, which signifies *a Seat on the side of an Hill*, which exactly answers to this Place. "Burg-steal." (saith Mr. Somner[1]) "clivus. a little hill whereon any thing is "builded: a seat on the side or pitch of an hill, as "that at Whitstable in Kent called Borstall." and this account of Burg-steall, pleaseth them the better, when they hear, that these Words in the 33d. verse of the VIIIth. Chapter of St. Luke, *Then went the devils out of the man, and entred into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choak'd*, are thus read in that which is called Wickliff's Translation[2], & so þe deuelis wenten out fro þe man, & entride in to þe swyn, & wiþ a birre þe flok wente heedlyng in to þe pool, & was drenchid. The Expression with a birre here is the

[1] Saxon Dict. voc. Burg-steal. [2] MS. opt. membran. penes me. Vide infra in Glossario, p. 728.

same

same with the Vulgar Latin *impetu*, and the Saxon ꝑæꝛc, (whence our common Word *Race*) and answers very well to any Place situated at the side of an Hill. Upon hearing this Derivation of Borstall, the Inhabitants look upon the story of it's being called so from a wild Boar kill'd by Nigellus in the Forest of Bernwood (on the Edge of which Borstall is placed) to be as weak, as the ascribing the Song of the Boar's Head by some to a wild Boar, that was kill'd, I know not when, by a Tabarder in Shottover Wood, whereas, on the contrary, the Song was so far formerly from being sung only in one Place, that it was a Christmass Carol all over England, the Boar's Head being an ancient Dish, and much in vogue at that Season, being much admired by even the greatest Princes, in so much that it was brought up by K. Henry I. [1] with Trumpets before his Son, when his said Son was crown'd. But tho' the Inhabitants of Borstall are much pleased to hear, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon Buꝛg-ſtall, yet their Neighbours, the Inhabitants of Brill, are as much displeas'd with those, that detract from the Antiquity of Brill, and will not allow it to be an ancient Burgh, and to be the same as Burgh hill or Burgh on the Hill, which nevertheless is plain enough to any one that considers either the Situation of the Place, or the

[1] Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubrigensis, p. 744.

Coyns

Coyns that have been found there and thereabouts, some of which I have seen my self. Mr. Camden had well weigh'd this matter, and therefore he very clearly established this Notion of it's being an old Burgh. *Hæc tota* [vallis] (saith he [1]) *fere campestris est, solo item argillaceo, tenaci, & fœcundo, pabulosis pratis innumeros ovium greges pascit, quarum mollia, & tenuissima vellera ab Asiaticis usque gentibus expetuntur. Sed sylvis nuda nisi ad Occiduum latus, ubi præter alias* Bernewood, *circa quam anno à Christo nato* DCCCCXIIII. *Danorum furor impotentiùs sævit, tumque forte concidit* Burgus *ille antiquus, ut Romani nummi inventi testantur, qui postea regia erat villa Edwardi Confessoris. Nunc autem pagus est rusticus, & pro* Buri-hill, Brill *contractiùs appellant.* Thus this great Man, whose words are of better Authority with the Inhabitants and others, than those of any more illiterate and injudicious Writers, especially such as derive the Name from Bryers and Thorns, (from which they also derive Bruern Abbey, when, on the centrary, it was so denominated from the *Bruern, Bourn,* Bupn or Bypna, there) an Etymology that is more weak, than that of the very learned Dr. Skinner, who thinks [2] it was so called from Burrs growing at the Place. Brill, *in Com.* Bucks (so he writes) *contr. à* Burr-hill, *sc. à Lappis, quæ ibi frequentes crescunt.* It's having been a Royal

[1] Brit. p. 279. Ed. fol. [2] Etymol. Dict.

Vill

Vill of Edward the Confessor had been sufficient to have stil'd it a Burgh, were there nothing else to rely on. Such Vills in those times were commonly call'd Burghs. Whence 'tis, that κώμαι in St. Luke [1] is translated burhga in the Saxon, *castella* in the vulgar Latin, and castels in that which is termed Wickliff's Version. As there was, doubtless, a Castle or Fortification at Brill, so the Place had a greater right than otherwise to the Title of a *Burgh*. And as here was also a Market, so, withall, it might have been call'd ſtræte, such as are mentioned in St. Luke, where [2] for *greetings in the Markets* the Saxon hath gretinga on ſtrætum, and Wickliff salutaciouns in chepyng. Mr. Somner, in his Saxon Dictionary, hath noted, that ſtræte signifieth sometimes a market-place, having an eye, I suppose, partly upon what occurrs in the Saxon Version of the New Testament, and partly upon what he had met with in other old Saxon Monuments. I do not know but Streatley in Berks was so call'd, not only because the Ikenild [3] street or way pass'd by or through that Place, but as it was formerly a Market Town. Now since the Chronicle, I have here published, is so very usefull for understanding Saxon, what but Prejudice, or some other bad Quality, could induce any one of skill in this Tongue to speak against, and endeavour to

[1] IX. 6. [2] IX. 43. [3] Vide Ed. nostr. Gul. Neubr. p. 737.

sup-

in which there are several odd wooden Cutts, that represent the Habits in use in Hen. the Eighth's time. The Picture of the Pit, into which they cast Joseph, is made to be a sort of Stone Fountain. In the Picture of Ahasuerus's Feast is a Horn for a Cup, agreeable to the old way of drinking at great Feasts. Bacchus [1] used to quaff and carowse in an Horn. Hence Nonnus, Καὶ κέρας ἄγκυλον ἔιχε βόθρῳ, δέπας. *He had an Horn crooked, for a Cup;* which was, saith the Scholiast of Nicander, an ancient Custom. Οἱ ἀρχαῖοι κέρασιν ἐχρῶντο ἐν τῇ ποσει, ἀντὶ ποτηρίων· ὅθεν καὶ τὸ κεράσαι εἴρηται. *The ancients in their Carowsings used Horns, instead of Cups: and thence, to pour out, or to mingle Wine, is called* cerasai, *of* ceras *an horn.*

Ὡς ἄρα φωνήσασα θεὰ παρέθηκε τράπεζαν,
Ἀμβροσίης πλήσασα· κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρι ῥυθρον,

saith Homer [2]. Upon which the Scholiast observes thus: Κέρασσε δε νέκταρ.] Νῦν ενέχεεν ἀντὶ του ἀρχαίας συνηθείας· εἰς κέρας γαρ εγχέοντες ἔπινον. 'Tis no wonder, therefore, that upon the Jollities on the first of May formerly the Custom of blowing with, and drinking in, Horns so much prevail'd, which tho' it be now generally disus'd, yet the Custom of blowing them prevails, at that season, even to this day, at Oxford, to remind people of the pleasantness of that part

[1] See Mountague's Diatribe against Selden's History of Tythes, p. 559. [2] Odyss. E. 92, 93.

of

of the Year, which ought to create Mirth and Gayety, such as is sketch'd out in some old Books of Offices, such as the Prymer of Salisbury, printed at Rouen 1551. 8vo. of which I have a Copy by me (and 'tis a most rare thing) given me by Mr. Graves, fairer and more perfect than that of another (*viz.* a later) Edition in Balliol College Library. But tho' I have taken so much pleasure in perusing the English Bible of the Year 1541. yet 'tis nothing equal to what I should take in turning over that of the Year 1539. (an Edition that Selden made great use of, as he did also of other old Editions of the Bible in English, in compiling his Work intit'led, *De Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*) which they have in St. John's College Library in Cambridge, in reference to which my learned Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker of that College writes to me thus[1]: "We have such a Bible as you "describe (a very noble Book) printed on Vel- "lum, and imbellished with Cuts that are Il- "luminated, the Leaves gilt, and the Cover im- "bost with Brass: but it is printed in the Year "1539. as appears from the Conclusion, thus,

The ende of the New Testament and of the whole Byble, fynished in Apryll, Anno. MCCCCC.XXXIX.
A Dnō factū est istud.

"The Frontispiece is the same with that of

[1] In his Letter of Febr. 9. 172$\frac{3}{4}$.

" *An.* 1540. described by Mr. Strype [Memorials " of Archbp. Cranmer Lib. 3. cap. 33.] only " Cromwell's Arms are left there a Blank, which " in our Copy has his bearing (as the rest) in " colors, left out, I presume, upon his fall. It " might probably (as you observe) be the same " Book, that was presented to Cromwell, there " being only one other (that we can hear of) " that is the King's. But how it came to us, " does not appear, unless from the late Earl " of Southampton, who gave us most of those " MSS. we now enjoy, and it has always had a " place amongst the MSS. as it well deserves." Mr. Baker writ this Passage upon account of a Letter I writ to him, in which I had mentioned the Bible printed in English with Cutts on Vellum, as I had found it spoke of in the following remarkable Particulars that I meet with [1] in a Quarto MS. of Collections relating to Bibles and Testaments from 1526. to 1700. made (and written with his own hand) by the late ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who was pleased to give it me himself:

" 1540.———In the Year 1540. the 32. of " King Hen. the 8. a Convocation was called, " and in the third Session (being Friday) several " Bishops were assigned to peruse the several " Translations of the New Testament, in order " as followeth:

[1] Fol. 4. a.

" 1. Cran-

" 1. Cranmer Archbp. of Canterbury	1. Matthew.
" 2. Longland of Lincolne	2. Mark.
" 3. Stephen Gardiner of Winch.	3. Luke.
" 4. Tho. Goodrick of Ely	4. John.
" 5. Nicholas Heath of Rochester	5. The Acts of the Apostles.
" 6. Richard Sampson of Chichester	6. Romans
" 7. John Capon of Sarum	7. ½ Corinthians
" 8. Will. Barlow of St. David's	8. Galatians. Ephesians. Philippians Colossians.
" 9. John Bell of Worcester	9. ½ Thessalonians
" 10. Robert Parfew of St. Asaph	10. Timothy. Titus. Philemon.
" 11. Robert Holgate of Landaff	11. ½ Peter.
" 12. John Skip of Hereford	12. Hebrews.
" 13. Thomas Thyrlby of Westminster	13. James. ½ John. ⅓ Jude.
" 14. John Wakeman of Gloster	14. The Reve-
" 15. John Chambers of Peterborow	15. lation.

" Gardiner desired, that certain Latin words " in the Text might be preserved intire (as much " as might be) in the Translation of the New " Testament, and in Fuller's Church History " you have a Catalogue of the words:

" And, if I mistake not, I have seen a Testa- " ment in English in 4°. put forth by the above-

" said Bishops with the King's Privilege. 1540

" A Bible in folio Recognized by Rich. Ta-
" verner. 1540

" *Id.* a Testament in 4°. by the same hand. 1540

" A Bible of the larger Volume, the Frontis-
" piece described by Mr. Strype, and supposed
" to be printed at Paris. 1540

" There is one of them in the Queen's Li-
" brary at St. James's, printed on Vellum, and the
" Cutts curiously illuminated. This is supposed
" to be the presentation Book to King Henry
" the 8. 1540

" I have seen one in the Library of St. John's
" College in Cambridge, found of late years
" among some old Books in a private place
" nigh the Library, printed on Vellum, and the
" Cutts illuminated as the former, and this,
" perhaps, might be the presentation Book to
" Tho. Cromwell.

" Another very fair of the same Impression
" in the Collection of Sir Andrew Fountaine
" on paper. 1540

" *Id.* another printed in folio by Will. Pettet
" for Thomas Berthlet. The Title in red and
" black Letters, with the Picture of King H. the
" 8. with the Bishops with their Mitres on. 1540

" The New Testament translated from the
" Greek by Delayne (who was Librarian at St.
" James's, and is dedicated by him to K. Henry
" the 8.) and printed in 4°. in the white Letter
" by Jo. Mayler. 1540." And

And here, upon this occasion of mentioning wooden Cutts, I must observe, that the vast Variety of wooden Cutts in the Nuremberg Chronicle, compiled by Hartman Schedel, are not to be at all despis'd for their Odness, but to be the more admir'd. For my part, the oftener I consult it, the more I wonder at the Things in it, and I cannot but esteem the Book as extremely pleasant, usefull and curious, by reason of these very odd Cutts, tho' those Copies are always to be look'd upon as the most valuable, which have the Figure of Pope Joan untouch'd, a Thing I here mention, because in many Copies this Figure is either eras'd, or, at least, defac'd, and the History of her oblitterated. And now I mention this Nuremberg Chronicle, I cannot but take notice of a Copy of it, that was given to Christ's College in Cambridge by the great common Lawyer Ferdinando Pulton. Before which Copy is an Inscription, that is very remarkable, and had it fallen into the Hands of the industrious Author of *Athenæ Oxonienses*, he would not, surely, have rang'd this eminent Lawyer among the Oxford Writers. I shall give the Inscription, with some other Particulars, just as they were all sent me by my foresaid Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker, the great Antiquary of Cambridge.

Ferdinando Pulton, the great Lawyer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer.

§. IV. "In turning my Papers" (saith Mr. Baker) "I likewise find, we have "another Copy of Hartman Schedel &c. "at Christ's Coll. given the Coll. by "Ferd. Pulton, with this Inscription before the "Book. Ferdinando Pulton, Esquier, admitted "Scholar in his youth into Christ's Colledge in "Cambridge, the last yeere of the Raigne of King "Edward the first, continued there untill the last "yeere of the Raigne of Queene Marie, and made "Fellowe of the same Colledge one yeere before he "departed thence. Became afterwards a paynfull "Student and Professor of the Common and Sta- "tute Lawes of this Realme (as maye appeare by "severall Bookes or Workes by him composed and "published in print, tending to the knowledge and di- "vulging of the same Lawes) even untill his age "of fourscore yeeres and upward: For the love and "affection which he did beare to the said Colledge "his Nurse and Schoolmistris, and in token of "good will to the same Houſe, did, upon the first daie "of September, Anno Domini 1617. & anno Regni "Regis Jacobi 15. bestowe this Booke uppon the "Maister and Fellowes of the foresaid Colledge & "their Successors, too meane a guifte for so wor- "thie and well deserving a place, intended never- "theles to have been much greater, had it not been "extenuated by the charges & expenses of his travell "and labors in the workes aforesaid, willinglie "bestowed uppon the Professors of the same Studie, "for the benefitt of his Countrie and Common- "welth thereof.

"By me
"Ferdinando Pulton, of Borton in the Countie "and Parishe of Buckingham.

"The

" The Subscription is in a different hand,
" and, I presume, his own.

" *Nov.* 23. 1552. *Ferdi. Pulton coll. Chr. admis-*
" *sus in Album sive Matriculam Acad. Cant.*

" *An.* 1555,6. *conceditur Ferdinando Pulton, ut*
" 12. *Termini, in quibus Lectiones ordinarias audi-*
" *vit, licet non omnino secundum formam Statuti,*
" *eum Oppositionibus & Respons: requisitis sufficiant*
" *ei pro completis gradu & forma Bac. in Artibus:*
" *sic quod examinetur & approbetur, convivetur, &*
" *cætera peragat juxta formam Statuti, quoniam*
" *Determinationem finalem sine maximo suo dispen-*
" *dio expectare non potest.* Reg. Acad.

" *Pulton actu Bac. ante determinationem* Regr.
" Acad. This great dispatch was, I presume, in
" order to his being elected Fellow, for in a Ca-
" talogue of their Fellows, I find, *Ferd. Pulton*
" *electus Socius an.* 1555. that is, I suppose, in
" Jan. Febr. or March 1555,6." The words in *Athenæ Oxon.* are[1]; " *Ferdinando Pulton* alias
" *Poulton* (Son of *Giles Pulton,* Esq. who died
" 1560.) was born at *Deusborough* in *Northam-*
" *ptonshire,* became[2] commoner of *Brasnose* Coll.
" in the beginning of Q. *Mary's* Reign, laid
" there a foundation of Academical literature,
" which he found useful to him afterwards when
" he grew eminent in the common Law. But
" leaving that House before he took a degree,
" he went to *Lincoln's* Inn, studied the said Law,

[1] Vol. 1. col. 362. [2] Reg. 1. coll. Æneas. fol. 92. a.

" took

" took the usual degrees, and became eminent " for the knowledge in, and practice of, it, not " only in *London*, but the usual place of his re- " sidence in the Country, *viz.* at *Borton* in the " Parish and County of *Buckingham.*———He " departed this Life, on the 20. *January* in six- " teen hundred and seventeen, aged 82. and " was buried in the Chancel of the Church of " *Deusborough*, before-mentioned, &c." Mr. Wood here quotes a Register in Brazen-nose Coll. and his Quotation is faithfull enough, as I find by this *Memorandum*, that, upon this occasion, a worthy Friend writ out of it for me: " *Nomina* " *Admissorum in Coll.* 1556. *Junii* 28°. *Ferdinan-* " *dus Pulton Northampt.*

" Reg. A Coll. Æn. Nas. fol. 92."

But then Mr. Wood builds too much upon it, it being very clear, from the Inscription and Notes above, that Pulton was one of the Cambridge Writers, and not an Oxford one, where he only resided a little while, and entered himself of Brazen-nose Coll. tho', at the same time, he was actually a Member of the University of Cambridge,

Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other. The first, and not

§. V. Mr. Baker had before given me an account of three other Copies (which they have at Cambridge) of the Nuremberg Chronicle, one of which is at Trinity College Library, and hath in it something peculiar, that is not in either of

of the others, or indeed either in my own Copy (which, by the by, wants the Note about the time when the Book was printed) or in any that I have yet seen. What this is, will be better gathered from Mr. Baker's own words, than from any thing I can say, which are these[1]: —— "Your "last Letter put me upon turning Hartman "Schedel, which is a very entertaining, and (as "you say) a very strange Book. We have three "Copies, one amongst the Bp. of Ely's, which "I had from Dr. Middleton, who presents you "with his service. The second in our College "Library. The last (the most beautifull) at "Trinity College (from Mr. Hadderton) having "all the Faces, Maps, and other Figures fairly "depicted in Colors.

the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author.

"At Fol. CCLXI. the Picture of Antichrist "with seven Heads, (different from the ordi- "nary Prints) and almost as many Colors, makes "a frightfull appearance, and upon the Pede- "stall in a fair hand, which I should have taken "for Print, had it not been wanting in the two "other Copies, this Inscription,

"*Hec depinxit Jacobus Jaqueri*
"*de Civitate Taurini in pede Montium*
"*An°. Domini millesimo quater centesimo*
"*primo.*

"And on the opposite Page thus, *This Picture*

[1] Out of his Letter to me, dated Dec. 2. 1722.

"*was*

" *was set in the Temple of the Jacobines in Jeneua*
" *in an°.* 1401, *a show of Antechriste, and from*
" *thens abrode into the worlde, that the abhomina-*
" *tion of the wicked maye be percevid. B. S. M.*
" with 5. or 6. ryming Monkish latin verses.

" At Fol. CLXXXIII. CLXXXIIII. The Pictures
" of the Emperor,7: Electors, Princes, and Counts
" of the Empire, with their Arms fairly de-
" picted, with this note, *Hæc Scuta recte pin-*
" *guntur in suis coloribus juxta juditium Heraldi.*

" I doubt, you can hardly safely show the
" former Inscription to your worthy Friend the
" Author of the Antiquities of Glast. He will
" be apt to observe, that Antichrist was so early
" in the Church of Geneva, for, I think, Ge-
" noua cannot be meant.

" In all the Copies Pope Joan stands with
" the face of a Female, a triple Crown, a Child
" in her arme instead of a Cross, which is born
" by the rest of the Popes. Neither face nor
" story are obliterated in any of our Copies,
" only in that of Trin. Coll. *septimus,* is dasht,
" and the Figure, 8. plac't in its roome. For
" she is styl'd *Joannes Septimus* in all our Copies,
" tho' another *Jo. Septimus* had been mention'd
" before. The story is short, I can send it you,
" if you have not the Book by you. Martinus is
" quoted, which shows, she stood in the Copies
" of Martinus Polonus[1] of that age.

[1] Against the story in a Copy of Suffridus Petrus's Edit. at Ant-

" Fol. CCLVIII. *Cartas aliquas sine scriptura pro*
" *sexta etate deinceps relinquere convenit, judicio po-*
" *steriorum qui emendare, addere* &c. *possunt* &c.
" Then follow some blank leaves in all the Co-
" pies, only the Title and Numbers printed at
" the top of the pages.

" Fol. CCLXVI. *Completo in famosissima Nurem-*
" *bergensi urbe Operi de Hystoriis etatum Mundi, ac*
" *descriptione Urbium, felix imponitur finis. Col-*
" *lectum brevi tempore auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni*
" *Schedel, qua fieri potuit diligentia. Anno Christi*
" *millesimo quadringentesimo nonagesimo tercio. die*
" *quarto mensis Junii.*

" Fol. CCLXVII. follows a further account of
" the European Nations, most or all from Æneas
" Sylvius: In the Title, over his Picture,

Sum pius Æneas fama super Ethera notus.

" Fol. CCC. *Adest nunc studiose lector finis libri*
" *Cronicarum per viam Epithomatis & Breviarii*
" *compilati. Opus quidem preclarum & à doctissimo*
" *quoque comparandum. Continet enim gesta que-*
" *cunque digniora sunt notatu ab initio Mundi ad*
" *hanc usque temporis nostri calamitatem. Castiga-*
" *tumque a viris doctissimis ut magis elaboratum in*
" *lucem prodiret. Ad intuitum autem & preces pro-*

Antwerp (*ex Off. Christophori Plantini* 1574. 8vo.) that I purchased out of the Study of the late Dr. Arthur Charlett, some learned hand hath written this Note: *Antiquissimus auctor hujus fabulæ est iste Martinus Polonus, qui tamen scripsit* 479. *annos post illud tempus, quo ait asseri, id est, fingi, istam Joannam vixisse.*

Polonus vixit anno Christi	1334
Joanna fingitur vixisse	855
	479

" *vido.*

" *vidorum civium Sebaldi Schreyer & Sebastiani*
" *Kamermaister hunc librum Dominus Anthonius*
" *Koberger Nuremberge impressit. Adhibitis tamen*
" *viris Mathematicis pingendique arte peritissimis,*
" *Michaele Wolgemut & Wilhelmo Pleydenwurff. quo-*
" *rum solerti acuratissimaque animadversione tum*
" *Civitatum tum illustrium Virorum figure inserte*
" *sunt. Consummatum autem duodecima Mensis Ju-*
" *lii. Anno Salutis nostre* 1493.

" There is no Name or Title at the begin-
" ning of any of the Copies. Towards the end,
" there are five leaves, *De Regno Polonie* &c. not
" numbred, which seem to have been inserted.

" Fol. CCLII. *Matheolus perusinus medicus* &c.
" —*Preceptor meus eruditissimus. Quem ego Hart-*
" *mannus Schedel Nurembergensis Doctor Patavinus*
" *tribus annis ordinarie legentem auscultavi. à quo*
" *demum prehabita per eum oratione elegantissima*
" *insignia Doctoratus Padue accepi.*——Follows a
" large Character of his Master, no more of
" himself.

" Fol. CCLII. *Ars imprimendi libros hiis tempo-*
" *ribus primum in germania enata est. Quantum*
" *igitur literarum studiosi germanis debeant nullo sa-*
" *tis dicendi genere exprimi potest. Hanc apud ma-*
" *guntiam rheni urbem solerti ingenio librarum im-*
" *primendorum ratio*̄: 1440. *inventam fuisse aiunt.*
" *Hoc tempore in omnes fere orbis partes propaga-*
" *tur.*——*Ideo in ejus laudem quidam hos cecinit*
" *versus.*

" (1) *O felix nostris memoranda impressio seclis.*
" (3) *Desierat quasi totum quod fundis in Orbem.*
" (5) *Omnes te summis igitur nunc laudibus ornent.*
" (2) *Inventore nitent utraque lingua tuo.*
" (4) *Nunc parvo doctus quilibet esse potest.*
" (6) *Te duce quando ars hec mira reperta fuit.*

" These verses stand like Prose (without di-
" stinction) in the print, I presume the Printer
" had jumbled them out of Order.

" This seems to be a good and antient au-
" thority for printing at Mentz, being within
" memory of Man."

There is no doubt, but there was a great Number of Copies printed of this Book, that so the Charges of the Impression might be the better countervail'd by the sale. They were greedily bought up, and in a little time the Book grew scarce, which caus'd a new [1] Edition,

---

[1] Concerning which my Friend Mr. Graves writes thus to me in a Letter, dated from Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Saturday, 14th. of Dec. 1723. " Schedel's Chronicle, that is " now in the Hands of Mr. Fan- " court Bookseller in Stratford " upon Avon, is but a small " siz'd Folio, tho' pretty thick; " containing 338. Leaves, be- " sides a large Alphabetical In- " dex at the End thereof, not at " the Beginning, as the other; " printed in a black Letter, but " much less Character, than " that; and the Cuts are but " very small, and few, in " comparison with the other, " &c.

"In fol. 294. a. is this Note, " *viz. Completo in famosissi-* " *ma Nurembergensi Urbe* " *operi de hystoriis etatum* " *mundi, &c. Collectum, &c.* " *auxilio Doctoris Hart-* " *manni Schedel, &c. Anno* " *Christi,* 1493. *die* 4*to.* " *Mensis Junii, &c.* as in the " other.

" And in fol. 338. a. at the " very End of the Book is this "Note, *viz. Finithi cliber Cro-* " *nicorum,*

but in a less Folio, with worse Types, (notwithstanding both Editions are of the black kind) and without most of the Cuts, which omission of the Cuts made this Edition, therefore, much less valued by curious and critical Men than the first. The same Defect likewise makes the second Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle of less esteem with many curious Men, than the first, which came out in Fol. at London 1577. and is full of wooden Cuts, (as the authentick Edition of Robert Fabyan's Chronicle[1], and the Chronicle of John Ra-

---

"*nicorum, &c. Impressum*
"*ac finitum, &c. in imperiali*
"*Urbe Augusta à Johanne*
"*Schensperger, Anno ab In-*
"*carnatione Domini*, 1497.

"After I had seen your's at
"Oxford, and view'd my own
"and that at Stratford again;
"I thought there was as much
"Difference between mine,
"and your's, as between
"your's, and that: For th '
"our's are both the same Edi-
"tion; yet mine is extraordi-
"nary large Paper, with a very
"broad Margin, and extreme
"fair; and the chief initial Let-
"ters are painted with blew,
"and red; and some of them
"are handsomely illuminated,
"*&c.*

[1] Of which Chronicle I find the following Particulars, in a Paper MS. in Folio) containing a Catalogue of Books relating to the English and Irish Histories and Antiquities written by Mr. William Cooper, who dealt in old Books, and made this Catalogue for his own use [Sic in Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 92. p. 244.] This MS. belong'd, after the Collector's Death, [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 63. p. 14.] to the ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who lent it to the Compiler of the English Historical Library, and at length (after a great while) recovering it, he parted with it to the learned Sir Hans Sloane, Baronet, in whose hands it is now, and he was so kind as to lend it me in the Month of January 1721.

"Fabyan's Chronicle of the
"Kings of England and France,
"from Bruce's entring into this
"Island

stell[1], of which last there is a well preserved [a]Copy in the Harleyan Library, are also im-

"Island, untill the last Year of "King Richard the third, *anno* "1485. continued to the be- "gining of Hen. the 8th. *Anno* "1509. in seaven parts, and "two Volumes, with the Effi- "gies of the Kings, their Coats "of Armes, and other figures, "being the first Edition in- "castrate. Instead of a Title "it hath a figure the Armes of "England and France united, "the supporters a Dragon & "Grayhound, and two Port- "cullices, 2. Angels bearing "the Motto about the Rose "over the Crown, the same fi- "gure at the end of the book, "fol. *circa annum* 1509 *.

"——*Idem* newly printed, "with some what a larger "Chronicle of the Acts and "Deeds don in the time of the "Reign of King Henry the sea- "venth, father to our dread "soveraign K. Hen. 8. London "printed by Wm. Rastall 1533. "in fol. *cum Privilegio* differ- "eth from the first, and not "gelt soe much as Record's "edition.

"——*Idem iterum* named "the Concordance of History, "with Notes upon the Kings "Reigns, and a Continuation "from the begining of K. Hen. "7. to the Coronation of Queen "Elizabeth *Anno* 1558. ac- "cording to Fabian's method, "with Alterations, Correc- "tions or Castrations, and Mar- "ginal Notes, by Robert Re- "cord. Lond. 1559. fol." Coll. "nostr. MSS. Vol. 93. p. 65.

[1] About which I have inserted the following Note, out of the foresaid MS. of Sir Hans Sloane, in my Manuscript Collections, Vol. 93. p. 83. "The "Pastyme of People, the Cro- "nicles of divers Realmys, and "most specially of the Realme "of England, brevely compil- "ed and imprinted in Chepe- "syde at the sygne of the "Meare-Mayd, next to Pollys "gate, *cum Privilegio*. The "*Prologus* hath at the top *Jo- "hannis Rastell*. It begins in the "Margin, *Eneas*, then follows "*Ascanius, Silvius, &c.* Wil- "liam the Conquerour, a woden "Picture of him, in full propor- "tion, and soe of all the Kings, "the Picture of Richard the "third being the last, the word "*Tyrannus* Ends. The picture "of the Creation. *Johannes "Rastall cum Privilegio Re- "gali.* in large folio.

[a] Sic me docuit amicus eruditus Timotheus Thomas, A.M. collegii Ædis Christi Oxoniæ Alumnus.

* [Lond. 1516.]

bellished with wooden Cuts) many of which (considering the time in which they were done) are very good. The Author was then living. The second Edition came out in 1587. in two Tomes also in Folio, with abundance of Additions by other hands, but without the wooden Cuts. This Omission was contrary to the Design and Intent of the Author, who was a curious, tho' illitterate, Man (having never received liberal Education[1]) and died before the Year 1582. Mr. Wood says[2] that it was towards the latter end of 1580. I have printed his Will, which was proved April 24. 1582. in the first Volume[3] of my Edition of *Camden's Elizabetha*, as it was communicated to me by the learned Thomas Palmer, of Fairfeild in Somersetshire, Esq. Hence it may appear, that the first (which is very scarce) and not the second Edition, contains the true genuine Work of Hollingshede.

Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon times the Princes, & other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wilt-

§. VI. Now to return to Robert of Gloucester, as he was an Antiquary, as well as an Historian, so here are interspers'd divers Remarks, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. After he hath given an account of some of the Wonders of Britain, such as our Antiquaries usually take notice of, he

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. p. 87. [2] Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 270. [3] Præf. p. CXLIX.

refers

refers to a Book written particularly about the Marvels of Britain, which I take to have been much more copious, than either the Chapter upon that Subject in *Polychronicon*, or even the little anonymous Tract upon the same Subject, that I found inserted in an old Vellum MS. in Folio, that was lately given me by my learned Friend Richard Graves, Esq. In this Tract (which I have publish'd in the Appendix [1]) the four Great Roman Ways are deservedly reckon'd among the Wonders of Britain, and the account of them, however short, agrees with the Scheme of them, that is given us (from a MS. in the Cottonian Library) in the Discourse about the four Great Roman Ways published in the Sixth Volume [2] of Leland's Itinerary. Robert of Gloucester's writing [3] Silchester in Hampshire Cylceſtre confirms my opinion [4], that it was so called from the Flints, being no more than *silicum castra*. His Remarks upon many of our Religious Houses are pretty and usefull, and now and then he shews a particular Modesty on the occasion, in so much, that tho' it be certain, that Sir William de Mohun founded Bruton Abbey in Somersetshire, yet he expresses himself after such a manner, as if he only

shire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.

[1] Num. I. [2] Pag. 96. [3] Pag. 100, 166. [4] In Notis ad Alure-dum Beverlacensem, p. 154.

thought, and was not certain, that he was Founder. What he says[1] about Alfled, or Æthelfleda, the famous Queen, or Lady, of the Mercians being buried in St. Peter's Porch at Gloucester is exactly agreeable to the Saxon Annals, under the Year DCCCCXX.——heo ȝefor xii. nihtum ær middan sumera binnan Tamanþeorðe. þẏ eahtoðan ȝeare þæs þe heo Mẏrcna anþald mid riht halford-dome healdende þæs. ⁊ hire lic lið binnan Gleapceastre. on þam east-portice sce. Petres cirecean. What can be a plainer Argument of so great a Lady's Humility, than her chosing to be buried in the Porch, and to lye in a place, that had been famous for the fine Nunnery, that was there, before it was destroyed by the Danes, as is noted not only by others, but particularly by William Malverne (the last[2] Lord Abbat of Gloucester) in a Piece never yet printed, which I shall therefore publish at the End of this Work[3]? Her affection to Religion induced her to fix upon Gloucester for the Place of her Funeral, rather than Tamworth, which was otherwise so very famous for a Palace, in which the Mercian Princes us'd to reside, and which she her self had restored to it's pristine Splendour and Magnificence, after it had been destroy'd by the Danes. But, it may be, it will be said, that she pitch'd upon

[1] Pag. 271. [2] Leland's Coll. Vol. VI. p. 214. [3] Appendix Num. II.

Glou-

Gloucester, because the Abbey Church there had been founded by her Husband and her self, rather than for any other reason. Without question that was a considerable Motive; but yet I am perswaded, that the celebrated Nunnery, that had been there in former times, was another very great one, as indeed it was customary, in those Times, even for other great Personages to be buried at Religious Houses, where they had inhabited and resided. In so much, that tho' Cosham, near Chippenham in Wiltshire, was so much resorted to by some of our Saxon Kings and other great Men, where was a Palace for their Reception and Entertainment, as there was after the Conquest a retiring House for the Earls of Cornwall, to whom the Mannour belong'd (one of which, *viz.* Edmund, obtain'd a Charter [1] for a Weekly Market to be held here every Friday, as his Father Richard, a younger Son of King John, had granted the Inhabitants several Privileges, which they still enjoy [2]) yet 'twas not a burying Place for these Great Men, not so much as for K. Ethelred, who was more than ordinarily delighted with it, and lay sick here in MXV. but recovering, he went to London, and dying the Year after on St. George's day [3],

[1] Cart. 13. E. 1. n. 39. Dugdale's Baronage, Tome I. p. 795. [2] Notes at the Bottom of the Page of Gibson's Engl. Ed. of Camden's Brit. p. 87. [3] Chron. Sax. Gibs. p. 146. 148.

was buried in St. Paul's Church in the North Isle beside the Quire. 'Tis true, indeed, there was a Stone Coffin [2], with humane Bones in it of a larger Size than usual, in the Skull whereof was a compleat Set of fine Teeth, found lately by Cosham, which may perswade some, perhaps, to think this was a Place of Burial for several of our Princes and Nobility; but, as I take it, this was a Coffin of some private fine Gentleman since the Conquest, different from the illustrious Persons I have been speaking of, and yet of a great Character for his Virtues, and the delicate Form of his Body. And here I must caution the Reader, not to take this Cosham to be the Kaverſham, in the Church of which Place Robert of Gloucester tells [3] us the long Knife, that St. Edward the Martyr was kill'd with, was preserved in his time. For this was Caversham, commonly call'd Causham, & sometimes writ [4] Cowsham, a Village situated in Ox-

[1] Milles's Cat. of Honour, p. 28. Dugdale's Hist. of St. Paul's Cathedral, p. 95. Ed. 2d. [2] See the Glossary to this Work. voc. Iyer. [3] Pag. 289. [4] See p. 128. of a Book, called, *The Connexion: being choice Collections of some principal Matters in King James his Reign.* Lond. 1681. 8vo. where the following Order occurrs, as I have entered it in one of my MSS. [Coll. Vol. 79. p. 75.]

" Anno Dom. 1612. An. Reg. Jac. 19.
" *An Order of the Privy Council.*
" Whitehall *January* 18. 1621.
" Present,

" *Lord Keeper.*	*Lord Digby.*
" *Lord Treasurer.*	*Lord Brook.*
" *L. President.*	*Mr. Treasurer.*

" *L. M.*

fordshire, but is not far from Reading in Berkshire. Not only the Church of this Causham (which is an Abbreviation, as Leland saith [1], for Causeiham) was eminent (for great Men resorted hither) but the fair old Chappel also of Stone, that [2] stood toward the North End of Causham Bridge, on the right Hand as we come from Reading. To the foresaid Remarks I must take the opportunity of adding, that in the Saxon times abundance of great and illustrious Lay Persons made it their dying Request, that they might be buried in Religious Houses. A Request, certainly, very reasonable, and by no means to be wondred at, since a great [3] Number of those Houses were Lay Foundations, and it was, therefore, very proper both

" *L. M. Hamilton.*
" *Earle Marshall.*
" " *L. Visc. Falkland.*
" WhereashisMajesty is Gra-
" ciously pleased, to enlarge &
" set at liberty the Earl of *So-*
" *merset*" [Sir *Robert Carr*]
" and his Lady," [the Lady
" *Frances Howard*,] " now
" Prisoners in the Tower of
" *London*; and that, never-
" theless, it is thought fit, that
" both the said Earl and his
" Lady be confined to some
" convenient Place: It is
" therefore, according to his
" Majestie's Gracious Plea-
" sure and Command, Order-
Mr. Secret. Calvert.
Mr. Chanc. Exchcq.
Master of the Rolls.
" ed, That the Earl of *So-*
" *merset* and his Lady, do
" repair either to *Grays* or
" *Cowsham*, the Lord *Wal-*
" *lingford*'s Houses in the
" County of *Oxon*, and re-
" main confin'd to one or
" either of the said Houses,
" and within three Miles
" compass of either of the
" same, untill further Order
" be given by his Majesty.

[1] Itin. Vol. II. p. 5. [2] Leland ibid. [3] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 150.

for the Founders themselves, as well as for such as were, both at the time of the Foundation and afterwards, particular or special Benefactors, should be buried, if they desired it, in Places that themselves had rais'd, a thing agreeable to the most early Antiquity, as may appear from even the famous Egyptian Pyramids. 'Tis incredible to think, what advantage the burying of such great and devout Persons was to the respective Religious Houses, where they were so laid. These Houses (term'd Mynsters in Antiquity) were then esteem'd (and that justly too) to be the principal Mother Churches, and of them we are chiefly to understand these Words in King Edgar's Laws, ⁊ man agyfe ylce ælc teoþunge to þæm ealdan mynstre ðe feo hyrneſſe to hyrþ; i. e. *and let every one give his Tithes to the old Church, (Monasterie or Mynster) to which the district belongs.* Mr. Selden[2] translates these Words, ealdan mynstre ðe feo hyrneſſe to hyrþ, *to the ancientest Church or Monasterie where he hears God's Service,* and yet Brompton, in his old Translation, hath[3], *& reddatur omnis decimatio ad matrem ecclesiam cui parochia adjacet,* as even Selden himself had before[4] observ'd. But then tho' these Words are *primarily* to be understood of Religious Houses (among which are to be reckoned what were afterwards

[1] Spelmanni Concil. Vol. I. p. 444. [2] Hist. of Tithes, p. 262. [3] Apud X. Script. col. 871. [4] Hist. of Tithes, p. 219.

called

called *Cathedral Churches*) yet they are *secundarily* to be understood also of other Churches, that were afterwards look'd upon likewise as Mother Churches, as having the right of Sepulture annex'd to them. Such inferior Mother Churches were founded generally by eminent Lay Persons, and the Parishes of such Churches were as extensive as the Founders Possessions, (at least as such Possessions as were styl'd Boclanꝺ or lands possess'd *optimo jure)* and 'twas in these Churches (when they became frequent) that the Founders then often desired to be buried, in allusion to, and in imitation of, the Practise of such Founders of, and Benefactors to, Religious Houses as desired to be buried in Monasteries. These inferior Mother Churches are mentioned in Edgar's Laws [1] by the Name of Churches that had Leȝeꞃſtoꝑe, or *place of Burial,* where is mention also of a third (which is the lowest) kind of Churches, those that had no Leȝeꞃſtoꝑe. The second kind of Churches I have spoke of had likewise (as well as the *principal* Mother Churches) right of Baptism; but wherever there was a Church that had neither *sepulturam* nor *baptisterium,* that was properly to be understood of the third kind, and such Churches of this third Class they styled often ꝼelꝺcyꞃican, or *Field Churches,* what we call now Chappels of Ease, among

[1] Spelmanni Conc. loc. cit.

which

which are to be reckon'd [1] Binsey, Sandford, and Wolvercote near to, and Holywell in the Suburbs of, Oxford, as well as multitudes besides, which had not anciently *sepulturam & baptisterium*, tho' they have that Privilege since.

Robert of Glouce-ster's account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all it's Circumstances.

§. VII. But I shall leave all farther Descants upon the several Particulars in this Author immediately relating to Antiquities to the intelligent Reader's own Observation, unless it be that [2] concerning the great Conflict in the Year 1263. between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford. This Passage is very remarkable in all it's Circumstances, and for that reason Mr. Wood hath very justly, tho' not without divers Mistakes, inserted it [3] at large in his *History and Antiquities of the University of Oxford.* It seems Prince Edward, in his Journey towards the Marches of Wales, came by Oxford, but was hindered by the Townsmen (who shut the Gates against him) from coming into the Place, by reason of the Barons War, whereupon he went to King's Hall (being the fine Royal Palace, called The Beaumonts) situated in the West Suburbs, where he lay all Night. The next day he went away, and, after he was gone, the Gates were all open'd but Smithgate. This was the Gate, through which the Scho-

[1] Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 756. [2] See p. 540. [3] Lib. I. pag. 112.

lars

lars us'd to go into the pleasant Fields (particularly the fair open Green, now arable ground, the North Boundary whereof is to this Day call'd Green-Ditch) in which they were wont to exercise themselves at several kinds of Sports after Meals, and upon extraordinary occasions, but finding the Gate shut upon them, they were exceedingly enraged, and the more, because they had been before obstructed from seeing the Prince, a sight they were very desirous of, on purpose that they might the better express their Loyalty. They often intreated the Bayliffs to open the Gate, but finding it was in vain, they got it broke down, and afterwards carried it in triumph through the Beaumonts Fields to Dare well or Darewell, which was such a Grievance to the Townsmen, that they took an occasion to imprison many Scholars, and would have proceeded to the utmost Violence, had they not been overpowered by the Scholars, as they were in all Encounters, unless the Scholars were far outnumbered by the Townsmen's calling to their Assistance (a thing common with them) a parcel of Ruffians and illitterate Fellows out of the Country. John Stowe mentions this difference in the Folio Edition [1] of his Chronicle, under the Year 1264. and tho' he doth not refer us to Robert of Gloucester, yet I do not doubt but he took the Story from him, or, at least, from some

[1] P. 193.

some body that had made use of him. Edward the kings sonne, (saith he) after his returne from Paris, about Lent, tooke his journey toward the March, and passing by Oxford, the Burgesses shut up their gates against him, whereby he was forced to lie at the Kings hall without the Towne till the next morrow, and then departed. The Scholliers of Oxford being shut within the Towne, brake up the gate that leadeth toward Beaumont, for which deed the Maior sent some of them to prison: and not long after, while the Scholliers were at dinner, the Maior and Commons, with banners displayed, thought to have spoyled the Clarkes ere they had beene aware, but being espyed, the scholliers ranne together, and with bowes and other weapons, slew and wounded the Burgesses and Commons, brake up many houses, spoyling the goods, and set the houses of the Portriues (William Spicer and Geffrey [1] Hencley) on fire, on the South side of the towne. Moreouer, because the Maior (Nicholas Kingstone) was a Vintener, they brake vp the Vintrie, dranke the wines, and spoyled them, for the which fact the King caused the Clearkes and Scholliers to be banished the Vniuersitie. This Victory of the Scolars stuck

The Scholliers and Burgesses of Oxford the one spoyle the other.

Clarkes of Oxford banished.

[1] *Lege* Wencley, so call'd from one of the *Hencseys* or *Hinckseys, viz.* either Laurence Hincksey, or North Hincksey, (oftentimes call'd Ferry Hincksey, and, from the vast quantity of Ivy that was formerly, before the present Church or Chappel was built, about the Church, Ivy Hincksey) or else South Hincksey, dedicated to St. John [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 121.] both situated in Berkshire (being Chappels of Ease to Cumnor, the Church of which is dedicated to St. Michael [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 119.]) but are near Oxford.

so much in the Townsmen's Stomacks, that it was one main reason of the Barbarity they shew'd the Scholars in the very great Conflict that afterwards fell out in the Reign of Edward the third, which indeed is much the biggest that ever happened between the two Bodies.

§. VIII. But tho' Mr. Wood hath published the beforementioned Passage, and refers to a MS. for it; yet since he hath not told us where this MS. is lodg'd (which, notwithstanding, I have at last found to be that in the Cottonian Library) I am of opinion, that he had it from second hand, either from Brian Twyne's, or Dr. Gerard Langbaine's Papers, which he had glean'd, and out of which, in a very great measure, he collected his Book. I have seen, among other things, two MSS. Catalogues of the Magistrates of the University of Oxford, drawn excellently well, (with references to the several Registers and Books made use of) one by Brian Twyne, and the other by Dr. Langbaine, and 'twas from these Catalogues that Mr. Wood compiled his Catalogue, in which much Reading is shew'd. 'Tis observable, that Mr. Wood does not tell us, what the foresaid Pare well or Parewell (mentioned in this Fragment)

Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The Parewell, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with Walton Well. Walton Well the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which Saint Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called *Holywell*. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.

ment) was. For my part, I take it to have been what we now call Walton Well, (so named from the old Village of Walton, now destroy'd [1]) which is on this Side of another old Well call'd Ariſtotle's Well, and sometimes Bruman's Well, which name of Bruman it had from one Brumman or Bruman le rich or the rich, who lived in the time of K. Hen. III. (when Robert of Gloucester flourished) or, as others say, about the time of K. Henry I [2]. As Brumman, or Bruman, was a very wealthy Man, so he had a great Estate hereabouts, was commonly called Brumman the rich of Walton [3], and was always very civil and obliging to the Scholars. In those times, what we now call Walton Well was styl'd Parewell or Porewell from it's Antiquity, (as Parwell, or Parewell, near Abbington in Berks was likewise so call'd upon the same account) pare or pore, as I have lately insinuated [4], signifying *old*, which Name it retained, among many, divers Years after. I take it to be the oldest Well of note about Oxford, where, however, there were formerly a great many famous Wells. Polywell cannot come at all in competition with it for it's Antiquity. For the Church or

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 14. Item Præf. nostr. ad Joan. Rossi Hist. regum Angliæ, p. VIII. [2] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 57. p. 124. [3] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 20. [4] Videsis Præf. nostr. ad Hemingi Chartular. Eccl. Wig. §. XI.

Chap.

Chappell of Holywell is properly call'd St. Crosse's (being dedicated to the Holy Cross, and built too in form of a Cross, tho' the North part be now down) and 'twas first call'd Holywell from the Well many Years after the Building of it, when the Water was known and fam'd to have a peculiar virtue for the Eyes, and was thence term'd *holy*. But tho' Holywell was so much celebrated, yet the Fame of St. Edward's, or, as others [1], St. Edmund's, Well, without Bridgett, or rather Bridghithe or Bridghythe [2], commonly, and indeed more anciently, call'd St. Clement's, by Oxford was far greater, in so much that there was a Resort of all sorts of People from all Parts to it, and the Water [3] of it was believed to be so effectual in curing divers Distempers, and thereupon held to be of so great Sanctity, that here they made Vows, and brought their Alms and Offerings. This was the Case also of abundance of other Wells throughout the Kingdom, which gave occasion to several Injunctions prohibiting such respect, as a Thing indecent and superstitious, and, among others, the Worship of this Well of St. Edward was particularly forbid by Oliver Sutton, Bishop of Lincoln, in the time of Edward the first. This Well-worship was call'd by our Saxon Ancestors Wilpeorþunge or

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 26. Ibid. p. 10. [2] Dr. Plot's Natural Hist. of Oxfordshire, chap. II. §. 70.

Wilpeor-

Wilpeorþunga, and is strictly forbidden in King Edgar's Canons and K. Cnute's Laws, as 'twas in a Council at London under Archbishop Anselm in the Year 1102. as is well noted by Mr. Somner [1], and some of our best Criticks observe, that what is translated *Will-worship* in Colossians [2] should be *Well-worship*. This Well of St. Edward is now quite stopt up, and hath been so for many Years, but it was in the Field about a Furlong S. S. West of St. Clement's Church, and I have heard some of the Ancients of Oxford talk of it, as many old People will likewise speak with great satisfaction of the old Well [call'd by them commonly Crow-well, i. e. *Cross-well*] of Holy-well, that was also stopt up, as a vast Number of others were, after the Injunctions came to be of force, and were put in Execution; tho' it must be acknowledg'd, that Crow-well (which was almost opposite to the Cross that is in the Wall of Magdalen College Grove, notwithstanding Dr. Plot insinuates [3], that it was the Well behind Holywell Church, in the Court before the Mannour House) was opened again some Years after it had been stop'd, and continued in great fame 'till the Siege of Oxford, particularly for it's good service to bad Eyes,

[1] Saxon Dict. voc. Wilpeorþunge. [2] Ch. II. v. 23. [3] Nat. Hist. of Oxfordsh, ch. X. §. 142.

which

which occasion'd these Verses to be put upon the Cover of it:

Let no man this Well despise.
It does no harm, but helps the Eyes.

Soon after the Siege, the Stones of it were carried by Mr. Cowdrey the Shoe-maker to the Well, now call'd, from the Person that lives at it, **Newton's Well**, that is on the East side of Holy-well Church. But notwithstanding all this, **Walton Well** (which, I think, was most of all frequented [1] in the time that the King's Palace, called **The Beaumonts**, and the Carmelite Friery at the said Palace flourished) was not concerned in these Prohibitions, because the Water was not esteem'd and look'd upon as holy. Neither was **Aristotle's Well** (which I take to be near as ancient a Well as that of **Walton**) included in the Prohibitions, being fam'd only for it's being frequented by Scholars, not for it's Sanctity, but for a House of Entertainment here built, to which they us'd to resort, especially on Ashwednesdays, when the Batchelours of Arts, that defend Aristotle in the Publick Disputations, are styl'd Aristotles, and formerly, after the hot Disputations in the Schools, they, as well as other Scholars, us'd to go into the Fields by this Well, which was their Place of Refreshment, and exercise themselves in another manner, not so proper

[1] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 16.

for them, which some Years agoe was put down.

Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to Truth in his Rhythms answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains.

§. IX. I am here very sensible, that an Objection against Robert of Glocester will be started by several upon the score of his Poëtry, as if that were a very cogent Argument to make him neglected and despised. But he (and not Chaucer, as Dr. Thomas Fuller[s], and some others would have it,) is the Ennius of the English Nation, and he is, on that account, to be as much respected, as even Ennius himself was among the Romans, and I have good reason to think, that he will be so by Friends to our Antiquities, and our old History. 'Tis the Genius of the age that is to be regarded in such Pieces of Poëtry. The Poëtry of those times consisted of Rhythms both here and in other Countries, and the Poëts thought they had done their Parts well, if their Rhythms, however mean otherwise, related matter of Fact, and were agreeable to Truth. And truly this exactly corresponded with the Rules of the ancient Pythagoræans. For even Tully tells us, at the Beginning of the IVth Book of his Tusculan Questions, that the Pythagoræans us'd to put their Precepts and other Things of mo-

[s] Church-History of Britain, l. VI. p. 268. tho' he had before told us, l. III. p. 4. that *he* [Rob. of Glouc.] *was counted the* Virgil *of his age, and the* Ennius *in ours.*

ment

ment (among which, to be sure, are to be reckon'd the famous Acts of their Ancestors) into Verse, and that it was usual with the old Romans, according to the Custom of the Pythagoræans, when they sat at Banquets, to recite the Virtues and Praises of Great Men in Verse, and to sing and play upon the Pipe upon such occasions, and thence, as I take it, even the old Britains, who followed the Pythagoræan Doctrines, addicted themselves so much to Verse, tho' as well the Pythagoræans, as Romans and Britains, took care, that no Verse should tend to the Injury of another, one of the Laws of the XII. Tables expressly forbidding any such Indecency, and some of our old Rhythms laying down Rules against any unbecoming Expressions in Poëtry, such as may conduce to Immorality; and in this, as well as his unaffected way of relating matter of Fact in Rhythm, our Author is to be commended, as a true Picture of Antiquity.

§. X. Since, therefore, Robert of Gloucester appears, on all accounts, to be so valuable an Author, what reason can be assign'd, that he hath been so much neglected, and that he was not long since published to the World? 'Tis probable the Obsoleteness of the Language might be the main reason, or, at least, 'tis likely, that some Persons of

He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Herald's Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI.

Distinction, not pleased with several of his honest Relations of Things, might characterize him as an insignificant Writer, and prejudice the Readers so much against him, that they were not at all sollicitous about an Edition. Be this as it will, as I look upon him to be one of the first Rank in our old Historians, so I, many Years agoe, had thoughts of publishing him according to the Bodleian MS. to which I had then daily access. But finding afterwards, that there are much better Copies in the World, I laid aside my Design of publishing this Author, and did not resume it 'till above a Year agoe, when the Loan of a MS. that formerly belong'd to Sir Simonds D'Ewes, (whose MSS. the Earl of Oxford purchas'd) was procur'd for me out of the Harleyan Library by that most eminent Physician the learned Dr. Richard Mead, who is my very great Friend. It came to me, accompanied with another MS. of Robert of Gloucester, the Loan of which was obtain'd for me out of the Heralds Office by another great Friend, the learned John Bridges, Esq. who was at the trouble of transmitting both these MSS. to me. As soon as I saw the Harleyan MS. I presently concluded, that it was a very good one and authentick, and therefore I immediately transcrib'd it, and resolved to make it my Text. But then as to that of the Heralds Office, I found not only the Language of Ro-

Robert of Gloucester to be altered throughout in it, but the Work quite changed in several respects, by having some Passages transposed, others omitted, and divers inserted that were never written by Robert of Gloucester, who was of different Principles from this Author. A great deal of Prose History in English (partly taken from Geffry of Monmouth, partly from William of Malmsbury, partly from Brute of England, *Polychronicon, &c.*) is intermix'd in this MS. with what is in Rhythm, but as the Substance of most of this is already published in Stowe (who had seen this MS.) and other Books, I have left out much the greatest part of it, and confin'd my self to the genuine Work of Robert of Gloucester, which, however, I have carefully compar'd with this MS. of the Heralds Office, and taken notice of what I thought proper, and have inserted my Observations from it (among which are to be reckon'd also those of the Prose part) at the bottom of the page, always subjoyning *Ar.* [i. e. *the MS. of the College of Arms*] to them. Who the Author was, that took such a liberty with Robert of Gloucester (a thing that hath happened to many other ancient Remains) I will not pretend, at present, to determine; but this is certain, that he both lived and wrote in the time of Hen. VI. as appears from this *Memorandum*, (written all [excepting ꝑ cccc. xlviii.]

in red Letters, but in the same Hand with the Book) at the Beginning of the Work: A petegreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelonde, lynnyally descendyng, vn to kyng Henry the vi. in the end of thys boke lymned in Fygurs. Thys boke, with hys Antecedens and consequens, was ful ended the vi. day offe Auguſt, the zere of oure lorde a M. ccc. xlviii. and the yere of oure souerayn lorde kyng Harry the vi. after the conquest the xxvi.

Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the End of his MS. which is here likewise printed.

§. XI. Tho' this MS. of the Heralds Office (for the use of which I am in a particular manner obliged to my learned Friend John Anstis, Esq. Garter, principal King of Arms) be in several Places imperfect, and hath some of the Leaves transpos'd (as a few Leaves are also transpos'd in the Harleyan MS.) yet 'tis, as I judge, the very original Book. The Author, undoubtedly, took a great deal of pains in new modelling Robert of Gloucester, and in adapting every Thing to his own Scheme. He divers times introduceth the Rhythms by the name of **old Rhythms**, but never so much as once mentions the Name of Robert of Gloucester, or pretends to discover what his own Name was. Mr. Weever had diligently perus'd this MS. and quotes it sometimes as if the whole were Robert of Gloucester's, a mistake that some great Men besides have

have been guilty of with respect to other Writers, as may plainly appear, as well from other Instances, as from what I observ'd lately with regard to Fordun's *Scotichronicon*. The Petegrew mentioned in the Note abovesaid is still to be seen at the end of the MS. together with the Limnings or Pictures (all but that of William Rufus and Henry I. which are cut out) of the Kings of England from William the Conquerour to Hen. VI. inclusively, and this additional Part is also cited by Weever, but in that he happens to distinguish rightly, making it, as it is, quite different from any Piece of Robert of Gloucester's Writings. The Pictures I have omitted, but the rest I have printed in my Appendix [1], and, I hope, I have thereby obliged those that have any respect for our Antiquities.

But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to King Richard I.

§. XII. The Reader will perceive at first sight, that these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester. And indeed in this very MS. in the Body of the Book, is also a great Number of other Rhythms, that are also shorter than Robert's, I mean such as relate to Richard the First; (which nevertheless are erroneously ascrib'd by Dr. Fuller [2] to Robert of Gloucester:) but then I have quite

[1] Num. III. [2] Ch. Hist. l. III. p. 43. where he gives us the following Rhythms, and in the Margin calls them Robert of Gloucester's:

omitted all these, partly because they are (in many respects) strangely Romantick, and partly because they are of the same kind with those that were printed by Wynkyn de Worde in the Year 1528. under the Title of **The Story of the noble Kynge Richard Cure de Lyon**, of which I never yet saw but one Copy, which is that in the Bodleian Library, that I formerly mentioned in a Letter about Geffry Chaucer that I writ in the Year 1709. to the before mentioned [1] ingenious Mr. Bagford, which Letter I shall insert at large in my Appendix [2], partly because (provided I may be allow'd to say this) it was much approved of by my late very honest and learned Friend Mr. John Urry, to whom some body had communicated it, and partly because it happened to be, upon several accounts, commended by some other Persons of distinction,

---

* *Jafes*, saith Fuller) that is *Joppa* in Palestine.

Kinge Richard wyth gud entent
To yat cite of * Jafes went
On morn he ſent aftur Sir Robert Sakevile
Sir William Wateruile
Sir Hubart and Sir Robart of Turnham
Sir Bertram Brandes and John de St. John.

Which very Rhythms I find also in those about Richard I. in the MS. of the Heralds Office, where they are thus express'd:

Kyng Richard with good entent
To that cite of Jafes went.
On morwe he ſent aftur Robert Sakeuile,
& Sire William the Wateruile,
Sire Hubert & Robert of Turnham,
Sire Bertram Braundis & John de Seynt Johan.

[1] §. III. [2] Num. IV.

to

to whom it was occasionally shew'd. Nor have I heard of but one more printed Copy of this Book about K. Richard (tho', without doubt, they were formerly common enough) and that is that in the Harleyan Library, which is much more clean and perfect than the Bodleian Copy, as I am assured by my ingenious Friend the Reverend Mr. Timothy Thomas, M. A. and Student of Christ Church, who takes notice[1], that the Title Page of this Book has a wooden Cut of a *Knight on horseback,* attended by a *Squire,* and these words on the top of the Page,

Kyng Rycharde cure dulyon:

that there then follows on the other side of the Leaf,

The prologue
Orde kynge of glorye
Suche grace and suche vyctory
Thou sendest to kynge Rycharde
That neuer was found cowarde
It is good to here Jestes
Of his prowesse and his conquestes
Many romayns men make newe
Of good knyghtes and of trewe
&c.

and [2] that at the End of the Book are these words:

[1] In his Letter to me Oct. 22. 1723. [2] So in his Letter to me June 20. 1723.

¶ *Thus*

¶ *Thus endeth the story of the noble kyge Rycharde cure de lyon. Imprinted at London by wynkyn de worde. The yere of our lorde.* M. CCCCC *and.* XXVIII.

The Author of which Rhythms about Richard I. seems to have been Robert of Brunne.

§. XIII. Now altho' I will not pretend to discover the Author of the additional Rhythms about our Kings to Robert of Gloucester, yet (at present) I am of opinion, that those about Richard the first in the Body of the Book, as well as the printed ones, were written by Robert of Brunne, the same, I mean, that translated Robert Grosthead's Manuele pecche (or Manuel de Peche) out of French, of which there is a small Fol. MS. in the Harleyan Library on Parchment, wrote very near the Author's time, having two Columns on each page, as those Rhythms about Richard the first, in the MS. of the Heralds Office, are likewise in two Columns, contrary to what Robert of Gloucester's are. This MS. of Robert of Brunne's Translation begins with this Title in *Red letters:*

Here bygynneþ the boke þat men clepyn in frenshe manuele pecche þe whych boke made yn frenshe Roberd Gros test Bishop of lyncolne.

Adyr and ſone and holy goſte }
þat art o god of myztes moſte }
At þy wurſchyp ſhul we bygyn }
To ſhame þe fend & ſhew oure ſynne }

Synne

Synne to shew vs to frame
God to wurschyp þe fend to shame

Shameful synne vs god to lete
Al þat men do bope smale & grete

Þe grete withoutyn pryuyte
Þat ben comune to me & the

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

This Author became famous very soon, even in the Year 1303. 31. Edw. I. (above thirty Years before he finished his Chronicle, a most rare Work, and known to very few of our Historians and Antiquaries, which was in the Year 1338.) as appears from the following Lines, which conclude the second Column of the first Page of the said MS. Translation of **Manuele pecche**, and were sent me [1], with what I have already said about this MS. by my before mentioned ingenious Friend Mr. Timothy Thomas, and he did it the more readily, not only because they have the *Author*'s (or rather *Translator*'s) Name, but because there are in them some other Circumstances, which may contribute to know him more perfectly.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .

To alle crystynmen undir sunne
And to gode men of brunne

[1] In a Letter dated Sept. 19. 1723.

And

And ſpeciall alle be name
þe ſelauſhepe of Symprynghame

Roberd of brunne greteþ zow
In al godenelle þat may to prow

Of Brymwake yn keſteuene
Syxe myle beſyde ſymprynghā euene

ẏ dwelled yn the prẏorẏe
Fyftene zere yn cumpanye

In þe tyme of gode dane Jone
Of camelton þat now ẏs gone

In hys tyme was ẏ here ten zeres
And knew and herde of hys maneres

Syþyn with dane Jone of clyntone
Fyue wyntyr wyþ hȳ gan ẏ wone

Dane ſelyp was mayſter þat tyme
þat ẏ began þys engliſh ryme

þe zeres of grace fyl þan to be
A þouſẏnd & þre hundred & þre

This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurrs in Stowe.

§. XIV. This Robert of Brunne is the same with Robert Brune, that is quoted in the Margin of the Folio Ed. of Stowe's Annals under the Year 1266. in the Reign of King Henry III. But what Book 'twas that Stowe made use of there, he hath not been pleased to acquaint us. Neither, indeed, is either Brune or Brunne mentioned in the valuable Fragments of Stowe, that I reprinted lately at the End of Heming from a Copy communicated to me by my ingenious and curious Friend Mr. John Murray. I call these Fragment's Stowe's, because I find the

the Conjecture I made in my Dissertation about them, *viz.* not only that John Stowe was the Author of them, but that they belong'd to some short Chronicle, to which was prefix'd some Calendar, to be very just and true. For indeed they belong'd to Stowe's Summary or Abridgment of the Chronicles of England. For tho' I have not yet met with a Copy of this Summary with these Fragments, in which we have an Account of his Authors, yet in a Preface that he put to one Edition of his Summary, which ends in the Year 1573. he expressly tells us, that he was the Author of those Fragments. I never saw (that I remember) but one Copy of that Edition, and it was given me by my very learned Friend Mr. Baker of Cambridge. This Copy, tho' a little imperfect both at the Beginning and End, is a very great Curiosity (as indeed all Editions of the Summary are now Curiosities) and I esteem it the more, because I cannot learn, that this Preface is in any other edition. There is a Calendar at the Beginning, which confirms my Notion also as to that Point. For better satisfaction I shall reprint this Preface in my Appendix [1], as I should have done in Heming had it then been in my possession. The Reader will perceive by it the disingenuous dealing of Richard Grafton towards John Stowe, a Man tho' of no great Learning, yet of incredible Industry in collecting

[1] Num. V.

The Kings side was his head, and his name written,
The crosse side, what Citie it was in, coyned [1] or smitten.
To poore man, ne to Priest, the peny fraises nothing,
Men giue God aye the least, they feast him with a farthing:
A thousand two hundred, fourescore yeares [2] add mo.
On this money men wondred, when it first began to goe.

The old money (adds Stowe) was not forbidden to goe with the new: and beſides theſe monies there was coyned groates, containing four pence the peece.

Regist. of Bury. The pound of eſterling money at this time containing 12. ounces, to wit, fine ſiluer (ſuch as men take into foyle or leaues, & is commonly called ſiluer of Gutheromlane) 11. ounces, 2. eſterlings, and one ſterling, and the other 17. d. ob. q. to be alay. Alſo the pound ought to wey of money, 20 s. 3. d. by accompt, ſo that no pound ought to be aboue 20. s. 4. d. nor leſſe then 20. s. 2. d. by account. The ounce to wey 20. d. The peny to wey 24. graines, &c.

The late learned Bishop Fleetwood hath reprinted the whole Passage from Stowe, to which he hath added many curious Particulars of his own, in pag. 44. of his excellent Book called *Chronicon Preciosum*, to which I shall refer the Reader.

Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard I. I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library.

§. XV. To what hath been said about my omitting the foresaid Rhythms (the Author of which, I believe, was Robert of Brunne) another reason may be added, and that is this, that in their stead I have published the true ge-

[1] *And* pro *or* in dicta Ed. [2] In qua Ed. *and* pro *add* habemus.

nuine

nuine ones upon that Prince of Robert of Gloucester himself, who left out whatever he thought Romantick, as we may gather from his own Words, and would therefore, without doubt, have pass'd by these, had they been in being in his time, which are so very fabulous as to be look'd upon only for their Antiquity, and as a Curiosity. I must confess, that these genuine Rhythms of Robert of Gloucester relating to Richard I. are wanting in the Harleyan MS. which ends in that Year of K. Stephen's Reign, in which the Empress Maud made her Escape from the Castle of Oxford, wherein she had been so long besieged by K. Stephen. But then they are extant in the MS. of the Cottonian Library, in which MS. the History is brought down to the latter End of K. Henry the Third's Reign, and 'tis from thence I have supply'd the Harleyan MS. the intire Continuation out of it being procur'd for me by my most generous Friend, before mentioned, the learned Dr. Mead, who, after he had got it transcrib'd wholly at his own Expenses, put it into the hands of another of my very good Friends the learned John Bridges, Esq. who is likewise mentioned above, and so it came safely to my hands.

The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cotonian MS.

§. XVI. Notwithstanding the Harleyan MS. breaks off so early, yet since it ends about the middle of a Page, and with a full Line, 'tis justly look'd upon by Criticks as a perfect Book. So that, in all likelyhood, the Author carried on the Work at first no farther, but after some time resumed it again, and brought it down to his own time. The Harleyan MS. seems to have been written in the Reign of K. Edward the Third, but the Cottonian one is judg'd to be about 50. Years older than the Harleyan: The Harleyan MS. agrees, (abating some Variations in the Language) so far as it goes, with the Cottonian one, and yet, without doubt, they were transcrib'd from different Copies, one from the Work as it was first finish'd by the Author, the other from a MS. that was compleated after the Author set about it again after some Intermission. The Cottonian MS. ends in the Year 1270. and so there wants but two Years to compleat Hen. the Third's Reign, who died Nov. 16. 1272. The Author undoubtedly finished that Reign, and 'tis agreed upon by such as have seen and considered it, that the Cottonian MS. which ends at the bottom of a Page, wants one Leaf, if not more, to fill up that Reign. And this, I think, is likewise confirm'd from some MSS. of Robert of Gloucester (whereof one is that in the Bodleian Library)

which tho' they want all K. Henry the Third's Reign, ending the History with that of King John, yet they have the following Verses, in which a reason (tho' a very poor one) is given for omitting the Author's Account of the Battle of Lewis and Evesham in those MSS.

Henry his sone come aftir, & his londe þan nome,
And fifti zeer & sixe helde his kyndome,
And also twenty daies, and ded was I wis,
And buried at Westmenstre, þer his bodi zit is.
Ther were in his tyme two Batailes in londe,
At Lewes and at Euesham, as I understonde,
That were hard longe, & zit ne ben forzete nouzt,
Ther fore in this boke ne ben thei nouzt wrouzt.
Of grace twelve hundred, & two and seuenty zeer,
Deve was the kynge Henry, as I seide zow eer.

Edward his sone than was, man of gret pris,
At Westmenstre crowned, stronge kynge & wis,
That of Walesche londe clenliche al owte
He wan the Signorie, were thei never so prowte[1].

§. XVII. Our Author, therefore, having brought his History to the End of the Reign of Henry the III. and being about to write that of Edw. I. was (as it seems to me) prevented from going farther by Death, but in what Year it was of

Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign. Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished.

[1] E Coll. nost. MSS. Vol. 58. p. 75. & Vol. 61. p. 232, 234. uti etiam è schedula quadam, mihi donata ab amicissimo ornatissimoque Juvene Jacobo West, A. B. è Collegio Balliolensi, qui meam in gratiam eandem perquam benevole è Codice MS. exscripsit. Hanc autem schedulam ad calcem Vol. 97. Collectaneorum nostrorum inserui.

that King's Reign it doth not appear, tho', I think, it must have been after the sixth, because in pag. 224. he mentions K. Arthur's fair Tombe, in the middle of the Quire, before the high Altar at Glastonbury, which Tombe was so rais'd in the Year 1278. or the sixth Year of Edw..I. by order of that King. The chief Characteristick, that himself hath given of the time in which he flourish'd, is that about the Battle of Evesham in the Year 1265. when he tells us, that the day, on which it happened, was very dismal and dark, and that himself, to his great Fear and Astonishment, was an Eye-witness of this dreadfull dark time.

Such was (saith he [1]) þe morþre of Euesham (vor bataile non it nas)
& þer wiþ Jesu Crist wel vuele [l. uuele] ipaied was,
As he schewede bitokninge grislich & gode,
As it vel of him sulue, þo he deide on þe rode,
þat þoru al þe middelerd derk hede þer was inou.
Also þe wule þe gode men at Euesham me slou,
As in þe Norþ West a derk weder þer aros,
Sodeinliche swart inou, þat mani man agros,
& ouer caste it þoȝte al þis lond, þat me miȝte vnneþe ise.
Grisloker weder þan it was ne miȝte an erþe be.
An vewe dropes of reine þer velle grete inou.
þis tokninge vel in þis lond, þo me þis men slou,
Vor þretti mile þanne. þis isei Roberd,
þat verst þis boc made, & was wel sore aferd.

[1] Pag. 560.

§. XVIII.

§. XVIII. This being so very clear and manifest a Testimony of the time, when our Historian lived, what reason can be thought of, that it should be overlook'd by the unknown Writer of some Remarks (sent me by the learned John Bridges, Esq.) at the bottom of the first Page of the Cottonian MS. touching the Age of Robert of Gloucester, especially since he pretended to draw his Proofs from the Author himself? One that undertakes such a Task should read every Passage over deliberately, and examine and sift them with the utmost care and nicety. But it seems this Writer rely'd more upon an interpolated MS. in the hands of the famous Mr. Thomas Allen of Gloucester Hall, than he did upon the genuine Work of the Author, and by virtue of that he brings Robert of Gloucester down to the latter End of Edward the Second, whereas he had no such Grounds to go upon in the genuine Book. "I "have got copied" (saith Mr. Bridges [1]) "half "a sheet [2] out of the Cottonian MS. *viz.* The "remarks, at the bottom of the first page, in "an unknown hand, touching the age of the "Author, and his proofs collected from Rob. "of Glocester himself, and also giving an ac- "count of two Fragments, which are inserted

Which, however, is pass'd over by one who endeavour'd to settle his Age from proofs extracted from his Chronicle.

[1] In his Letter to me Mar. 12. 1723. [2] See it printed in the Appendix, Num. VI.

" in bits of Paper in the 71st. *fol.* b. and 75. out
" of a Copy in the hands of one Tho. Allen of
" Oxford, which, as he says, extended no far-
" ther than to the Reign of K. Stephen, for
" which reason we at first imagin'd it to be the
" same with my Ld. Harley's, but upon looking
" for the said inserted passages we find them
" both wanting. The said remarks are in a hand
" of about 100. Years standing. His first proof of
" the age of Robert is from a passage in K. Ar-
" thur, where he speaks of the finding that
" King's bones at Glastonbury, from whence,
" he says, 'tis plain, that the Author liv'd after
" the time of Edw. I. whereas the Coffin with
" the Inscription, and that King's bones were
" discover'd, according to Leland, in the time of
" Hen. II [1]. of which you will be a much better
" Judge. His second proof is from one of the
" inserted passages, where 'tis said, that Seg-
" brit, or Sebert, King of the East Saxons, the
" Founder of Westminster Abbey, was buried
" there 706. Years ago; and he dying in the
" Year 617. brings the age of the Author to
" 1323. or the latter end of Edw. II. The third
" proof from *fol.* 98. b. is plainly a mistake, by
" taking Edw. the Confessor, there mention'd,
" for Edw. II. The Title in the Cotton MS.
" is in a hand very like Camden's thus, *Historia*
" *Regum Angliæ ad Henricum tertium à Rob. Glo-*

[1] A. D. 1185.

cestrensi,

'cestrensi, qui eodem tempore floruit, but the La- " tin is not elegant enough for him, in my " opinion."

§. XIX. Thus my excellently learned Friend, (who dyed just as I was putting the finishing stroke to this Work,) from whom I must humbly beg leave to dissent with respect to the last Proof, the Words being, as I conceive, to be understood not of Edward the Confessor, but of the first King Edward after the Conquest, in whose Reign Robert of Gloucester dyed. He justly acknowledg'd this King Edward to be a good Prince, but then as justly observes, that there was a vast Disproportion between K. Edward the Confessor and him, there being no Comparison to be made of the one with the other, if their Acts of Piety, Charity, Munificence and Hospitality be duly considered. But then whereas the Remarker observes [1], that several Leaves, relating to the History of Mellitus, to the Eucharist, and to Cedwall are wanting after *fol.* 71. in the Cottonian MS. this is certainly a mistake in him, and there is no doubt but the MS. is perfect there, and of much better Authority, than if they had been inserted. Interpolations (such as these are) are always to be look'd upon as Redundancies in any old Authors, and the MSS.

Our Author rightly observes the vast Disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edw. the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.

[1] See in the Appendix, pag. 610.

therefore, that are without them, are by no means deficient. Had I thought otherwise, I might have multiplied them from the MS. of the Heralds Office, where so much of this nature occurrs, as I could also have strangely inlarg'd Fordun's genuine Chronicle, when I set him out lately, had I judg'd it proper for me to blend and confound the Interpolations and the authentick Work together, as they are done in some MSS.

Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.

§. XX. When I first saw by the anonymous Remarks, that the Harleyan and Mr. Allen's MSS. notwithstanding their coming down to the same Period of time, were different, I began to be of opinion, that Mr. Allen's might have been the same, that was sometime in the Hands of the late Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Musical Small-Coal Man, which is thus mentioned in the first Part of the Auction Catalogue [1] of his Books: *A Poem of the Kings of Britain from Gurguyn Son of K. Belinus down to Henry* II. Tho' there be no Name to that Poëm in the Catalogue, yet I take it to be Robert of Gloucester's; but then that which makes me now think it to be different from Mr. Allen's is, it's not beginning so early as his did. So that perhaps this Copy of Mr. Allen came into some private Hands in

[1] Pag. 34. num. 14. of the MSS. in Folio.

France,

France, and I fear, that it is now quite lost. That which gives ground to this Suspicion is, the Fate of much the greatest Part of Sir Kenelm Digby's admirable Library, which, after Sir Kenelm's Death, fell into some such private Hands in France, and 'tis certain, that his Library consisted, in a very great measure, of Books, that had belong'd to Mr. Allen. 'Tis true, Sir Kenelm gave a good number of the MSS. Mr. Allen had left him, to the Bodleian Library, not long after Mr. Allen's Death, and there is now among them a MS. of Robert of Gloucester, being the same that I have spoke of at the Beginning [1] of this Preface, and was us'd by Mr. Selden when he was writing his History of Tithes [2]: but then this MS. (which comes to the End of K. John) is different from that referr'd to by the Remarker, and therefore will not at all invalidate what I have said about it's being lost in France. Yet if, after all, it will not be allow'd, that it was among those Books of his that were dispos'd of in France, it is probable it came to some other Person in England than Sir Kenelm. For Mr. Wood observes, that many of Mr. Allen's MSS. did not come to Sir Kenelm, but some to Mr. Richard James, and others to Sir Tho. Aylesbury.

[1] §. I. [2] Videsis Historiam dictam Decimarum, p. 206. & Auctorum Catalogum sub finem ejusd. in quo opere citat etiam Codicem Roberti nostri in Bibliotheca Cott.

" Soon

" Soon after" [Mr. Allen's Death, which happen'd on Sept. 30. 1632.] " the chief part of " his" [Mr. Allen's] " Library of incomparable " MSS." (saith Mr. Wood[1]) " coming into the " hands of Sir *Kenelm Digby*, as the owner be- " fore had appointed, they were the next year " given by him to the *Bodleian* or publick Li- " brary, where they yet remain. Some of them " had before, and about the time of *Allen's* " death, been got from him by *Rich. James* of " *C. C.* Coll. for the *Cottonian* Library, and others " came into the hands of Sir *Tho. Aylesbury*, " Master of the *Requests*, but where those are " now, in truth I cannot tell."

Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right Notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers.

§. XXI. But tho' the Remarker was not so lucky as to adjust the Age of Robert of Gloucester, yet Mr. Selden, by distinguishing the spurious Chronicle from that which is genuine, very readily found it out, and accordingly in his Notes on Eadmer[2], and in his great work *de Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*[3], places him under Edw. I. about which time he hath placed him also in his *Titles of Honour*[4], and in his Preface to Eadmer; (in which Preface he hath given us the Passage [something differing from the same as it is printed in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*] about William the Conqueror's Sur-

[1] Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 493. [2] Pag. 169. [3] Lib. I. cap. 10 p. 167. Amst. 1679 4to. [4] Ed. fol. 1631. p. 600. P. IIII.

vey)

vey) well knowing, that, notwithstanding a Leaf or two is wanting, in all likelyhood, in the Cottonian MS. he finished the Reign of Hen. III. in which Reign, from the Passage above transcrib'd, he plainly understood that he flourished, and that, carrying the Work no farther, he could not survive long after, at least not long enough to write the Glories of the Reign of Edw. I. Mr. Selden began very early to be acquainted with him, and no body hath done him more honour. He look'd upon him as a very valuable Historian, and, therefore, hath occasionally quoted him in several Places of his other Works, (particularly many times in his *Notes and Illustrations on the first Part of Drayton's Poly-olbion*) as well as in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*. Mr. Wood also had a right notion of his Age, but then he hath one observation, that I have not met with elsewhere, and that is, that he was personally present at Oxford, when the Fray, I have spoke of[1], happened between the Scholars and the Townsmen in MCCLXIII. *Hæc mihi Inquisitio quædam* (saith that Author[2]) *super eâ re facta succincte exhibuit, cui nec repugnant Poëtæ*[3], *ibi tum præsentis, carmina; quæ quamvis & succo careant & colore, cùm ex novitate tamen delectationem nonnullam afferre possint, subjungi forte mereantur.* What authority

[1] §. VII. [2] Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon. l. I. p. 111. [3] *Rob. Glocestrensis* in Hist. merica MS. fol. 152. b. 153. a.

Mr.

Mr. Wood had for this does not appear, tho', I suppose, he found it either in Brian Twyne or Dr. Gerard Langbaine. But whatever that authority was, I do not doubt but he went upon very good and sure grounds, and I shall, for that reason, reckon Robert of Gloucester not only as an Oxford Writer, but as actually present in that University at the very time of that famous Scuffle.

Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West Side of Stockwell Street.

§. XXII. It is said by several (and among others by Dr. Thomas Fuller [a]) that he was a Monk of Gloucester. Nor do I know (at present) of any good reason to think otherwise. It is very likely, therefore, that as a Monk he was sent hither by some of the Directors of the great Abbey of Gloucester, to take care of the Youth here, that they had under their care. In so

[a] "ROBERT *of* GLOUCESTER, *so called, because a* "Monk *thereof. He is* "*omitted (whereat I wonder)* "*both by* Bale *and* Pits, *except disguised under another* Name, *and what I cannot conjecture; they speak* "truly, *who term him a* "Rhimer, *whilest such speak* "courteously, *who call him a* "Poet. *Indeed such his* "Language, *that he is* dumb "*in effect to the Readers of* "*our age without an* Interpreter, *and such a one will* "*hardly be procured.* Antiquaries *(amongst whom* "*Mr.* Selden) *more value him* "*for his* History *than* Poetry, *his* lines *being neither* "strong *nor* smooth, *but* "*sometimes* sharp, *as may* "*appear by this* Tetrastick, "*closing with a pinch at the* "*paunch of the* Monks, *which* "*coming from the* Pen *of a* "Monk *is the more remarkable.*

* Cells or Portions.
† Ruler or Governor, *sed quære.*

"In the Citie of *Bangor* a great Hous tho was,
"And ther vndyr vii * Cellens and ther of ther † Nas
"That c.c.c. Moncks hadde othur mo
"And alle by hure travaylelyvede; loke now if they do so.

"He

much, that I am apt to think, that, upon that score, he resided in an old House, where Monks [1] used to study, on the West Part of Stockwell-street, in the same Place where Gloucester College (afterwards styl'd Gloucester Hall, and at length Worcester College, on the West Side of which the Monks of Gloucester had a Mill [2]) was since founded in the Year 1283 [3], or, as others [4] say, in 1281. by John Giffard Baron of Brimsfield, the same that was so famous for his Military Skill in the time of Hen. III. and

---

"*He flourished some* Four "hundred years *since under* "*King* Henry *the* second, "*and may be presumed to* "*have continued till the be-* "*ginning of King* John, "1200". Fuller's Worthies of England, p. 358. in Gloucestershire. Dr. Fuller did well to put in the Margin, *sed quære*, his Interpretation of nas being as wrong, as that of the Author of an Essay about the old English Poëts and Poëtry, printed in *the Muses Mercury*, which I have mentioned in my Glossary, under the word non. These Rhythms are extant also in p. 61. of the Introduction to Weever's *Ancient Funeral Monuments*, where Weever likewise, by his marginal explication *(seuen cels, or seuen portions, which had euery one a generall head or ruler ouer them)* seems to have been equally ignorant of the true signification of the word nas. By comparing these Rhythms with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, they will immediately appear to be corrupted. *Nas* signifies *was not*. The meaning of the Passage therefore is, *and there was not one of those Cells, but what had three hundred or more monks.*

[1] *Domus monachorum studentium in* Stockwell-strete *Oxon.* Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. p. 8. [2] Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. pag. 116, 117. [3] Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon. l. II. p. 338, 380. Reyn. Apostol. Bened. in Angl. Tr. 3. p. 53. Monast. Ang. Tom. I. p. 540. b. Dugdale's Baron. Tome I. p. 500. Tanner's Notitia Monastica, p. 184. [4] See Dr. Leonard Hutten's Antiquities of Oxford, p. 324. published by me at the End of *Textus Roffensis*.

is

is mentioned, for that reason, towards the End of this History. Nor will it seem strange, that any Monks of Gloucester should be here before the Foundation of any such College, if it be considered, that they were extremely desirous of having their Youth educated in Academical Learning, and that this grave occasion, in good measure, to the said John Giffard to build that College in this Place, which he had observed his Neighbours, the Monks of Gloucester, to take so much delight in, and he was very willing to free them from hiring any Tenements, and from being at other Charges for the Education of their young Men, for the future.

The strange Mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.

§. XXIII. Among others, that were conversant with the Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, was John Weever, a person right famous for his very usefull Book of ancient Funeral Monuments, where he hath published many Passages of this Chronicle, but with so little skill, that he not only confounds the spurious with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, but even ascribes the Prose part also to him. In pag. 60. of his Introduction, or Prefatory Discourse, he calls him Robert the Monk of Gloucester, and speaks of him as a Writer about the Year 1231, or the 15th. of Hen. III. And in the Book pag. 458, 459. brings him as low as Edw. I. in which he is right enough, provided he had not attributed

ted that to Robert of Gloucester which is none of his. But then he is quite out, when, in pag. 589. he brings him as low as Edw. II. and there transcribes a Passage in Prose, and calls it his, when it was really written by one, that lived in the time of Hen. VI. as the rest of the Prose was. 'Tis very strange, that so diligent a Man as Mr. Weever, should not see his Mistake, especially when he had the use of the very MS. that now belongs to the Heralds Office.

Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur.

§. XXIV. As I find, that the true Sirname of Robert of Brunne was Manning (for he calls himself in one Place [1] of his Chronicle **Robert Manning of Brunne**, now *Bourne* a Town in Lincolnshire where was a Monastery) so I wish also, that I could discover the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester. I have endeavour'd to do this, but as yet in vain. His Name does not at all occur, either in an ancient or modern Hand, in the Harleyan MS. Nor does it so much as once appear (that I know of) in the Text of the Cottonian MS. except in the Passage I have transcribed, where, however, we have no Sirname of any kind. Indeed I have before observed [2], that, at the beginning of that MS. the History is ascribed to Robert of Gloucester in a modern Hand, and 'tis by this Name that he is called by Antiquaries and Historians,

[1] See in the Glossary to this Work, p. 706. [2] See §. XVIII.

storians, who, without all dispute, had good Authority for it, tho' it does not appear, that any of them had met with his true Sirname, which, I suppose, came to be disus'd after his Fame was spread for his skill in History, just as that of Robert Manning's dwindled also, when he was once celebrated. Nor did Manning seem so desirous of being called by his true Sirname as by that of Brunne, that so Robert of Brunne might look as great as Robert of Gloucester. And that this was very great may appear from hence, that tho' many [1] Robert of Gloucesters are met with in old Registers, yet

" [1] One *Magister Rob. de* " *Glocestria* was one of the " Clerks or Chaplains to *John* " *de Oxon.* and *John Grey*, " Bishops of *Norwich*, and is " frequently met with as Wit- " ness to their Charters from " 1176. to 1204.—Bp. *Ken-* " *net* from some Register of " *Bury* saith, that he was an " Archdeacon in the Church " of *Norwich*, about *A. D.* " 1219. but this I have not yet " found my self. Perhaps he " was the same with the *Mr.* " *Rob. de Gloucestr.* nomi- " nated to the Archdeaconry " of *Stafford*, during the va- " cancy of the See of *Lichfield* " (Pat. 14. Joannis m. 3. n. 2.) " or with him who was Chan- " celor and Prebendary of " *Chichester*, and died 7. *Hen.* " III. (Rot. *Claus.* ejusd. " anni.)—By the Institution " Rolls of *Hugh Willis*, Bp. " of *Lincoln*, it appears, that " one *Mr. Rob. de Glovernia* " was Instituted *A. D.* 1229. " to the Church of *Teinton* " (Archid. Oxon.)

" Another *Rob. de Gloces-* " *tria* was Official to *Godfrey* " Bp. of *Worcester A. D.* " 1300. (Angl. Sacr. I. An- " nales Wigorn.) perhaps the " same who was Chancelor " to *Rob. Winchelse* 1304. " Reg. Winch.) and to *Walter* " *Reynolds* 1318. Arch- " bishops of *Canterbury* (Reg. " Henr. prioris Cantuar.)—— " There was one of the name " Prebendary of St. *Decumans* " and Canon of *Wells*, who " died *A. D.* 1321. (Registr. " Johannis Drokensford.)

" Another Rector of *S. Ann's* " *Aldersgate* 1358, (Newcourt.)

" And

(as far as I can learn) they were all eclips'd by the Historian, the Acts of all of them put together being not equal to what he hath done by compiling this Work. I have already noted, that neither the Name of Robert of Gloucester, nor that of the new Modeller of the History, is any where to be seen in the MS. of the Heralds Office. But the Work being discovered to be originally this Author's, on the Back side of the Book (which is of a late Binding in rough Leather) is put in golden Capital Letters,

ROBERT *
·OF·
GLOCESTER.

§. XXV. It must be confess'd, that in one part of this MS. at the very bottom, just on the Brink of a Page, are written these Words, in an old Hand (as ancient as, tho' a little different from, that of the Book:) *Hic incipit Robertus Moille.* When I first saw these Words, I thought *Moille* had been the true Sirname of

The name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton.

" And in *Lib. Epist. Acad.* " *Oxon. F.* Ep. 23. Letters testimonial for *Robert Glowcester*, A. M. but this was after the year 1400.

" Many other Secular " Clerks of both Names have " occurr'd to me since 1320. " none of whom probably " was our Historian."

Hæc, meam in gratiam è Collectane is suis à seipso descripta, cumamicissimoBakero Cantabrigiensi (qui perquam lubenter transmisit) communicavit vir eruditissimus Thomas Tannerus, Cancellarius Norwicensis.

Robert of Gloucester, but the Words being written on a Page, where no new matter begins, and it being in a Prose part of the Book, and that too in the Story of the Saxon Times, and there being not the least reference to any Thing in the Volume, I take them as put down at random, and not to belong, in the least, to the Author. And this is all I have to say with respect to this MS. unless it be, that, after the Reign of Henry the Third, the History goes on in Prose (being the same, abating some Alterations, as usually happens in MSS. of this kind, with Caxton's Chronicle, which John Stowe [1] is pleased to style a fabulous book, compiled by a nameless Author, but printed by William Caxton, and therefore called Caxton's Chronicle) to the famous Battle of Halidowne Hill, in the Year 1332. which was the sixth Year of K. Edw. the Third's Reign, in which the English got such an intire Victory of the Scots, and slew such a vast number of them, that, the Father of the Scottish Historians, John Fordun thought it too lamentable [2] a Subject, to enter into the particulars of it. In relation to this Battle there are some Verses in this MS. that are not in Caxton, for which reason I shall here publish them, advertizing at the same time, that, tho', perhaps, formerly there were other Leaves (for there are the Remains of

[1] Annals, p. 307. Ed. fol. [2] Scotichronicon, p. 1022.

one

one, that had been cut out, now plainly to be seen in it) in which, probably, the History had been carried somewhat farther, yet, at present, these Verses are the very last part of the History, and are brought in thus:——and þan þe Englyſſhe mynſtrelle betyn hure tabrys, & blowyng hure trompys, and pypers pypendyn loude, and made gret ſhoute vppon þe Scottes, & þan hadde þe Englyſſhe bacheleryſ eche of hem two whynges of archers, þe whyche at þe aſſemble orpẏdly drawyn hure bowes, and ſo þey ſmot þe Scottes, þat þey felle to grounde by many þouſandys, and anone þe Scottes by gonne to fle fro þe Englyſſhemen, forto have hure lyues. But whan þe knavys, þat were byhynde þe Scottes, to kepe hure horſis, ſawe þe diſcomfitour, þey prikyd awey hure maiſtrys hors, to kepe hem ſelf fro perile. And þan þe Englyſſhemen toke many of þe Scottyſſhe hors, and þey priked after þe Scottes, and ſlow hem doune rẏghte, and ſo men myghte ſe þe worþy and noble kyng Edward of Engelond, and his folk, how manfully þey chaſtyde þe Scottes.

¶ There þan men mighte ſe,
Many a Scott ſwiftly fle,
And þe Englyſſhemen after prikynge,
Wiþ ſharp ſwerdys þe Scottes ſtykynge.
& þer hure baneryſ weryn founde
Al diſplayd lẏeng on grounde.
And þay lay ſprad on blood,
As þey fought eten on þe flood,
That þe Englyſſhemen drent ſhold be,
For þat þey hoppyde to ſe.

For ſo þey hoppyde to ſpede,
Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede.
For þe Engliſſhemen myghte not fle,
But yf adrent þey ſhold be.
¶ þan þerto loth þey were,
For þey oughte nought in ſuche fere,
But þey kept hem on londe,
So þat þe Scottes myghte nought ſtonde.
For þey were fillyd to grounde,
Many a houſand in þat ſtounde.
¶ þe Engliſſhemen purſywid hem ſo,
Forþ the flood was al a go;
And þus þe Scottes diſcomfytyd were
In lytil tyme wiþ gret fere.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter.

§. XXVI. I have now finished what I had to say (and, I fear, I have writ too much) by way of Preface about Robert of Gloucester. He is certainly a great Curiosity, and I do not doubt, but he will be esteem'd as such. As the Acts of the Apostles, that I published from Archbishop Laud's MS. is the first intire Book, that ever was printed in England in Capital Letters, so this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester is the very first intire Book, that was ever printed in this Kingdom (it may be, in the whole World) in the manner I have done it, that is, in the black Letter,

ter, with a mixture of some Saxon Characters, which is the very Garb that was in vogue in the Author's time. The Saxon Characters, that are intermix'd, are ȝ or ȝ, (which some represent by ȝ,) þ or th (the top of which in many MSS. among which are to be reckon'd those of this Author, is made a little too short, *viz*, p, just like the Saxon double u) p or w (which, however, is but here and there) and ẏ or ỿ. I am very sensible, that the Obsoleteness of the Language will deterr many from Reading this very usefull Historian; but to such, as shall be pleased to make themselves acquainted with him (in order to which the Glossary, I have drawn up and subjoyn'd, may be of some service) he will appear very pleasant, entertaining and diverting, and they will value him the more, as he comes out in his primitive Dress. As it is a Reproach to us, that the Saxon Language should be so forgot, as to have but few (comparatively speaking) that are able to read it; so 'tis a greater Reproach, that the black Letter, which was the Character so much in use in our Grandfathers days, should be now (as it were) disus'd and rejected, especially when we know, the best Editions of our English Bible and Common Prayer (to say nothing of other Books) are printed in it.

Oxford April 14.
1724.

[In the present Edition, for the convenience of the Reader, the Roman Character has been adopted.]

Advertisement.

THE first Payment for this Work to Subscribers was one Guinea the large, and half a Guinea the small, Paper. The second Payment is to be the same with the first.

The Publisher is now printing (from a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library) **Peter Langtoft's Chronicle of England** (*as illustrated and improv'd by Robert of Brunne*) *from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the first's Reign.* To which will be added, besides a Glossary and other curious Papers, (1) *A Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use.* (2) *An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* The Price of this Work (which will make two Volumes in 8vo. and was never before printed) will be two Guineas the large, and one Guinea the small, Paper; whereof half is to be paid at the time of Subscribing, and the rest when the Copies are delivered. Subscriptions are taken in either by the Publisher at Edmund-Hall, or by John Rauce at the THEATER Printing House, in Oxford.

[1] ROBERT of GLOUCESTER's CHRONICLE.

ENGELOND[2] ys a wel god lond, ich wene of eche lond best,
Y set in þe ende of þe world, as al in þe West.
þe see goþ hym al a boute, he stont as an yle.
Here fon heo durre þe lasse doute, but hit be þorw gyle
Of [3] fol of þe selue lond, as me haþ y seye wyle.
From Souþ to Norþ he ys long eigte hondred myle:
And [4] foure hondred myle brod from Est to West to wende,
A mydde þo lond as yt be, and nogt as by þe on ende.
Plente me may in Engelond of alle gode y se,
Bute folc yt for gulte oþer geres þe worse be.
For Engelond ys ful ynow of fruyt and of tren,
Of wodes and of parkes, þat ioye yt ys to sen.
Of foules and of bestes of wylde and tame al so.
Of salt fysch and eche fresch, and fayre ryueres þer to.
Of welles swete and colde ynow, of lesen and of mede.
Of seluer or and of gold, of tyn and of lede.

---

[1] *Adjeci.* [2] *Vide Camdeni* Remaines concerning Brittaine, | *pag. 7. Ed. Lond.* 1629. [3] *I. e.* folc. [4] Two *Ar.*

Of stel, of yrn and of bras, of god corn gret won.
Of whyte and of wolle god, betere ne may be non.
Wateres he haþ eke gode y now, ac [1]at" be fore alle oþer þre
Out of the lond in to þe see, armes as þei be.
Ware by þe schippes mowe come fro þe se and wende,
And brynge on lond god y now, a boute in eche ende.
Seuerne and Temese, [2]Homber ýt is þe þridde.
And þenne is as wò seiþ þe pure lond a midde.
Homber bryngeþ by Norþ muche god and wyde,
Seuerne by West [3]Souþ," Temese by þe Est syde,
So þat of god y now, þat in oþer londes ys,
þer by comeþ to Engelond, þat no defaute nýs.
Yles þer beþ monỳ on a boute Engelonde.
Ac þer beþ to fore alle oþere þre ich vnderstonde:
The yle of Man þat me clepuþ, by twene vs and Yrlonde:
þe grete yle of [4]Orkeneye bi ȝonde Scotlonde.
þe þridde ys, toward Normandye, þe yle of Wyȝt bỳ Souþe.
þre þe beste ýles þese beþ and [5]mest couþe.
þe firste lordes and maystres, þat in Engelond were,
þese chef townes heo lette in Engolonde rere.
London and Euerwik, Lyncolne and Leycestre;
Colchestre and Canterburỳ, Bristow and Wircestre.
Chichestre and Grauntebrigge, and þanne Cirencestre;
Dorchestre and Wyncestre, and seþþe Gloucestre.
And oþer grete tounes, þat þo were in Walis.
þis was þo in Engolond [6]Britones were y wys.

---

[1] *Deest in Ar.* [2] And Humber is the þrydde *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Orcades *Ar.* [5] Most of name couþe *Ar.* [6] þat Brutones *Ar.*

En-

Engolond haþ i be y nome and [1] i worred y lome .
First þoru grete lordes þe emperoures of Rome,
þat fozte and wonne Engelond, and þat lond nome.
Seþþe þoru [2] Picardes and Scottes, þat to Engelond come,
þat worrede and destruiode, ac al clene ne wonne it nozt.
Seþþe þoru Englische and Saxones, þat hider were y brouzt
þoru Brutones forto helpe hem, and seþþe hem ouercome
þe Brytones, þat hem hyder brouzte, & þat lond hem bi nome.
Seþþe haþ Engelond y be [3] y werred y lome
Of þe folc of Denemark, [4] þat beþ nozt zet wel y some,
þat ofte wonne Engelond, and hulde yt by maystrie.
þe fyfte tyme won Engelond þo folc of Normandie,
þat a mong vs woneþ zet, and schulleþ euer mo:
We schul here aftur in þis boke telle of al this wo.
Brytones were þe firste folc þat to Engelond come.
Foure kynges heo maden þo in þis kyndome.
þe kyng of West sex, & of Kent, & of Norþomber þe þridde,
And þe kyng of þe March, þat was here amidde.
þe Saxones and þe Englische þo heo hadden al an honde,
Fyue and þritti schiren heo maden in Engelonde.
Souþsex and Soþerei, Kent and Estsex,
Barkschire and Hamptschire, and þenne Myddelsex,
Dorsete and Wiltschire, and Somersete al so.
Deneschire and Cornewayle, and Gloucestre þer to.
Schropschire, and of Wircestre, and of Herford.
Chestre schire and [5] Warwil, Derby and Stafford.

---

[1] Y wonne *pro* i worred *in Ar.* [2] Pictes *Ar.* [3] Y werred and y nome *Ar.* [4] þat were nought welcome *Ar.* [5] *Sic.*

Lyn-

Lyncolne ant Hontyndone, and of Bedeford.
Bockyngham and Norþamptoun, and of [1] Oxenfoþ.
Norþfolc and Soþfolc, and Grauntebrigge al so.
Hertfort & Leycestre, and Nothyngam þer to.
Euerwik and Cardoel, and Norþomburlonde.
þese schires wiþ oute Walis beþ alle in Engelonde.
Seuentene bischopriches in Engelond beþ also.
Cardoil, and Duram, and Euerwik þer to.
Of Elẏ and of Cauntarbury, of Norþwiche, of Rouchest
Of London, of Salusbury, of Chichestre, of Wynchestr
Of Lyncolne, and of Chestre, and of Wircestre,
Of Herford, and of Baþe, and al so of Excestre.
þenne þer beþ in Walis þre wiþ oute more,
Seynt Dauid, and Landaf, and seþþe Bangore.
Of Euerwik and Canterbury beþ erchbischopes two.
Duram beþ and Cardoil vader Euerwik y do.
And alle þe oþer of Engolond, and al so of Walis,
Under þe erchbischop beþ of Canterbury y wis.
þe Saxones in heore power þo heo were so rine,
Sene kynges heo maden in Engelonde, and seþen bute fyu
þe kyng of Norþomberlond, and of Est Angle al so;
Of Kent, and of West Sex, and of þe March þer to.
þe kyng of þe March þilke tyme hadde wel þe beste,
Muche del of Engolond, þe on half al bi Weste.
Wircestre schire, and Warwik, and also of Gloucestre,
þat ys nez al þe bischop riche of Wircestre.
He hadde eke þer to Chesturschire, and Derbyschire also,
And Stafford schire, þat beth alle in on bischopriche y do.

[1] *L.* Oxenford.

In þe bischop riche of Chestre; and ȝet he hadde þer to
Schropschire som, and half Warwik schire al so.
þis kyng hadde eke Herfortschire, þat on bischopriche is;
Ac Schropschire naþ haluendel to þilke bischopriche i wis.
And som of Gloucestre schire, and of Warwik schire al so.
ȝet hadde þe kyng of þe March wel more lond þer to,
Northamptschire, & Bokyngham, and þe schire of Oxenfort;
Leycetre, and Lyncolne, and þe schire of Hertfort;
þat is al on bischopriche, þat of Lyncolne ys,
þat wule was at Dorchestre bi syde Oxenfort iwis.
ȝet hadde þe kyng of þe March Notyngham schire þer to,
In þe bischop riche of Euerwik, ac þo nas hit noȝt so.
And al Walis ȝet þer to, þat a gret lond ys:
Al þis was þenne y cleped the March of Walis.
For þat lond þat bi twene Homber & the water of Temese y wis
Ich wene in þe bischop riche of Lyncolne ys.
And þe bischop riche of Lyncolne, and bi West al þat lond,
þe kyng som tyme of þe March hadde al in hys hond.
þe kyng of West sex hadde þo al Wilt schire y wys,
And Dorsete and Barkschire, þat o bischopriche is.
þe bischopriche of Salesbury, & al Souþsex, he hadde also,
þe welde & al þe bischopriche of Chichestre þer to.
And Souþampschire & Soþereỳ, þat on bischop riche ys.
þe bischopriche of Wynchestre, þat ȝet ys þere y wys.
And Somersete, þat to Welles þike tyme drow,
And now ys þe bischop riche of Baþe, ȝe wyteþ wel y now.
Seþþe hadde þe kyng of West sex al Denene schire ỳ wys,
And Cornewayle, þat in þe bischopriche of Exetre ys.

þe kyng of Kent was þo kyng of al þo lond of Kent,
þer were two bischopes, & ȝet nys it nouȝt y went.
þe bischopriche of Canterbury, þat of Engelond ys hext,
And þe bischopriche of Roucestre, þat in the West syde is next,
þe kyng of Est Angle kyng was of Northfolc,
þe bischopriche of Northwych, and al so of Soþfolc.
And of þe bischopriche of Ely, þat þe yle of Ely ys,
And of al Cambrugge schire, þat þerto falleþ y wys.
þe kyng of Northumburlonde kyng was ich vnderstonde
Of al þo lond bi ȝonde Homber anon in to Scotlonde.
þese fyue kynges were þo, ac bute on now þer nys.
For þe kyng of West sex al þe oþer wan y wys,
And was seþþe al one kyng, as oure kyng now ys.
Here afturward in þis bok me schal here al þis.
In [1] þe contre of Canterbury mest plente of fysch ys.
And mest [2] chase a boute Salesburi of wylde bestes y wys.
At London schippes mest, & wyn at Wyncestre.
At Herford schep & orf, & fruyt at Wircestre.
Sope a boute Couyntre, yrn at Gloucestre.
Metel, [3] as led & tyn, in þe contre of Excestre.
Euerwik of fairest wode, Lyncolne of fayrest men,
Grantebrugge and Hontyndone mest plente of dup fen.
Elỳ of fairest [4] place, of fairest siȝte Roucestre.
Euene aȝeyn Fraunce stonde þe contre of Chichestre,
Norwiche aȝeyn Denemarc, Chestre aȝeyn Yrlond,
Duram aȝeyn Norwei, as ich vnderstonde.

---

[1] *Vide* Camden's Remaines, *p.* 8. [2] Chalke at Saresbury, and wild bestes y wys *Ar.* [3] And *pro* as *in Ar.* [4] Plate *Ar.*

þre

þre wondres þer beþ in Engolond, none more y not.
þat water of Baþe ys þat on, þat euer ys yliche hot.
[1] And fersch & euere springe, ne be chele no so gret.
Suche baþes þer beþ fele in þe clos & in þe stret."
Upon þe pleyn of Salesbury þat oþer wonder ys,
þat [2] Stonhyngel ys y clepud, no more wonder nys.
þe stones stondeþ þer so grete, no more ne mowe be,
Euene vp ryȝt & swyþe hye, þat wonder it is to se:
And oþer liggeþ hye aboue, þat a mon may be of a ferd,
þat vche mon wondre maý how heo were first a rered.
For noþer gyn, ny monne's strengþe, yt þynkeþ, ne myȝte yt do.
Telle me schal here afturward of þis wondres boþe two,
And how heo were first y mad. þe þridde wonder ys
Up þe hul of þe pek. Norþ wynd þere y wys
Out of þe erþe ofte comeþ, of holes as yt were,
And bloweþ vp of þilke holes, so þat yt wolde a rere
And bere vp grete cloþes, ȝef heo were þer ney,
And blowe hem here and þere vpon þe lofte on heý,
Fayre [3] weyes monyon þer beþ in Engolonde,
Ac foure mest of alle þer beþ ich vnderstonde,
þat þe olde kynges mad, wer þoru me may wende
From þe on ende of Engelond uorþ to þe oþer ende.
From þe Souþ tilleþ in to þe Norþ [4] Eningestret;
And from þe Est in to þe West Ikenildestrete.

---

[1] *Desunt in Ar.* [2] Stonhenge *Ar.* [3] *Vide Dugdalii* Antiquities of Warwickshire, *p.* 6. & *Ductorem nostrum Historicum, Vol. II. p.* 77. [4] Ermingstreet *vulgo.* *At in Ar.* lyne *pro* Eningestret *habemus. Sic enim illic:*

Lýne me clepeth eke thulke wey, he goth thorgh Glouceter,
And thorgh Circetre euene also,

þat Elyne was y clepud, þis bataile first bi gan.
An hey mon þer was by fore, þat me clepude Dardan.
Of hym com þe gode Bruyt, þat was þe firste man
þat lord was in Engelond, as y ȝou telle can.
Dardan bi get Troye, þat god mon was & wys.
Troie bi get Priamus, & al so Anchis.
þese were in þis batail of mest myȝt and mayn.
Anchis bi get Eneas, and Eneas Ascayn.
Ascayn bi get Silui, of whom þe Brut com.
For Eneas aftur þe bataile Ascayn ys sone nom,
And Silui Ascaine's sone, & oþer þat þer were,
In to þe lond of Lumbardy wende, & wonede forþ þere.
þo Silui hadde bi gete a child, fayn he wolde y wyte,
What mon þat child schulde be, þat he hadde y gete.
A clerk þoru enchantement hym bi gan to telle,
[1] þat þe schulde first fader and moder quelle:
And seþþe he schulde mony lond ouer passe and wende,
And mony bataile ouer come, and seþþe, at þe ende,
To a noble lond he scholde come, & þere al lord be,
And kynges come of hys blod, & þat me schulde se.
[2] þat Eneas bi gan hys of spryng to Lumbardie first brynge
þre þousant & sixe & tuenti ȝer fro þo worlde's bi gynnynge.
þo þe clerk hadde y seid hys enchaunterye,
þer fore Silui hym let sle. ac þat was lytel maistrie.

---

[1] þat þat childe sholde furst *Ar.* [2] þre þousend yer and foure skor fram the worlde's gynnynge Was, byfore þat Eneas hys tem to Itaille þus gan brynge. þo þis clerk hadde y sed al hys enchaunterye, Siluius let hym sle, litel was þat maistrye. *Ar.*

For

For hit com ner þe later, as he hadde y seyd.
For [1] in trauayl of hys beryng hys moder was first ded.
þo þis child was y bore, me lette hym clepe [2] Bruyt.
First lord he was in Engolond, of wham me speke þ ȝet.
þe child wex & wel þrof, as þe clerk seyde er.
Seþþe þo yt hadde þe elde of fyftene ȝer,
As he wolde schete an hert, al a ȝeyn hys wille
To deþe he schet ys owne fader, þat he lay þer stille.
Hit hym for þouȝte sore y now, ac noþeles ȝet he was
Out of þat lond ydriue for þat deolful cas.
In to þe lond of Grece he wende, [4] & þo wonede he þere
Of þe kynde of Priamus mony men, þat þor were,
þat wer þer of hys nexte blode, þat were þer in seruage.
Here elderne þer by fore were y nome in ostage
Fram þe bataile of Troie, in wreche as it were,
For þe grete slauȝt and wo, þat here kynde dude þere.
[5] þe Bruyt among hem com, to such prowes he drow,
þat [6] al þe kyn, þat hym say, hadde of him joye ynow.
So þat at þe laste, þo he [7] in stat was,
And þem þouȝte, þat ys pere in þe world nas,
þe folc of þat ilke blode aboutein hym drowe faste,
þat he scholde ys owne kynde of þat seruage caste.
[8] Heo comen alle a bouten hym, so þat þe Brut y sey,
þat heo were of gret power, & noble folc & hey,

[1] In trauail as he was bore, his moder was þo deed *Ar. è regione vero (in margine) manu recentiori*, his mother dyed in childe bede. [2] Brut *Ar.* [3] Yut *Ar.* [4] And þenne fond he þere *Ar.* [5] þo þat Brut *Ar.* [6] Al his kyn, þat wisten hit, þer of had ioye y now *Ar.* [7] Manne's stat *Ar.* [8] Hy come al a bouten hym, & whanne hem alle he sey,

Heo ȝarkeden hem to gedere, þat a fair ost yt was.
To þe kyng of Grece he sende, þat hatte Pandras,
þat heo scholde so noble folc, þat of so gret blod come,
Out of seruage lete, and out of þraldome,
[1] Or hym ne schulde not wondrỳ, þaỳ heo dude here myȝt
With here bodies, þat aȝte be so free, for to wynne here ryȝt.
þo kynge hadde in hys þoȝt gret [2] bysmar of þis þyng.
Bellum. He [3] ȝarkede is ost anon, to grounde hem to bryng.
þis Brut a ȝeyn hym with ys ost wel wyssyche drowe.
[4] Heo smyton þer a batayle hard and strong ynow.
þe prowes þat þe Brute dude no tonge no telle ne maỳ,
Mony was þe gode body þat hym self slou þat daỳ.
What halt yt longe to telle? Hys fon he ouercom,
Capcio regis. And Pandras, þe stronge kyng, as [5] pryson he nom.
þis kyng þo he was y nome, here wille dude anon,
[6] And broȝte hem out of þraldom, þo he say non oþer won.
He by gan to loue Brut so muche, for ys faire cheiance,
þat he wyllede, mest of alle þynge, to hym enlyance.
" Brut," he seyde, " þo art now þe beste body þat ys.
" For þe noble kyn, of wom þou art, & for þi prowes y wis,
" Ych obligi me to þe, and my kyndom al so.
" A doȝter ich haue of gret prys, & noble & god al so,
" Y ȝeue here þe to þi wyf, &, ȝef þou wolt by leue here,
" þe þridde del [7] my kyndom y ȝeue þe to be my fere.

Hỳm þoughte he hadde power ynow of noble folk & hey. He gaderede hem alle to gedere faste, a fayr oste þer was *Ar.*

[1] Oþer hym ne sholde nought wondry, þough hy, for hure ryht, Wiþ hure bodies make hem fre dude þer to hure myght *Ar.* [2] Skorne *Ar.* [3] Ordeyned *Ar.* [4] Hy *Ar.* [5] Prisoner *Ar.* [6] þo he non oþer bote y sey, he yaff hem hure fredom *Ar.* [7] Of my *Ar.*

" And

" And ȝef þou nylt not here be, ac wolt ȝet fonde more,
" Gold & seluer ich wol þe ȝeue, & y now of eche store:
" And take [1] þe my doȝter: for mon þou art y wys,
" To wynne ȝet a kyndom, wel beter þan myn ys.
þis kyng & þe Brut were at on, þat to wyf he tok
Hys doȝter Innogen, ac hys lond he for sok. Sponsacio Innogen.
[2] þe kyng tok Brut ys owne body, in ostage as yt were,
For te hit were to gedere y broȝt al þat [3] he wolde a rere.
He lette sende hys messageres in to al Grece wel wyde,
And [4] lette fulle corn, and oyl, & wyn, by [5] iche syde.
[6] Me chargede þre hondret schippes, & foure & twenti þer to,
þer wyþ, & mid al oþer god þat myȝt þer inne do.
þo þis schippes ȝare were, and ful of [7] ruche gode,
And þis mayde y spoused was of so [8] riche blode;
þe kyng de lyuerede þat folk out of seruage,
And Brut de liuerede þe kyng out of hys ostage, Recessus Bruti.
And nom hys leue fayre of hym, and þonkede hym all gode,
And nom with hym al þat folk, þat he fond þer of hys blod,
And hys wyf Innogen, and to schip wende,
[9] Heo nuste toward wuche lond, but as God hem sende.
þe deol þat made Innogen, no tonge ne telle ne may.
Heo cryede and wep with sorwe y now, & ofte y swone lay.
[10] þo ho wende from al hire kyn, & from al þing þat heo knew,
And nuste on erþe whiderward, bute as the wynd hem blew,
And wiste þat heo ne schulde neuer a geyn com ny go,
Ne se fader, ny oþer kyn, lord! þat hire was wo?

[1] To þe my doughter, for noble þou ert and wys, *Ar.* [2] þe kyng to Brut his body toke, *Ar.* [3] Hy *Ar.* [4] Het *Ar.* [5] Euery *Ar.* [6] He *Ar.* [7] Eche *Ar.* [8] Heygh *Ar.* [9] þey *Ar.* [10] When sheo wende *Ar.*

Brut hire cluppede and cussede, & comfortede hire y now,'
[2] þat he ne myȝte hire herte change, þat heo to sore ne drow.
Twey dayes [2] heo wende in þe se fro the lond of Grece,
[3] So þat he comen to an yle, þat me clepuþ Leogece.
þider [4] heo gonne ryue, and Brut sende vp þere
þre hondred men y armed wel, to loke wat lond yt were.
þis men wende a boute wyde, & mon fonde [5] heo non,
Bute faire contre & wylde bestes mony on.
A temple [6] heo fonde faire y now, & a mawmed a midde,
[7] þat ofte tolde wonder gret, & wat þing mon bi tidde.
þis men of þis wylde bestes caȝte & schete y nowe,
And to a store hem of mete faste to schip drowe.
[8] Of the mamet heo tolden Brut, þat heo fonden þere.
And he nom with him tuelue men þe beste þat with him were,
And a clerk þat kouþe enchantement, & to þis temple drowe,
And offrede to þis mamet, and [9] honourede hym ynowe,
[10] And' [11] forte wyte in what stude hys wonyng were.
þo he hadde hys bone y do, he fel on slepe ryȝt þere.
Hym þouȝte þe ymage in hys slep tolde hym hys chcance.
" Brut," he saide, " passe uorþe al þe lond of France
" West, toward þike stude as þe sonne draweþ aȝen eue.
" þer þou schalt fynden a place [12] god in to byleue.

---

[1] He ne myghte hure sorwe slake nought, to sorwe so heo drow *Ar. om sso* þat. [2] He sailey de *Ar.* [3] Fort he come to *Ar.* [4] þey *Ar.* [5] Hy *Ar.* [6] Hy *Ar.* [7] þat Dyane godesce cleped was, and tolde ofte what bi tydde *Ar.* [8] Of þat godesce hy tolde Brut, þat hy *Ar.* [9] Worsheped *Ar.* [10] *O. mittit Ar.* [11] Forto *Ar.* [12] Good and fair inne to byleue *Ar.*

" An ÿle god & riche y nowe, þe se goth al a boute:
" Wule þat lond was ÿ fulled with [1] geandes strong & proude.
" And now yt ys as a wildernesse, for no mon þer inne nys.
" To þe it wole be god and riche, & to alle þyne y wys.
" And yt worþ an oþer Troie to þe, and so god,
" þat þer schul kynges come & springe of þi blod.
þo Brut a wok of hys slep, & al þis vnder stod,
Hys men he tolde al þis cas with wel [2] bliþe mod.
Heo ȝarkeden hem & wenden uorþ, þe wynd was god y noȝ,
So þat toward þe West here schippes euene drowȝ.
So þat [3] with þritty dayes to Affric heo come,
[4] And arst heo wende vp on þe lond, & fette hem prey y lome,
And foȝte & slowe muche folk, for no mon hem at stod.
From Affric þei wente uorþ with the wynd þat was god.
So þat heo fonden in a stude here kynrede bi cas
[5] Of noble mon Hercules, þat wyle of Troie was.
Corineus hatte here souereyn, þat so strong was of honde,
þat hym ne myȝte no mon ne geant at stonde.
þo þis folc to gadere com, and Brut Corineus fond
þo strengest mon & þe meste þat hym þoȝte in eny lond,
[6] Heo a coyntede hym a non, and bi comen frendes gode,
Boþe for here prowes, and for heo were of on blode.
þo þis company was strong, & more þan hit was er,
Al in on company heo wenden uorþ þer
In þe see with god wynd, so þat at þe laste
In to þe on ende of Gasycone þe wynd here schippes caste.

---

[1] Geauntz ferce & proute *Ar.* [2] Joyful *Ar.* [3] Byþynne *Ar.* [4] And þer hy wende eft a londe, and hure preye nome *Ar.* [5] Of þe noble *Ar.* [6] Hy a queyntede *Ar.*

Corineus þis stronge mon to hondred men with hym nom,
And wende [1] on lond to honty þo he to lond com,
[2] Forte porchase hem mete, and þe kyng Goffare
(þat was kyng of þe lond) þo he was ware,
þat such folk was y armed (as me seyde) & ryuen vp hys lond,
And nuste wat folk it was, to hem he sende hys sonde,
To wyte, weþer [3] he wold pes, oþer [3] heo nolde non.
þe messageres [4] þei wenden uorþ metten hem ech on.
Corineus with hys company as heo dude honte þere,
Heo aschede at Corineus, how heo so hardi were,
To honte vp þe kynge's lond, bute he leue hem ȝeue.
Corineus saide, þat he nolde nomon asche leue,
To [5] honto and to wynne hys mete, & habbe solas & game.
þe maister of þe messageres ([6] Imberd was ys name)
[7] Bende ys bowe & schette a non to Corineus to gronde.
Corineus tok hys bowe of hym, & smot hym a wonde
A bouen on þe scolle with ys owne bowe a non,
þat þe scolle to breke in peses mony on.
Hys felawes þo heo say þis bi gonne to fle echon,
And tolde þe kyng fore how the game was al igon.
þe kyng [8] made hym wroȝ y now, & no wonder yt was,
þat strange men in hys owne londe dude hym such trespas,
þat a sailede ys lond, and to robbery drowe,
And robbede ys bestes and ys game, and hys men slowe.

---

[1] Up to hunty *Ar.* [2] Forto *Ar.* [3] Hy *Ar.* [4] As hy wende forþ mette hem *Ar.* [5] *L.* honte. [6] Hymbert *Ar.* [7] Bende his bowe to shete hym, & Corneus in þat stounde. Bynam Hymbert his bowe anon, & ryght hym one wounde Right euene vpon þe skulle *Ar.* [8] Hym made wroþ ynow, *Ar.*

He

He wende with al ys power, and sailede hem a non. Bellum.
And Brut & Corineus [1] prest were, and here men echon;
And smyten a batail so strong, þat no tonge telle may
þat folk, þat þer was y slawe on eyþer side þat day.
Corineus ys [2] swert sone brac, so strong he smot & faste.
For no swerd myȝte with ys dunt none lengur laste.
Mid hym he hadde a stronge axe, þat mony mon brozte to deþe,
So strong & so gret, þat an oþer hit scholde hebbe vn neþe.
Corineus þer with harde smot & sturede [3] hym a boute,
And made his wey bi eiþer syde, and percede þe route.
Mid þre hondred knyȝtes a duk, þat het Siward,
A sailede Corineus hymself [4] a forward.
He smot Corineus harde y noȝ, þat he hit sore felde,
And ȝet he hente þe stroc muche del vp on þe schelde.
Corineus was þo somdel wroþ, ys axe on hey he drow,
And smot hym vpon þe hed mid god ernest y now,
[5] And for clef al þat hed, & the bodi a non to gronde.
þo myȝte Siward segge, þat he hadde ys [6] is" pere y fonde,
þo Corineus [7] was alles wroþ, so grete strokes he ȝaf,
þat þe body of eche þat he smot or þe hed he to clef,"
Oþer he smot of þe [8] arm, or þe hond, or þe heued:
No lym þat he smot [9] mid þe bodi bi leued.
Amty place he made a boute, [10] & folc fleu hym faste.
A wonder maister [11] he was on, þat hem so kowþe a gaste.

[1] A redy were, to meten hem echon *Ar.* [2] Sword *Ar.* [3] Hym swyþe aboute *Ar.* [4] Al a yoreward *Ar.* [5] He for cleuede al þat heued, his body fel to grounde *Ar.* [6] *Redundat.* [7] Was forsoþ so wroþ, þat such duntes he yaf, þat euery þat he hitte aright, his deþ forsoþ he haþ *Ar.* [8] Eren *Ar.* [9] Was wiþ *Ar.* [10] þe folk fleygh fulfaste *Ar.* [11] þere he was, þat hem *Ar.*

So faste he slow of þis men, and to gronde caste,
þat þe kyng with a fewe men hymself flew at þe laste.
þo þe batail was y do, Brut and þis Corineus
A storede hem a bout of richesse and chateus,
Of corn, of wyn, of alle god, & to schippe faste drowe,
And brende þe contre, and þe folc faste slowe.
þo heo hadde al bare imad þe contre al aboute,
And [1] heo wel y stored, of noþing þei were in doute;
Heo wende to schip anon, & euene gonne drỳue
To þe contrei of Toures, & þere þei gonne a riue.
A fair place heo cheson hem, & þere heo gonne a rere
Walles wyde and strong ynow, casteles as hit were,
And a storede hit wel y now, & here god þer inne bere,
For to a bide þe kyng, ȝef he wolde a sayle hom þere.
þe kyng Goffar þiderward gret power and ost nom
Of France and of oþer londes, and toward Toures come.
þo [2] heo seye þe grete walles, casteles as it were,
Ou! he seide, þe grete despit, þat y se to me here,
þat [3] þis file and komelynges casteles leteþ rere
Op on my lond baldeliche, as me for to a fere.
Ne doþ heo me schame ynoȝ. how myȝte heo do more?
Bute y be þer of a wreke, y schal dye for sore.
For Gode's loue, staleworþe men, armeþ ȝou faste,
To sle þese komlynges, and here casteles a doun caste.
þis folc hem armede anon, and baneres gonne rere,
And departede here ost in twolf partyes þere.

---

[1] Hem.self *pro* heo *in Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* [3] þese foule komelynges *Ar.*

Brut

Brut ordeynede ys ost, and sette hem wyslyche,
And with god herte a ȝeyn þe folc wende baldeliche.
þere heo smyton a batail, harde and strong ynow,
And þis folc of Troie of þe Frensche faste slow,
ȝe two þousand and mo in a lytul stonde,
So þat þe Frenche were neȝ y brouȝt to gronde.
And naþeles here [1] ferd wax faste a boute wyde, Bellum.
For heo hadde suche þritti men, as were on þe [2] oþer.
For here power and here ost wax euere so faste,
þat þis gode folk of Troie ouer come were at þe laste,
And flow into here casteles, þo heo nadde oþer won.
þe ost withoute of France bi segede hem a non,
And bi lai hem so faste, þat neȝ to gronde hem broȝte.
So þat Brut and Corineus an quoyntyse hem by þoȝte,
[3] þat þis Corineus bi nyȝt wende out with gret route
At a posterne stilleliche, þat heo nuste it not with oute.
A morwe Brut with inne with ys ost out drowe,
And smot with þis Frensche men batayle strong y now,
þere were mony þousand [4] slawe in a stonde.
Brut hadde a [5] neueu, þat mony broȝte to gronde.
For he slow mid his power, and [6] broȝte to schame,
Six hondred, as me seiþ, [7] Tourus was ys name.
At þo last he was hym self y slawe, þer was deol y nowȝ.
þo þe batail was ney y do, Corineus uorþ hym drowȝ.
With six þousant noble men, out of an wode þere,
And com vp þis Frenssche men, þo heo al weri were,

---

[1] Ost *Ar.* [2] *Adde*, syde.
[3] þat þis Corneus sholde out wende by nyghte wiþ *Ar.*
[4] A slawe in a litel stounde *Ar.* [5] Cosyn *Ar.* [6] Broughte eke to *Ar.* [7] Tours *Ar.*

And

And slow hem to gronde al for noȝt, so þat at þe laste,
Heo, þat myȝte of scape, bi gone to fle faste:
And heo of Troye siwede with oute eny feyntyse,
For wen þe strengþe faileþ, me mot take quoyntyse.
[1] þe Brut and Corineus hadde here wylle of þis þing,
Heo lette here men, þat were y slawe, faire on erþe bryng.
And Tours þe gode knyȝt, þat so muche folc er slowȝ,
Brut lette brynge on erþe with honoure y nowȝ,
And lette a fair tabernacle in honour of hym rere,
And fair hous al abouten hym, & bi gan þe cite þere,
þat noble cite was and ys, and for Tours þat þer lay
þe cite me clepede Tours, as me doþ ȝet to þis day.

BRUT & Corineus þo he hade here wille in al þe londe,
He [2] wende & saide al a boute, for noþing myȝte hem at stonde,
Heo chargede here schippes faste and wel with alle gode,
And wende uorþ with god wynd & wel dryuyng flode;
And driue euer West ward, so þat in god pais
Heo come here to Engolond to [3] hauene of Tottenais,
To þe on ende of Engolond, as in þe West Souþe,
[4] A lute bi fore Cornewail, as in an hauene's mouþe.
þis was þre þousant, and foure score, and þre ȝer
From þat þo world was first mad, þat [5] þat" heo ariuede þer.

---

[1] þo *Ar.* [2] Wende a boute & preyede faste, ne myght hem nought astonde *Ar.* [3] þe hauene *Ar.* [4] A lyte by Norþe Cornewaille, in Deueneshire hit is couþ. Hit was þre þousand *Ar.* [5] *Redundat.*

And

And er God were y bore euene yt was al so
[1] Ellene hondred ȝer and þritti ȝer and two.
þus com to Engelond þe firste men y wis,
þat euere wonede in Engelond, þat were Brut & hys,
þo Brut and his men þus come first a londe,
Heo wende a boute wyde þe [2] contreis forto fonde.
Gret plente heo fonde of fissch, as heo wente, by þe weye,
Of wodes and of riuers, as is in þe contreȳ.
Lond heo fonde god y now to tilie, and alle god,
So þat [3] to bi leue þer here herte fel and stod.
[4] Heo fonden a vewe geandes, for broide men as yt were. Gigantes.
In to Cornewaile heo driue hem, in to olde diches þere.
Heo howsede and bulde faste, and erede and sewe,
So þat in lutel while gode cornes hem grew.
Corn & fruyt hem wex ynow, & fisch ynow þei fonde,
And of flesch, so þat heo were riche y now in astonde.
Bruyt bad Corineus forto chese of eche contre ywis,
Wuch hym were leuest to habbe to hym and to hys. Corineus elegit Cornubiam.
Cornewaile hym likede best, þerfore he ches þere
To hym and to hys ospryng, [5] & for þer geandes were."
For he willede to fyȝte with geandes, & do hem schame.
þat londe he clepude Cornewaile, aftur hys owne name,
Cornewaile aftur Corineus, and in þis maner y wys
Corineus bi wan Cornewaile, to hym and to hys.

---

[1] Eneleuene hundred hit was, & þrytty yer þer to (*omisso* two) *in Ar.* [2] Contrey *Ar.* [3] þer to byleue hure hertes wel stood *Ar.* [4] Geauntes a fewe hy fonde her, vnmete men as hit were *Ar.* [5] þe Geauntes to a fere *Ar.*

Brut

Brut huld to hym Engelond, he ne durste [1] hym not playne,
And aftur Brut ys owne [2] nome he clepede hit Breteyne.
Brytones me clepude alle men þat were of Engelond,
As me clepede hem longe seþþe [3] for to now late ich vnder-
stonde."

Gogmagog. GOGGOMAGOG was a geand swiþe grete and strong.
A boute four & twenti fet me seiþ he was long.
A gret ok he wolde [4] breide a doun, as it a smal ȝerde were,
And bere forth in his hond, [5] þat folc forte a fere.
He com with twenti geandes, and a sailede Brut faste.
Brut with ys power slow þis geandes at þe laste,
Alle bute Gogmagog, for hym ne slow he noȝt;
For he schulde with Corineus wrastele he hadde y þouȝt.
[6] So þat Corineus and he to gedere were y broȝt,
Luctacio. þe wrastolyng bi twene hem was som del toȝt.
þer was mony a strong breid, so þat ribbes þre
þe geant brek of Corineus, as me myȝte þer y se.
In þe riȝt syd two, and in þe lift syde on.
þo was Corineus somdel worþ, he sterede hym a non,
And gripte þis geant, and to an hey roche hym drow,
þat stod a boue þe see an hey, & þer a doun hym [7] slow.
So þat he was al to raced pecemel in a stonde,
Eche lym from oþer, among þe roches, er he com to gronde.

---

[1] Hym no þyng playne *Ar.*
[2] Name *Ar.*
[3] Fort Saxones gonne hit fonde *Ar.*
[4] Draye a doun *Ar.*
[5] þe folk alto a fere *Ar.*
[6] þo *Ar.*
[7] Flough *Ar.*

þat

þat Corineus was al one lord of Cornewaile þo.
Wan þe geandes were alle y slawe, þat þer bi leuede no mo,
Brut wende forþ into Engolond, and aspiede vp and doun
For to seche an ese place, to make an heued toun.
He com and fond al vp Temese a place fair y now, Incepcio Londini.
In god contre & plenteus, þat is herte muche to droȝ,
þat [1]þe" schippes miȝte from eche lond bryng [2]to" god ywis.
þer he rerede hys heued toun, þat London i clepud is:
Ac so ne clepude he yt noȝt, bute þe Newe Troie.
þer habbeþ kynges and moni oþer ofte y be in ioie.
Brut þis noble prince sones hadde þre
By hys wyf Innogen, noble men and fre:
Locryn, and Kamber, and Albanak al so.
At þe laste dyede Brut, þo al þis was y do, Obitus Bruti.
Aftur þat he com to Engelond in þo four & twentiþe ȝer.
Y buryed he was at London, þat he lette first rere.
þis lond was deled a þre among þre sones y wys,
Bi West Seuerne Kamber hadde, and so al Walis.
Albanak bi ȝonde Homber: ac Locryn hadde best
Al out that lond bi twene hem, fro þe Est to þe West.
For þat he was eldeste, me lokede hym best by riȝt.
þese were as þre kynges, and men of muche myȝte.
þe kyng of Hungri [3]seþþe com, Homber was ys name,
In to Scotlond to werre, and do Albanak schame,
And werrede vp hym faste, and at the laste hym sloȝ.
þo Locryn herde þis, sore he wes y noȝ.
After hys broþer Camber hasteliche he sende,
And boþe with gret ost to ward the kyng wende. Bellum.

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *Suþ Ar.*

He

He smyte a batail strong ynow (ne strengor myȝte be)
So þat Homber kyng of Hungri [1] seþþe bi gan to fle
In to a gret water þer, & a dreynt hym self with schame;
þar fore me clepude þat Water þo Homber, aftur hys name,
As me deþ ȝet, and euer more wole, for þe cas
þat Homber, kyng of Hungri, þer ynne a dreynt was.
þo Locryn hadde al his wille, he a storede wel ys lond
Mid Homber kynge's god, þat [2] me of hys fond.
þo fond [3] he þre damysele, gent and fair ynowȝ,
þat Homber with hym broȝte, to þe on ys herte drow,
þat was of hem cheuenteyn, and þe kynge's doȝter was
Of Germanie, as hym þouȝte, in þe World hire pere nas,
So whit, ne of such colour, ny in eche maner so gent.
Kyng Locryne's herte was al clene vp hire y went,
And tok hire forþ with hym mid gret honour y nowȝ,
And þoȝte hire to spouse, so ys herte to hire droȝ.
Ac Corineus, duk of Cornewaile, [4] wroȝ y now was
Toward kyng Locryn, þo he herde þis cas.
For he hadde hym a forward hys doȝter habbe to wyue,
Hys gret axe he nom in hys hond, & to hym [5] hyede bi lyue.
His axe þo he to hym com, so grisliche he schok & faste,
þat þe kyng quakede & ys men, so sore heo were a gaste.
" Sei (he seide) Locryn, wat þenkestow for to do?
" þenkestow me Corineus to bi traye so?
" Hast þou for ȝete þe gret wo, and þe mony harde wonde,
" þat ich habbe y þoled for þi fader, & [6] þe mony [7] luþer stonde,

---

[1] Sone *Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* | *Ar.* [5] ẏede as blyue *Ar.*
[3] Men *pro* he *in Ar.* [4] Wroth | [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Wicked *Ar.*

" For

" For to wynne hym lond & ȝou, and þou hast now forsake
" My dozter, þat schulde be þi wif, & to a kemelyng take?
" þou ne schalt (bi hym þat made [1] me) of scapie so lyȝte,
" þe while þer ys in my ryȝt hond enỳ strengþe & myȝte;
" And while y may þer wyt myn hond axe vp drawe,
" Wher with ich habbe geandes mony on y slawe.
He bi gan to schake ys axe, for to smyte anon,
Ac knyȝtes criede, & ȝede bi twene hem mony on.
So þat þo kyng Locryn vnder fong wel fayn
And spousede [2] hys dozter, that hette Guendoleyn,
And [3] dude al his wille, (for he lokede so [4] rowe,)
More for eye þan for loue, (mony mon serueþ howe)
And nozt for þan þat oþer maide he louede more y now,
Astrild hire name was, and more to hire he drow.
He made hire vnder erþe a wonyng coynteliche,
And huld hire þer to his wylle longe priuiliche,
And drow to hire wan he wolde, þat no mon yt nuste,
Bute it were eny priue mon, þat hys priuite al wyste.
Whan he wolde to hire go, to hys mayne he seyde,
þat he wolde to his Godes his ofryng lede,
[5] And þat he hadde, to honoure hem, a priue stude þere,
To sacrifise to his Goddes, þat moni war nere.
Segge he wolde eke al so to þe Quene ys spouse,
" And noþeles such sacrifise y ne kepte not at myn howse?"

Sponsacio filiæ Corinei.

[1] Me) a scapy *Ar.* [2] Corneus *pro* hys *in Ar.* [3] Dude tho al Corneus wille, *Ar.* [4] Rough *Ar.* [5] And that he hadde made a vow, to do a sacrifice Prueliche to his God, as he gan hym deuyse. Segge he wolde right al thus to his owene spouse, " These wiues " suche sacrifice loueth at hure " owene house." So longe *Ar.*

So

So longe he dude ys sacrifise, and pleide such game,
þat he hadde a dozter, [1] Auerne was hire name.
And þe Qnene hadde al so in [2] sposhed bi gete
A sone, þat hette Madan, as it is [3] y writon.
[4] Sone so þe quene fader Corineus was ded,
þe kyng hadde þer aftur wel sone y nome red.
He for sok is wyf al out, and Astrild made quene.
He ne dradde nozt þo [5] that handaxe, as it was y sene.
þo wende þe quene forþ to Cornewail a non,
And [6] zonge staleworþe men gederede mony on.
[7] þat poer al þat was hire fader, & also of Engelonde,
So þat heo hadde sone gret power on honde,
And grót ost made and strong, and vp the kyng sette,
[8] And þe kyng al so a zeyn hire, so þat heo hem mette,
And a batail vp Stour smite strong y now,
And þere þe quene folk þe kyng Locryn slow,
And muche of his folk eke bute hem þat flowe.
So þat [9] a luther beuerage to here bi hofþe þei browe.
þo kyng myzte segge er þe while he was aliue,
þat in a luther time he striuede with his wyue.
zef alle [10] luþer holers were y serued so,
Me schulde fynde þe les such spouse bruche do.
Ellene hundred zer þis kyng was þus bi fore
And [11] eyzte zer y slawe er God were y bore.

---

[1] Sabrene *Ar.* & *in marg.* (*à manu recenti*) Sabriue. [2] Spoushed *Ar.* [3] Y write *Ar.* [4] So sone so the quene's *Ar.* [5] The *pro* þat *in Ar.* [6] ẏonge *Ar.* [7] Al the power that was hure fadere's, and muche of Engelonde, *Ar.* [8] The kyng also a yenst hure, so hy to gederes mette, *Ar.* [9] A foul beuereche to hure byhoue they brough *Ar.* [10] Foule holoyers *Ar.* [11] xviii. *Ar.*

þo

þo was þis sturne wommon Guendolyn þe quene
Kyng y mad in þis maner, for heo was som del kene.
Astrilde hire bedsuster (hire lorde's concubine)
And hire doȝter [1] Auerne heo let nime atte fine,
And drenche boþe two in þe water of Seuerne.
And for yt was hire lorde's doȝter þat mayde [2] Auerne,
And for honour of hire lord, and for heo was of hys kynde,
Heo wolde þat hire name were euer more in mynde,
And lette clepe þat water aftur [3] Auerne,
And seþþe þorȝ diuerse tonge me clepede hit Seuerne,
And deþ a letre þer to, and no more y wys.
In þis maner þike water Seuerne y clepud is.
Guendolyn was kyng fiftene ȝer þo.
And hire lord was kyng bi fore hire ten ȝer, & no mo.
[4] And Madan here sone fourti ȝer, þilke tyme þat Samuel — Samuel.
þe prophete wardede þat folk of Israel.
Meynpris, Madane's sone, kyng was tuenti ȝer,
[5] þe kyng Saul was of Ysrael kyng, and non er. — Saul.
þis was (as me may in bok rede and se)
Ar God were bore a þousand ȝer, and fourscore & þre.
[6] Ebran, Meynprise's sone, sixti ȝer was kyng.
He made þe toun of Euerwik, þat strong ys in alle þyng,

---

[1] Sabrene *Ar.* [2] Sabrene, *Ar.* [3] Sabrene, *Ar.* [4] Madan hure sone kyng was tho fourty yer ech del, In prophete's tyme Samuel that wardede Israel *Ar.* [5] Whan that Saul of Israel was kyng, *Ar.* [6] Ebrac, Mempris is sone, sixty yer was kyng. He bygan Ebrac wik atte bigynnyng. And suth me clepeth Euerwike this ilke toun y wis, And York also, thorgh light speche, y hote also hit is. After þis kyngus name his name hit

And, aftur his name Ebran, Euerwik clepede it wel,
David rex. þat tyme Dauid was kyng in Yracl.
Brut ys sone þrottene kyng was, and no mo.
And [1] Leir kyng [2] fyue and twenti ȝer Brutesone was þo.
And he rerde þo toun of Leycetre, & nempnede yt owne name,
alomon. þo þat Salamon þe wyse (mon of gret fame)
Kyng was of [3] Irael, þat kyng Dauid sone was,
þat made þe temple of Jerusalem, such temple ner nas.
[4] Leile's sone þritti ȝer kyng was [5] and fyue" al so.
He rerde first Canterburi, and Wynchestre þer to.
[6] Baþulf his sone aftur hym kyng was twenti ȝer.
He bi gan þe toun of Baþe, and [7] þo hote baþes [8] þer
In þe veynes of þe water, as yt doþ vp walle.
He lette close [9] fuyr in metal quoynteliche withalle,
þat as [10] þo water comeþ þer bi þer it cacheþ hete.
þat metal ys now y turned into roches grete,
þat beþ euer y liche [11] hoto, & þo water þer of al so.
And eke þoru enchauntement yt was first y do.
For þe kyng Baþulf, þat yt made, gret enchanter was,
And þat hym myȝte [12] seþþe rewe, ich wol telle þat cas.
For þat me schulde ys chauntement y se,
He lette hym make wyngon, an hey for to fle.

---

hym by fel. This was whan Dauid kyng regned in Israel. Brut grenshild, his sone, aftur hym tho Regned her in Engelond xxx. yer and mo *Ar.*

[1] Leil *Ar.* [2] xv. yer *Ar.* [3] Israel *Ar.* [4] Lo his sone *Ar. sed* Rudhudibras *dicitur aliis.* [5] *Omittit Ar.* [6] Bladuþ *Ar.* [7] þe *Ar.* [8] *Potest etiam ita distingui, ut periodus post* þer, *comma vero post* walle, *ponatur.* [9] Fure and metal *Ar.* [10] þe *Ar.* [11] Hote *Ar.* [12] Suth *Ar.*

And

And þo he was y flowe an hey, & ne cowþe not a liȝte,
A doun mid so gret eir to þe erþe he fel and piȝte,
þat al to peses he to rof, þat beter hym hadde ybe
Haue bi leued þer doune, þan y lerned for to fle.
[1] þis þilke tyme þat þe prophete Elye — Tempus Ely.
In [2] Irael prophete was, and [3] in oure Lord bi gan to crie,
þat þer ne schulde þre ȝer [4] ny six moneþes þer to
[5] No reyn no come on erþe, and yt bi fel al so.

AFTUR kyng [6] Baþulf, Leir ys sone was kyng,
And regned [7] sixti ȝer wel þoru alle þyng.
Up þe water of [8] Soure a cite of gret fame
He [9] endede, & clepede yt Leicestre, aftur ys owne name.
þre doȝtren þis kyng hadde, þe eldeste [10] Gornorille,
þe mydmost hatte Regan, þe [11] ȝongost Cordeille.
þe fader hem louede alle ynoȝ, ac þe [11] ȝongost mest:
For heo was best and fairest, & to hautenesse drow lest.
þo þe kyng to elde com, alle þre he broȝte
Hys doȝtren to fore hym, to wyte of here þouȝte.
For he þoȝte hys kyndom [12] dele among hem þre,
[13] And lete hem þer with spousi wel whare he myȝte bi se.
To þe eldest he seide first, "Doȝter ich bidde þe
"Sey me al clene þin herte, how muche þou louest me."
"Myn heye Godes," quoþ þis mayde, "to wytnesse I take echon,
"þat y loue more in myn herte þi leue bodi one,

[1] This was in thulke tyme *Ar.* [2] Israel *Ar.* [3] On *Ar.* [4] Ne *Ar.* [5] Reyn non in erthe come, and aftur hit fel so *Ar.* [6] Bladuth *Ar.* [7] xxx. ȝer *Ar.* [8] Sore *Ar.* [9] Rerde, and clepede *Ar.* [10] Gonorille, *Ar.* [11] Yongeste *Ar.* [12] To dele *Ar.* [13] And eke forto wedde hem wel wher he myghte by se *Ar.*

" þan myn soule and my lyf, þat in my bodi ys.
þo fader was þo glad y now whan he herde þis.
" My leue dozter," he seide þo, " for [1] þou hast in loue y do.
" Myn olde lyf by fore þis, and bi fore þi soule al so.
" Ych wol þe marie wel with þe þridde part of my londe
" To þe noblest bacheler, þat þyn herte wol to stonde.
þo oþer dozter he aschede þo þat same askyng.
" Sire," quod heo, " [2] bi hye Godes, Lordes of alle þyng.
" Y loue more þi leue lyf þan al þat in þe world ys.
" And þei al þe world were myn, & al þe richesse ywys,
" Al and eke myn owne lyf leuer ich hadde lese,
" þan þi lyf, þat me is so lef, zef y myzte chese.
þe fader was þo glad y now, and bad hire vnderstonde,
To whom heo wolde y maried be with þe þridde del ys londe.
þe [3] zongost he askedo þo as he hadde þo oþer y do.
Heo [4] no kouþe of no fikelyng, and ne onswerede not so.
" Sire," heo seyde, " y leue not þat my sustren al soþ seide.
" Ac for me my self, ich wol soþ segge o þis dede.
" Ych the loue [5] as þe mon that my fader ys,
" And euer habbe y [6] loued as my fader, and euer wole y wys.
" And zef þou wolt zet þer vppe more asche & wyte of me,
" Al þe ende of loue & þe grond ich wol segge þe.
" As muche as þou hast, [7] as muche þou art worþ y wys,
" And [8] as muche ich loue þe: þo ende of loue ys þis.

---

[1] Though hast thi loue y do In myn old lyf to fore thyn, & to fore thi soule also *Ar.* [2] By the heyghe God, Lord *Ar.* [3] Yongeste *Ar.* [4] Ne couthe of no flateryng, & aunswered nought so *Ar.* [5] As a man *Ar.* [6] The *addit Ar.* [7] So muche *Ar.* [8] So *Ar.*

þe

þe kyng was þo wroþ y now, for heo seide al þat soþ.
For he seide, " þou ne louest me noȝt as þi sostren doþ,
" Ac despisest me in myn olde liue, þou ne schalt neuer ywis
" Part habbe of my kyndom, ne of lond þat myn ys.
" Ac þyn sustren schulle habbe al, for here herte ys kynde,
" And þou for þyn vnkyndenesse be out of al my mynde.
" [1] Ac y ne segge noȝt for þan, ȝef y mai to mariage þe brynge,
" þat y ne wol with oute lond with som lytel þinge."
" For þou art my doȝter, & ich habbe more þan þi sostren boþe
" Y loued þe one, & þou ȝeldest now my loue wroþe.
þer aftur euene a two he delede hys kyndom, Particio regni.
And ȝef hys twei doȝtren half, & half hym self nom.
And þe eldest doȝter mid hire del he ȝaf with oute faile
þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe oþer þe [2] kyng of Cornewale, Maritacio filiarum.
To haue half ys lond myd hem at þe bi gynnyng,
And seþþe al ys kyndom aftur ys endyng.
And þe gode Cordeille vn maried was [3] so.
For heo [4] nolde fikele, as hire sustren hadde y do.
Ac [5] God þouȝte on hire for hire trewnesse.
For þe kyng of France herde telle of hire godnesse,
And bad hire fader graunt hym þe gode Cordeille.
þe kyng send word a ȝeyn, þat it was ys wille:

[1] Ac nought for than, with oute lond, with some litele thynge Ich wole the to some god man to mariage brynge. *Ar. Non dico tamen, cum filia mea sis, quin te alicui externo, si illum fortuna obtulerit, utcunque maritem. Illud autem affirmo, quod nunquam eo honore, quo sorores tuas, te maritabo. Quippe cum te plusquam ceteras huc usque dilexerim, tu vero me minus quam ceteræ diligas.* Galfredus Mon. [2] Erl *Ar.* [3] þo *Ar.* [4] Couthe flatery nought, as *Ar.* [5] Almyghty addit *Ar.*

Ac he nolde with hire ȝeue tresour, nẏ lond.
For ys two oþer doȝtren hadde it al on hond.
þo þe kyng of France herde þis, he answerede þer to,
þat he hadde hym self lond y now, and tresour al so.
Ne þat he ne kepte bute hire one, withoute oþer þing,
þat heo myȝte som eyres bi twene hem forþ brynge.
So þat at þe laste þis maide y spoused was
To þis kyng of France, as God ȝaf þat cas.
þo þis kyng Leir eldore was, heo bi gan to loþe,
For he so longe liuede, hys leue doȝtren boþe.
Here lordes heo entisede, [1] to gedere to holde faste,
And wynne al þis lond to hem, & here fader out caste.
Spoliacio reg. þis twei kynges nome here ost, and endede þis dede,
And bi nome þis olde mon ys lond, as here wyues bede:
Ac þe kyng of Scotlond, for rewþe and [2] kundede,
Hym nom to hym in to his hows, a ȝeyn ys wyue's rede,
Sixti knyȝtes with honour to fynde hym al ys lyf,
As wo seyþ, for ys kyndom, & for honour of ys wyf.
With inne two ȝer þer aftur it þouȝte þe luþer quene,
þat [3] hire hadde to muche, & wolde to muche spene.
Heo made, þat of [4] sixti knyȝtes hire lord with droȝ,
And made hym holde to þritti, & þat was hire þoȝte ynoȝ.
þis Leir was a schamed þo, & in wraþþe at þe ende
To hys oþer doȝter, þe quene of Cornewail, he gan wende,
And playnede of þe vnkyndc dede of his doȝter [5] Gornorille,
And wende þere amendement to habbe aftur ys owne wille.

[1] To holde to gedre faste *Ar.* [2] Manhede, Tok hym hom in to his hous, *Ar.* [3] Hure fader hadde so moche, and to moche wolde spene *Ar.* [4] xxx. knyhtus hure lord hym withdrough *Ar.* [5] Gonorille, *Ar.*

þilke doȝter hym to fonge with honour, as he wende,
Ac heo was al ful of hym er [1] þe ȝere's ende.
For heo entisede hire lord þo, þat ys knyȝtes echone
For cost by nyme hym alle, bute a [2] fyue men one,
[3] Wuche so it were to serue hym, & þat was y nowe.
þo þis seli mon þis herde, to sorwe ys herte drowe.
He nuste to weþer doȝter beter truste þo,
And nopeles he wende aȝeyn to þe oþer with muche wo,
And hopede for to fynde of here beter [4] meuske & grace.
And heo swor bi hire hye Godes anon in þe place,
þat he ne schulde mid hire be, bute it [5] one were,
And on knyȝt with oute mo, þe while he hym wel bere.
[6] And askede, wad sorwe hym were, wan he nadde hym self no god,
To wylne so gret cost, and be of so gret mod?"
þis word dude much sorwe þis seli olde kyng,
þat atwytede hym & ys stat, þat he nadde hym self noþing.
þat word brak neȝ ys herte, & longe he yt vnderstod,
þat ys child at wiste ys pouerte, þat hadde al is god.
[7] Neuer kyng ny quene glad, when heo hym seye,
Ac to þe joiful day hopede, that heo myȝte dye.
He bi leuede, as he nede moste, forþ mid on knyȝt,
And þe quene ys doȝter alle wo hym dude boþe day & nyȝt.

---

[1] þre *pro* þe *in Ar.* [2] x. *Ar.* [3] That were bileft to seruy hym, and that hure thoughte y nought *Ar.* [4] Mylce *Ar.* [5] Onliche were, With o knyght, with oute mo, *Ar.* [6] And seyde, what sholde an old man be so heghe of mod, And an [*f.* in] ydel, and in wast, spende so muche good? *Ar.* [7] Ther nas ther nother kyng no quene glade, whan hy hym seȳ, But lokede euer after his deth, whan he sholde dey *Ar.*

So þat he moste [1] for fyn myseise awei at þe ende.
þe oþer doȝter he hadde a sayed, þat he ne durste to hire wynde.
þe quene of France þe þridde hym þoȝ mid vn ryȝt
He misdude hire, þat he ne durste come in hire syȝt.
Ac at þe laste þo he sei, þat he moste nede at þe ende
For pore miseise, (for fare leuer he hadde wende,
And bidde ys mete, ȝef he schulde, in a strange lond,
þan þer he hymself kyng was, & such þing hadde on honde)
At þe laste in sorwe ynow in to þe see he wende,
To do ys beste yn meseise were so God hym sende.
In þo schip as oþer prynces in gret pruyde he [2] bi hulde,
And he nadde mid hym bute twei men, [3] hym þoȝte ys herte feld;
He þoȝte on þe noblei, þat he hadde in y be:
Planctus. He wep, þe terus roune doun, þat deol it was to se.
[4] Mid ȝoxing & mid gret wop þus bi gan ys mone.
" Alas! alas! þe luþur [5] wate, þat fylest me þus one,
" þat þus clene me bryngust a doun, wyder schal y be broȝt?
" For more sorwe yt doþ me, when it comeþ in my þoȝt
" [6] þe noblei þat ich habbe y had, þat ich was wond to wynde
" Mid so mony hondred knyȝtes a boute in eche [7] ende,
" And casteles nyme & tounes, & myn fon brynge to gronde,
" þan do al þe miseise, þat ich in i bonde.
" Leue doȝter Cordeille, to soþe þou seidest me,
" þat as muche as ych hadde y was worþ, þei y ne leuede þe.

---

[1] For mysaise (*omisso* fyn) *in Ar.* [2] Bi held *Ar.* [3] Alas! his herte was cheld *Ar.* [4] With wepynge & wailynge thus he made his mone: " Alas! though lethur desteny, whi leuest though me thus al one? *Ar.* [5] *i. e.* fate. [6] Of the *Ar.* [7] Eynde *Ar.*

" þo

" þo wyle ich ȝt hadde ich was worþ, & now it ys al a gon.
" Mi childeren, þat ich ȝef my god, beþ myne meste fon.
" For my god heo louede me, & now he habbeþ euery del,
" He nul not ȝeue me of myn owne myd god herte a mel.
" A wey! doȝter Cordeille, wyder schal ich now fle?
" So muche ich habbe þe [1] mys do, þat y ne dar þe y se.
" Mid wuche bodi dar y come in þi siȝt ene,
" þat bi nom þe myn frenschipe for þi soþnesse al clene?
[2] þis men mowe here ensample nime, to late here sones wyue,
And ȝeue hem vp here lond al bi here lyue.
For wel may a symple [3] Francoleyn in mysese hym so bringe
Of lutel lond, wan þer fel such of a kyng.
þo þis kyng hadde go a boute in such sorwful cas, Mandavit filiæ.
At þe last he com to Caric, þere ys doȝter was.
He bi leuede with oute þe toun, & in wel gret fere.
He sende þe quene ys doȝter word, muche is [4] antres were,
And þat pur miseise hym þider drof, & defaut of bi liue:
And bed hire, for the loue of God, hire wraþþe hym for ȝeue.
þe quene þo heo herde þis, nei yswounyng was.
" Alas!" heo seyde, "ys my fader y broȝt in such deolful cas?"
" Mid how mony knyȝtes ys he come?" þe oþer aȝeyn seyde,
" Ma dame, bute mid o mon, & ȝet þilke in [5] feble wede."
" Alas!" quoþ þe quene þenne, " ys it now mid hym so?
" Nymeþ anon tresour y nowȝ, þat he haþ nede to,

---

[1] A gilt *pro* mys do *in Ar.*
[2] These sample men moughe y se, to lete hure children wyue, *Ar.*
[3] Man *pro* Francoleyn *in Ar.*
[4] Auntres *Ar.*
[5] Simple wede *Ar.*

" [1] And

" [1] And cloþeþ hym myd þe best cloþ, þat ȝe mowe y se,
" And fourti knyȝtes mid hym, þat of hys siwte be;
" And doþ hem alle wel an horse, as a kyng bi comeþ to,
" And whan [2] no defaute nys, þat al þis nys wel y do,
" Sendeþ my lord word & me, þat my fader in londe ys.
Wat halt it to telle longe? Y do wes al þis.
þo kyng Læir arayed was, & men hem worde sende,
þe kyng & þe quene faire y now aȝeyn þe oþer kyng wende,
And with gret honour hym fongon, þo he to hem com,
[3] And token hym to ys owne wille al clene the kyndom.
þis was, lo! þe gode doȝter, þat nolde fikele noȝt.
Ofte þing þat is fikeled to worse ende ys broȝt.
Reditus Angliæ. þe kyng of France aftur folc wide aboute sende,
To a wreke hym of þe luþer men, þat ys frend so schende.
[4] þo he hadde power y now, þe kyng Læir he nom
And þe quene ys doȝter, & to þis lond com.
Mony kynde men of þis lond with kyng Læir huld also,
For þe vnkynde suikedom þat his doȝtren hadde y do.
So þat of France & of þis lond poer he hadde y now.
Toward hys fon with hem alle with god herte he drow,
And ouer com þis false [5] kynges & here wyues also,
[6] And a ȝeyn in his kyndom mid gret honour y do.

---

[1] Bad hym clothe in the beste, that he myghte bỳse, And XL. knyghtes with hym of his suyt to be; *Ar.* [2] No faute ther nys, and al is wel y do, *Ar.* [3] *Dederuntque ei potestatem totius Galliæ, donec eum in pristinam dignitatem restaurassent.* Galfridus Mon. [4] *Quo facto, duxit secum Leyr filiam suam, & collecta multitudine ivit in Britanniam.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Lordes *Ar.* [6] Leir in his kynedom a ye with honour was y do *Ar.*

Cor-

Cordeille ys leue doȝter eir of al ys lond
Aftur ys day he made, [1] þo þat he so kynde fond.
By þis tale me may iyse, þat men trewest we seþ,
And best me may to hem truste, þat of lest wordes [2] boþ.
With inne þre ȝer þe kyng of France dyede & þe kyng Leyr, Obitus regis.
[3] And Cordeille þe kyndom fong as þe ryȝt eyr,
And lette hire fadur burie with gret prude & honour
At Leicetre, þat he made hym self be side þe water of Sour.
þis gode quene Cordoille as kyng and quene þo
[4] Bi leuede hire in þis lond fyue ȝer, and no mo,
Er hire twei suster sones, stalworþe men þat were,
[5] Hennin and Morgan, werre [6] hire" gonne a rere,
And hadden despit, þat wommon kyng schulde [7] be,
[8] And naþeles wyþ alle ryȝte hij were ner þan heo.
Heo gederede vp here aunte here ost aboute wyde,
And destruyde hire londes eyþer in his syde.
So þat at þe laste to [9] baile heo come.
þere þe quene here aunte in bataile heo nome,
And dude in strong prison, and þe kyndom Capcio reginæ.
Delden bi twene hem, and eyþer ys part nom.

---

[1] So kynde he hure fonde *Ar.* [2] *L.* beþ. [3] Cordille aftur hym auenge Brutayne as ryght heir *Ar.* [4] *Cum ergo Cordeilla regnum per quinquennium pacifice tractasset, cœperunt eam inquietare duo filii sororum suarum Marganus & Cunedagius, quæ Maglauro & Hennino ducibus conjugatæ fuerant. Ambo juvenes præclaræ probitatis formam habebant, quorum alterum, videlicet Marganum, Maglaurus generavit, Cunedagium vero Henninus.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Hemỳn *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Beo *Ar.* [8] And also by ryght hy were fortherer than heo. Hy gaderede to gedere hure ost aboute by eche side, And destrude her and ther bothe in eche side *Ar.* [9] Bataille *Ar.*

Morgan

Morgan kyng of Scotlond, as heo dele kouþe,
Hadde al þat lond bi Norþ, and [1] þe oþer bi Souþe.
With inne two ȝer þer aftur somme to Morgan come,
And, for he of þe elder soster was, bed hym nyme gome;
And seide hym it was gret despit, þat þer wer in þis lond
Cæsra. Twei kynges, wan ryȝt was, þat he it hadde al on hond.
þis kyng was enticed so, þat he nom atte laste
Ys ost, and vp hys cosyn bi gan to werri faste,
And bi gan to brenne & quelle, & atte laste y wys
þe other bi gan to turne a ȝeyn, and drof hym in to Walis.
And þer heo smyte a batail in the Souþ half of þe londe,
And þer was Morgan y slawe, þat longe [2] was vnderstonde.
þe stude, þat he was at y slawe, me clepuþ ȝet Morgan,
And euere wole aftur hym, for he was so worþi man.
Cunedag was þo al one kyng, & þe kyndom to hym nom,
And nobliche [3] þre and [4] þritti ȝer held þe kyndom.
þe twey holy prophetes were Osee and Ysaie
þilke time in [5] Irael, and dude here prophecie.
Incepcio Romæ. Romulus and Remus þe twei breþeren y wys
Bi gonne þo first Rome, þat noble citie ys.
Four hundred ȝer it was, and [6] fourti euene al so,
Aftur þe batail of Troie, þat al þis was ydo.
And Rome was fyue hundred ȝer þus y mad bi fore.
And þre and fyfty ȝer eke, er God were y bore.
Aftur þis kyng Cunedag hys [7] sone, that hatte Riual,
Kyng was mad aftur hym, a wys mon þorȝ out al.

---

[1] Hemen *pro* þe oþer *in Ar.* [2] Is *pro* was *in Ar.* [3] *De-sunt Ar.* [4] Israel *Ar.* [5] Four-tyne also, *Ar.* [6] Brothur *Ar.*

Aftur

Aftur hym Gurgust ys sone, and seþþe anoþer Sisille,
And mony on [1] seþþe afturwar, of wam mote be stille.
So þat atte laste Gurguont was kyng,
Stalworþe mon and hardy, and wys þorȝ alle þyng.
Muche þing, þat ys eldore loren þorw feyntyse,
þoru strengþe he wann seþþe a ȝeyn, & þoru ys koyntise.
þe kyng of Denemark [2] ber eche ȝer with lawe
Truage to Engelond, and bi gan hym to wyþ drawe.
þe kyng Gurguont hym porueyede of power y now,
And þer wyþ in gode schippes to Denemark he drow,
And þe kyng of Denemark in bataile he sloȝ,
And wan a ȝeyn þe truage þat [3] he held with woȝ.

AS þe kyng Guorguont fro Denemark wende a ȝe
Hider toward Engolond, he mette in þe see
þritti schipful of men. and of wymmen also,
Of children, and of oþer god þat heo hadden with hem y do.
þe kyng askede, wad heo were? þei were a drad ful sore.
þe maister fel a doun on kne, & criede mercy & ore.
" Lord," he seyde, " we beþ men wyde y driue aboute
" From contrey to contrei, þat we mown nower route
" Of þe kynde of Egypt oure firste more com.
" [4] For þo folc of Irael Moyses with hym nom,
" And ladde hem out of Egypt bi þe [5] liuerede see,
" And þe kyng a drente & alle hys, þat [6] he ne com neuer a ȝe:

---

[1] Suth afterward, of wham we mote be stille *Ar.* [2] That bar ech yer with lawe Truage to Brutayne, gan hit tho with drawe *Ar.* [3] At heold with wrough *Ar.* [4] For tho that folk of Israel *Ar.* [5] Rede *Ar.* [6] They *Ar.*

" Among

" Among hem, þat bi leuede o liue, stryf me myȝte se,
" Wuche mest maistres were, & hoo schulde lord be:
" So þat heo, þat maistres were, hadde wel gret onde
" To þe kyn þat we come of, & dryue hem out of londe,
" For drede þat heo ne schulde noȝt here maistres be.
" þus heo were y dryue a wei, & nuste wyder to [1] tee.
" Heo duden hem forþ in to þe se, & by mony a lond wende.
" [2] Se þat God in to Spayne atten ende [3] hom sende.
" þer heo bi leuede, & wox, & al þat of hem come
" Forto now þis oþer day, þat we myȝte not be y some.
" [4] For þe kunde folk of þe lond hadde to ows onde,
" And, þat we to grete maistres nere, drive ous out of þe londe.
" Oþer half ȝer we habbeþ nowe y went with oute reste
" In the grete see of occean, forto seche vr beste,
" þat owre lyf ys vs loþ, & we nuste war bi leue;
" þer fore we wolde bidde þe, þat þou vs sum place ȝeue
" þat amty were in þi lond, ware þou woldest by þenche,
" [5] þat we myȝte of swynke oure mete, & libbe by oure swynke.

Prima gens in Ybernia.

þe kyng hem nolde graunte noþing of þis lond,
Ac he sende hem by god condyt in to Yrlond,
þat al amty was of men, & no mon ne wonede þere,
And þese were þe firste men þat in Yrlond were.
A þousant ȝer yt was and two, þat y do was al þis,
Aftur þat [6] folc of Irsrael of Egypt wende i wis.
Fyf hundred ȝer and [7] tuenti it was eke bi fore,
Er þan oure Lord Jhesu Cryst on erþe was y bore.

---

[1] Fle *Ar.* [2] So *Ar.* [3] Hem *Ar.* [4] Therfore the vnnekynde folk *Ar.* [5] That we moughe oure liflode, as othur doth, byswỳnke *Ar.* [6] The folk of Israel *Ar.* [7] Nyne *pro* tuenti *in Ar.*

[1] Hit

[1] Hit bi fel þer afturward swythe longe ynow Picti.
Out of þe lond of Scitie oþer folk þider droȝ.
For into þe grete see of ocean a gret companye
Of Pycars wende som tyme out of [2] Scisie.
From lond to lond wyde [3] he gonne wende,
So þat atte laste heo come to Yrlonde's Norþ ende,
A geyn þe lond of Scotlond, & [4] þo folk þat heo fonden þere
Of [5] þis eldore kunde, Scottes y clepud were.
þe [6] Picardes bede þe Scottes an ende of here lond
To ȝeue hem, forto libbe by with swynk of here hond.
þe Scottes seide, þat þat lond nolde not y now be
To hem boþe to lyue [7] bi, as heo myȝte y se.
Ac þat heo myȝte ofte y se, in cler weder, þere
Est ward, as þe sonne a ros, a lond as yt were.
Mury & fair yt þoȝte y now, & þat heo þider wende,
To wonye & to lyue þer, & þat heo hem word sende,
ȝef any mon hem greuede, & þat heo wolde, heo seyde,
Warde hem from alle men, þat hem bi tidde no drede.
[8] þis Picardes þenne wende forþ Estward euer faste.
To þe Norþ ende of Engelond heo comen at þe laste.
þat ende heo fonden al bare. heo bi leuede þere,
And swonke & tilede here lyflode, & al maistres were.
[9] Heo fonden hem sustynance y now, and [10] lyueden þus forþ Missio post mulieres.
þe Brytones in [11] þo Souþhalf, and heo in þe Norþ.

---

[1] ¶ The comynge of Pittes, that some clepeth Pikerdys, *Ar. in margine.* [2] Sithie *Ar. cum* i. Nauerne (*ab ead. manu*) *supra lin.* [3] Hij *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] The eldere *Ar.* [6] Pictes *Ar.* [7] By, by aught that hij couthe se *Ar.* [8] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [9] Hij wonne hem *Ar.* [10] Lyuede so forth *Ar.* [11] The *Ar.*

Pycars

[1] Pycars fonden ese ynow, and defaut none,
To libbe in plente y now, bute of wymmen one.
For þer ner none among hem. þer fore to Yrlond
Heo sende to Scottes þat þer were, þat heo schulde hem vnderstonde
And lene hem wymmen, þat heo myȝte here [2] ofpryng eche so."
For þyng þat [3] woneþ, & noþing wexeþ, [4] sone it ys ydo."
Scottes hem sende wymmen in þis forme þere,
þat wan a child were y bore, and me in doute were,
[5] Who were þo fader, þat me schulde name & eritage
Boþe habbe in þe moder half, for drede of out rage,
Laste yt ȝeode out of kynde þorȝ child mys bi gete.
For me may bet soþnesse of þe moder þen of þe fader wyte.
In þis maner [6] Picars with Scottes [7] myngen here blod,
So þat yt siwede þe wymmen, when me oȝt mysvnderstod.
And when mon withouten eyr of hym to deþe were ybroȝt,
Hys moder kun was ys eir, & ys fader kun ryȝt noȝt.
And for þe moderes Scottes were, [8] so forþ yt ys bi come,
þat [9] Scottes name ys al a bouc, & [10] Picars al bi noune.
[11] þus Scottes among Pycars come out of Yrlond,
And [12] þat lond me clepuþ aftur hem seþþe Scotlonde.

[1] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [2] Ospring forth brynge *Ar.* [3] Waneth *Ar.* [4] Hath sone an endynge *Ar.* [5] Who the childe's fader were, the name and heritage Of his moder hit sholde bere, for drede of outrage, Lest the name yede oute of kynde thurgh mysbyyityng. Of the moder half rather than in the fadre's me may haue knowyng *Ar.* [6] Thes Pictes *Ar.* [7] Medlede blod *Ar.* [8] So fer forth hit is y come *Ar.* [9] The Scottes *Ar.* [10] Pictes *Ar.* [11] The Scottes myd the Pictes *Ar.* [12] The *pro* that *in Ar.*

Yrlond

YRLOND ys [1] aler yle best with oute Engelonde.
þe see goþ al abouten hym eke as ich vnderstonde.
More he ys þan Engolond, & in [2] þo Souþ half he ys
[3] Bradder & more of ynow þan in þe Norþ ende y wys.
Aȝeyn þe lond of Spayne he stond in þe [4] Norþ syde ryȝt.
Selde snowe þer inne [5] liþ, & nameliche þre nyȝt.
So euene [6] hot þat lond ys, þat men durre [7] selde
Here orf in howse awynter brynge out of þe felde.
Lese lasteþ þer al þe wynter. Bute hyt þo more wonder be,
Selde me schal in þe lond eny foule wormes se.
For nedres ny oþer wormes ne mow þer be noȝt.
And ȝef he beþ þider [8] bi cas" from oþer [9] londes y broȝt,
Heo dyeþ þorȝ smel of þe lond, oþer þorȝ towchyng y wys.
Eche gras þat þer inne wexeþ a ȝeyn venym yt ys.
For men, þat ben venymed, þorȝ grases of Yrlond
Y dronke he beþ y clansed sone, þoru Gode's sonde.
Hony & mylk þer ys muche. mony folk & bolde.
þis ys þe stat of Yrlond, as iche habbe y tolde.

AFTUR kyng Gurguont, kynges mony on
þer were here in Engelond, me may not telle echon.
A boute a four hundred ȝer aftur hym þer com
A kyng, þat was Lud y clepud, þat wel hult þe kyndom. Lud.

---

[1] Al ther Ile best, ontake Engelonde *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Bradder a gret del than in the Northside ywys *Ar.* [4] Northwest ryght *Ar.* [5] Lith, nameliche but thre nyght *Ar.* [6] A tempre *pro* hot *in Ar.* [7] But seylde Hure bestes an house *Ar.* [8] By happe *Ar.* [9] Lond *Ar.*

Grete townes in Engelond he amendede y nowe.
And London [1] aller most, for þer to hys herte drowe.
[2] þat folk he hett of þe town so noble bold þer rere,
þat in al Engelond so noble a cite nere.
Walles he lette make a boute & ȝates vp & doun,
And aftur Lud, þat was hys name, he clepude yt Lude's toun.
þe hexte ȝate of þe toun, [3] þa ȝet stond þere and is,
He lette yt clepe Lude's gate, aftur ys owne name ywis.
He let hym, þo he was ded, burye at þilke ȝate.
þer fore ȝet aftur hym me clepoþ hit Lodegate.
þe town me clepuþ Lude's town, þat ys wyde cowþ:
And now me clepeþ it London, ȝat ys lyȝter in þe mouþ.
And Newe Troie hit hette er, [4] ac þus yt is a go
þat Londone he ys now y cleped, and worþ euermo.

ENGELOND haþ i be with strengþe y wonne y lome,
And first, as ich telle can, þorþ þe emperoures of Rome.
Aftur kyng Lud þer was kyng ys broþer Cassibel,
þat noble Prince was y now, & þat lond gouernede wel.
Julius. Julÿ þe emperour of Rome by his day com,
And muche del of þe world bi Est to hys power nom.
[5] Seþþe he drow hym Westward, & werrede in mony londe,
And wan lond [6] aftur oþer, hym ne myȝte non at stonde.
þo he hadde y wonne France, þe see he wende ney,
[7] And bi huld Westward, and som del of Engelond y sey.

[1] Alther *Ar.* [2] He het in thulke toune the folk suche buldynge a rere, *Ar.* [3] That yut stant *Ar.* [4] Ac nough hit is so ago, That Londone is hit cleped, *Ar.* [5] And tho he *Ar.* [6] Aftur lond, ne myghte hym no man astonde *Ar.* [7] And as he lokede Westward, Engelond he seygh *Ar.*

He

He askede, wat lond yt were, & wat folk þer inne was?
Me seide hym þat it was Bretayne, ne betur lond nas,
And þat þe folk was of þe kynde of Troie, & of þe Brut y come.
" [1] þenne beþ heo, quoþ þe emperour, of the kynde of Rome.
" For, aftur þe batail of Troie, þe noble mon Eneas
" [2] To Lumbardye com, and oure firste fader was.
" And Brut al so com of hym, þat seþþe hys fader slowȝ,
" And þer fore was þenne y dryue, & to þilke lond drowȝ.
" þanne we beþ of on kynde, [3] ac, bute ich þer to lye,
" A ȝen kynde he beþ a ȝeyn vs, as of chiual rye.
" For þer of ne mowe heo konne nozt, y not how he myȝte,
" To be by hem self in an hurne as þe rof with oute syȝte.
" For nozt we schulleþ hem ouercome, ac naþeles as þe hende
" We schul hem warne of oure þozt, er we to hem wende.

---

[1] *Cumque nomen regni didicisset & populi, dixit, Hercle ex eadem prosapia nos Romani & Brittones orti sumus, quia ex Trojana gente processimus. Nobis Æneas post destructionem Trojæ primus pater fuit. Illis autem Brutus, quem Silvius Ascanii, filii Æneæ, filius progenuit. Sed, nisi fallor, valde degenerati sunt à nobis. Nec quid sit militia noverunt, cum infra oceanum extra orbem commaneant. Leviter cogendi erunt tributum nobis dare, & continuum obsequium Romanæ dignitati parare. Prius tamen standandum est eis, ut inaccessi à Romano populo & intacti vectigal reddant, ut cetera etiam gentes subjectionem senatui faciant, ne nos, ipsorum cognatorum nostrorum sanguinem fundentes, antiquam nobilitatem Priami patris nostri offendamus* Galfridus Mon. [2] To Itaille com, that is now Rome, and oure auncetre was *Ar.* [3] And ich can a spie, Hit were a ye kynde to be a yenst vs, as of chiualrie. For ther on ne mowe hij konne nought, y not how hii myghte, To be in an herne by hem self, ther with oute fighte *Ar.*

þe emperoure's messingeres to Engelond hire come,
þat þe kyng abowe ys herte [1] to þe noble stude of Rome,
And alle oþer kynges dude, and ys ryȝt seruage
Dude to þe hye emperour, and sende hym hys truage,
And hys lond huld of hym, and dude hym homage,
Laste þe hye emperour for his outrage
Come and destruye al hys lond; & ȝet þat worse were,
[2] þe blod schedde of ys owne kynde, & defoule yt so þere.
And þe olde heynesse of Priamus werrede so,
Of was kynde heo come echon, & þat were hym loþ to do.
For þer [3] schulde in al [4] þo world no lond be for bore.
þis was euene sixti ȝer er God were y bore.

Mandatum regis.

þe kyng [5] sende þis word a ȝeyn a non for þis tyþing:
" Cassibel, kyng of Breyteyne, to July sendeþ gretyng.
" Wonder it ys, Sire emperour, [6] þat noble gentrise
" þat is so noble & eke y fuld with so fyl couetyse,
" þat [7] worde's nobleye hast so muche, of eche mon mest,
" þat for couetise art y come so fer fro þe Est,
" To wilne oure lutel god, þat God vs wolde sende
" þat beþ hire bi oure self, as at þe worlde's ende:

---

[1] To the cite of Rome, As alle othur kynges dude, in hys ryght seruage, And his lond holde of hym, & dude hym homage, Lest the heigh *Ar.* [2] To shede his owene kynde blod & defouled there; And take hede of Priame's prude, that werrede so. Of his kynde hij come echon, & that hij were loth do *Ar.* [3] Ne sholde *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] Hym sende word a ye, tho he hurde this tydynge: *Ar.* [6] Of thy gret gentrise, That though so foule anetherest hit with thy couetyse, That wordles welth hast so muche, of alle men mest, That for couetyse ert y come so fer fram the Est *Ar.* [7] *L.* worlde's.

" [8] And

" [1] And þou nart one y payed oure tresour to nyme at ene,
" Bute þou þer aftur vs binyme oure franchise al clene,
" To brynge vs so fre as we beþ in to [2] fyl seruage,
" þat we bere þe and þyne euermore truage.
" Gret wrong þou woldest don vs, wen of on kynde
" We beþ y come ȝe & we, as þou hast þi self in mynde.
" þenne aȝte yt be y nowȝ, wen we beþ of on blod,
" Loue & frenschipe aske vs, ȝef þou þe wel vnderstod,
" Thaw þou ne askedest [3] þer vppe þralhed euermo.
" Sikerliche we ne konne noȝt of þralhed ne of wo.
" So muche we habbeþ euer y be in [4] franchise ȝet her to,
" þat þei oure owne Godes wolde in þralhede vs do,
" Fonde we wolde a ȝeyn hem [5] our franchise withstonde.
" þei þou þer fore, Sire emperour, grete power habbe on honde,
" Wyte [6] to soþe, þat we wolleþ for oure franchise fygte,
" And for our lond, raþer þen [7] we lesed with vn ryȝt.
þis was eke four hundred ȝer, and four score, & þrottene,
Aftur þat þe borȝ of Rome first was mad iche wene.
þo þe emperour herde þis, to schippes he wende faste, Julius venit Angliam.
And al hys power forþ with hym, and sailes vp caste.
þei entrede in at Temse mouþ, and þer heo gonne a riue.
þo Cassibel herde þis, [8] he ȝarkede hym bi lyue.
Now hadde kyng Lud, ys broþer, ȝonge sones twei,
Androge and Tennant, þat þo ȝonge were beye,

---

[1] And þat though nert nought onliche apayd *Ar.* [2] Gret *Ar.* [3] Eke ther to thraldom euere mo. For on thraldom konne we nought, ne of such other wo *Ar.* [4] Frvnchise hider to. For theygh that the Godes hem self wolde in to thraldom vs do *Ar.* [5] For oure *Ar.* [6] For soth *Ar.* [7] We wol leue hit with vnryghte *Ar.* [8] He graithed hym as blyue *Ar.*

þo here fader dyede to holde þe kyndom.
[1] þer fore þer to Cassibel al þat lond nom.
Ac þo nolde not Cassibel, þat heo schulde allyng faile.
Tennant þe ȝonger he made erl of Cornewale,
And Androge erle of Kent, & gaf hym London þer to.
Boþe heo were noble men þo þis dede was y do.
þe kyng hadde [2] eke a broþer, Nenny was hys name,
Strong knyȝt and hardi, and mon of gret fame.
þe kynge's chef conseleres þese þre were of þis þing.
Alle heo come to Canterburi at þe bi gynnyng.
þere þe kyng & ys power such conseil to gedere nome,
To kepe þe emperoure's folc er [3] heo to fer income.
For ȝef þei hadde eny þing y wonne of castel or of toñ,
Wel þe worse it wolde be to brynge hem þer don.
[4] þo kyng wente toward þe se mid fair ost ynowȝ,
[5] And as þe emperour hadde y piȝt ys pauelon he drowȝ.
þo [6] he hadde y ordeyned here ost in eyþer syde,
[7] þo batail heo smyton stronȝ ynowȝ, þat cowþ was ful wyde.
Bellum. Myd arwen & myd quareles so muche folk [8] first" me slow,
[9] And seþþe with speres smyton a doun, þat deol was ynow.
þo heo were þorȝ out y mengd with swerdes & with mace,
Myd axe & mid aules, so muche folk in þat place

---

[1] þerfore Cassibelan this lond to hym nom, And also he nolde, that eny thyng these children sholde faille *Ar.* [2] Eke a nothur brothur *Ar.* [3] Hij to bataille come *Ar.* [4] The *Ar.* [5] And toward themperoure's tente euene he hym drough *Ar.* [6] Hij *Ar.* [7] An *pro* tho *in Ar.* [8] *Deest Ar.* [9] And with swerd and with speres, that deol hit was y nough *Ar.*

Me slow, þat al þe erþe a boute stod [1] as in flode
Er þe bataile were y do al of red blode.
Nenny þe kynge's broþer and þe erl of Kent al so,
Mid al here power of Kent, & myd þe Londreis þer to,
[2] Awatede hem to þilke ost, þat þe emperour inne was.
So þat [3] Nennyn þe emperour bi cas,
Anon he willede in herte with so hey mon to fyȝte.
He asailede hym & drow ys swerd, & smot with al ys myȝt.
Ac þe emperour mid his [4] scheld þo strok hente ynow,
And drow hys swerd [5] an hey, & to þe gronde faste slow,
And smot Nennyn þorȝ þe helm [6] somdel toward þe brayn.
And seþþe toward þilke stude he smot with more mayne,
To haue y cloue [7] hym" al þat hed, ac [8] Nennyn hys scheld nom,
And dude by twene, þat þe strok so depe þer inne [9] ne" com,
þat þe emperour ne myȝte yt out drawe with al ys mayn.
[10] Nennyn caste [11] caste" ys owne swerd anon a wey wel fayn,
And [12] nom þet swerd to hym, þat so noble was & riche. Lacracio gladii.
For þer nes in al þe world swerd hym yliche.
For þer nas non þer with y wonded, þat euer keuer myȝte.
þer fore yt was rede deþ y cleped and mid ryȝte.
þo [13] Nennyn hadde þat gode swerd, a boute he smot to gronde.
Ech mon þat he þer with smot, he gef deþe's wonde.

---

[1] Al on a flode *Ar.* [2] Ordeyned hem *Ar.* [3] Neny than Emperour y segh as fel by cas, *Ar.* [4] Swerd thane strok *Ar.* [5] Anon, and to grounde slough. He smot Neny *Ar.* [6] Almost in to the brayne *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Neny *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Neny *Ar.* [11] *Redundat.* [12] Nam to hym themperoure's swerd, that *Ar.* [13] Neny *Ar.*

þe Romaynes laie sone a doun, he made emtȳ place.
Victoria Brytonum. And þe Brytones a ryse faste, so þat, þorw Gode's grace,
Heo hadde þe maistry of þe feld. [1] þo Romaynes flowe [2] bi lyue,
Ac mony was þe moder child þat arst was brȝt of lyue.
þe emperour and ys power to schip flowe faste,
And to France flow aȝeyn, somdel þei were agaste.
Here folc heo loren in þe se þorȝ tempest monyon,
[3] Wat in batayle wat in se, & heore horses ney echon.
Cassibel was glad y now þo he hadde þe maystrie.
[4] Fayre he þonkede ys gode folc, and of gret corteysie
Of ȝiftes [5] delde among hem euer as heo were.
So þat joye and [6] murþe y now among hem was þere.
Ac þer was among hem deol ynow for [7] Nennyn y brȝt,
þat þe emperour þe wonde ȝef, þat he ne myȝt hele nȝt.
He lai for [8] pyned in þe wonde, and to deþe drowȝ,
And dyede þe [9] fyfþe day myd sorwe & deol y nowȝ.
Atte Norþ ȝate of London heo buryode þis gode knyȝt,
And buryede with hym in hys chest þat swerd þat was so bryȝt,
þat he wan of þe emperour with honour y nowȝ,
þat rede deþ was y clepud, war wyþ he hym slowȝ.
Y buried it was forþ with hym, as in tokenynge
Of ys prowes, þat he yt wan of on so hey a kynge.

---

[1] þe *Ar.* [2] Blyue *Ar.* [3] Many in bataille & many in see, and hure hors euerichon *Ar.* [4] Faire gan to thonke his folk, and dude hem courtasie *Ar.* [5] He delde a mong hem euere as worthy were *Ar.* [6] Blisse *Ar.* [7] Neny *Ar.* [8] Pynynge *Ar.* [9] Fiftenethe *Ar.*

Cassibel

Cassibel þe gode kyng hym gan euer vnderstonde,
þat þe emperour þouȝte ȝet werre in hys londe.
þe fyf townes of þe fyf portes he lette walle aboute,
And so gode knyȝtes dude þer, þat he nadde þer no doute.
[1] Stakes of yrn mony on he pyȝte in Temese gronde,
A boue scharpe & kene ynow, bi neþe grete & ronde,
þat, ȝef þer eny schippes come er me y war were,
Heo schulde piche hem þoru out & a drenche hem so þere.
Here was coyntyse ynow, he lette al so a rere.
[2] Vp þe water strong hows, þat heo vn warned nere.
And of þe ȝonge folk of þe lond þer inne dude y nowe,
To be prest to kepe here fon, wen þei [3] to hem drowe.

JULIUS [4] þe emperour with strong power y nowȝ, Reditus Julii.
Two ȝer aftur þe bataile, to Engelond a ȝeyn drow,
And þouȝte sle al þat folk, & wynne þis kyndom,
[5] Ac he caste þer of ambes, as þo he to londe com.
For as þis schippes with gret eir come toward londe
In Temse, as þei al þe world ne schulde hem at stonde,
þe pykes smyte hem þoru out, or þei wyste wat yt were,
And daschte and a dreynte fourty schippes þere.
And a þousant gode knyȝtes þer inne were adreynt,
[6] And al here atyl and tresour was al so a seynt.

---

[1] Piles he pighte manyon ypon Themese grounde *Ar.* [2] Upon Themese toures strouge, that hij vnwarned nere *Ar.* [3] To londe droughe *Ar.* [4] The seconde comynge of Julius *Ar. in margine.* [5] And forto do this ilke dede, gret people with hym he nom. And as hure shipes *Ar.* [6] And hure catel and tresour *Ar.*

And

And so heo myȝte lerne, wuch Brytones were.
Betere hem hadde be at Rome, þan y osted þere.
þe emperour with drow hym þo, and by an oþer ende
To londe he com [1] wroȝ y now, þis lond forto schende.
And kyng Cassibel y sei so muche folk y lore,
And adreynt of hys fon, glad he was þer fore.
And naþeles he was sori, and made gret mone
Of hem þat of scapede, þat heo nadde be dreynt echone.
þo þe Romaynes were y come to þe lond at þe laste,
Bellum. Cassibel with ys power a ȝeyn hem sette faste.
Heo smyton batail strong y now, þer was y do gret wo,
And mony slawe on eyþer half, ac of þe Romaynes mo.
For þe Brytones wox faste, þe Romaynes by neþe were.
þo þe emperour say, þat ys fare nas noȝt þere,
Mid lute folk, þat him was bi leued, to schip he goþ faste.
Hyt were men of a god lond þat [2] hem so kouþe agaste.
þe kyng Cassibel anon for joye made ys heste,
þat alle þe knyȝtes of hys lond come to ys feste,
To London at a certeyn day, and here wyues al so,
Here sacrifise to here Godes, as ryȝt was, to do.
Numerus animalium. Fourti [3] þousant of roþeren he lctte quelle þer to,
And of fatte weþeres an hundred þousand al so.
Of wilde bestes he lette þritti þousant quelle.
þe wylde foules & þe tame ne myȝte nomon telle.
þo þis fest ȝare was, þat folk first in here wyse
To heore Godes as heo wolde dude here sacrifise.

---

[1] Wroth *Ar.* [2] Hem so wel a gaste *Ar.* [3] Thousend ox he let kulle ther to *Ar.*

þer aftur þe sete to heore mete with so gret noblei echon,
þat me nuste þer bi fore so noble [1] fest non.
Aftur mete, as ryȝt was, þe menstrales ȝeode aboute,
And knyȝtes and [2] sweynes in carole gret route.
So þat þe kynge's neuew, and þe erle's neuew of Kent,
þat twei ȝonge bacheleres noble were and gent,
[3] In þis noble companye strif bi gonne arere,
So þat þe erle's neuew þat oþer slowȝ ryȝt þere.
þo was al þe court anyed, as þei moste nede,
þe kyng ferde eke for wraþþe as he wolde wede.
[4] Androge he sende word, þat he ys neuew toke
And broȝte hym forþ [5] forte fonge þat þe court hym wold loke.
Androge was a drad [6] for he uuste þe kynge's wille,
And loþ [7] he hadde ys neuew to honge or spille.
þe kyng he sende word a ȝeyn, þat he hadde ys franchise
In ys owne court, forto loke domes and asise,
And þat, ȝef ys neuew hadde mys do, in hys owne court he scholde
Onswere to eche mon, [8] þat to hym siwe wolde.
þo [9] þis kyng herde þis, þat he ne myȝt bi ryȝt lawe
Juge hym, þat ys neuew broȝte of ys lyf dawe,
He greyþede ys ost [10] faste vp þe erl of Kent,
To brynge ys neuew with strengþe [11] to stonde to juggement.

Occisio nepotis regis.

Contencio regis & Androgei.

---

[1] A feste *Ar.* [2] Ladyes *pro* sweynes *in Ar.* [3] As they pleide atte chesse, stryf they gonne arere *Ar.* [4] To Androge erl he sende word, *Ar.* [5] Forto a vonge *Ar.* [6] Tho he wuste *Ar.* [7] Hym was that hys cosyn hange scholde or spylle *Ar.* [8] That hym folwe wolde *Ar.* [9] The *pro* þis *in Ar.* [10] Swythe anon vpon the *Ar.* [11] To fonge juggement *Ar.*

Oþer

Oþer mid fuyr or mid swerd bryng he wolde al out,
Hym to noȝt and al ys [1] þing, ner he ner so prout.
þis erl bi grete lordes to þis kyng ofte sende,
þat he schulde for Gode's loue ys wylle [2] som del amende,
And þat he for ys neuew wolde, for to a baty stryf,
Do hey amendement, sawue lyme and lyf.
þo þer nas non oþer wey, bute stonde al out to dome,
þe erl of an oþer wey bi þouȝte [3] bi þouȝte" hym ylome.
And as he and ys conseil stable conseil nome,
Litteræ missæ imperatori. þese letres sende to July þe emperour of Rome.
" To July þe emperour of Rome Androge, erl of Kent,
" Gretyng and stable loue, aftur wraþþe, [4] send.
" Sire, wyte to soþe, þat sore of [5] þinket yt me,
" þat ich habbe for oure kynge's loue y holde aȝeyn þe,
" þat [6] my power nadde y be, þou haddest hym ouer come.
" Ac for he haþ now þe maistry, such pruyd hym haþ y nome,
" þat now me, þoru wam he haþ of [7] þe maistrie,
" Dryue he wolde out of ys lond myd gret vilenye.
" Ich habbe y holde hym in hys lond, & my mede þer of ys,
" þat he wol me dryue of ys lond vndeserued ywis.
" For oure Godes y take witnesse, þat oþer gult non þer nys,
" Bote þat i nelle mý neuew, þat a lytel dude amys,
" Bi take hym to juggement, to honge oþer to drawe,
" [8] Ich wole, saue lym & lyf, brynge hym [9] to" eche lawe.
" þer forc ich bidde, þat ich mowe my stat holde þorȝ þe,
" And þat þou [10] vp hym Bretayne mowe wonne þorȝ me.

[1] Men *pro* þing *in Ar.* [2] Somwhat amende *Ar.* [3] *Dele.* [4] Sent *Ar.* [5] Thynketh *Ar.* [6] Yf my *Ar.* [7] The the *Ar.* [8] Ac ich wolde, *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Of hym *Ar.*

And

" And ne þenche þou, Sire, noþing, þat ich treson þenche.
" For siker [1] þis þe soþe wei, withouten eny wrenche.
" [2] And God wole, þat men ofte in wraþþe & in sore,
" þat after here grete wraþþe here loue be þe more.
þo þe [3] emperou herde þis, he ne tryste not wel her to,
With oute siker ostage, such þing to do.
þe erl þritti noble men, þat were of ys blod, Ostages.
Sende hym and ys owne sone, þat were ostages god.
Siker [4] was þo þe emperour, he ne leuede nozt by hynde,
Ac com here to Engolond mid þe nexte wynde.
þe kyng [5] þe while London by segede faste, Adventus ulii.
And destryede þe erle's lond, & ys [6] contreis a doun caste.
Ac þo he herde, þat þe Romaynes y come were in hys londe,
To hem he wende hastyliche, & lette London stonde.
[7] þo he com ney Canterbury, in a valei þere by syde
He sey þe emperoure's ost ysprad a boute wyde.
þe emperour first [8] in ys half, & he hym self al so, Paracio belli.
Ordeynede first here [9] ost, þe bataile forte do.
Ac mid fyf þousand hors [10] ywryc, as it was bi speke,
þe erl of Kent was in [11] a wode, hym forte a wreke.
þer of nas not þe kyng war, ac with oute faile
Myd god herte he wende forþ to smyte þis bataile.

[1] This is the *Ar.* [2] And ofte hit falleth, that men, that buth in wrathe and in sore, After hure grete wrathe, hure loue wexeth the more *Ar.* [3] *L.* emperour. [4] The thirde comynge of Julie Emperour *Ar. in marg.* [5] Thulke while *Ar.* [6] Courtes *Ar.* [7] *Utigi-tur vallem prope Dorobernium intravit, aspexit in eadem Romanorum exercitum castra & tentoria ponentem* Galfr. Mon. [8] On his half, and the kyng on his also, *Ar.* [9] Ostes, the bataile for to do *Ar.* [10] Y heled, as *Ar.* [11] A wode, forto be a wreke *Ar.*

By

By twene þe see and Canterbury þis bataile was,
Neuer ich wene more [1] slaȝt in so lute wyle nas.
þat folk fel doun for wonded & y slawe in eyþer syde
[2] Ac þikke as leues doþ of tren a ȝeyn wyntre's tyde.
Ac þo [3] þat folk of þis lond neyȝ hadde þe maistrye,
Com þe erl of Kent mid ys ost þorȝ ys tricherie
Al fresch bi hynde þe Britones, alas! þikke stonde.
Fugit Cassibellanus. So þat þis lond was y broȝt þorȝ þis treson to gronde.
Ac þe kyng and somme of ys defendede hem so faste,
þat heo for hem alle o liue o scapede atte laste,
And nolde hem ȝelde for no þing, ac among here fon þere
Of scape vp an hey [4] hul, as mony roches were,
And þer heo cudde here prowes, & kepte hem þere an heyȝ
With stones, þat nomon ne durste come hem neyȝ.
Ow! lord þe noble folk, [5] þat ys of þis londe,
Wan heo þe emperour of Rome, þat no lond ne myȝte of stonde,
In bataile and al ys ost ouer come tuey,
And euer wolde, as ich wene, nadde ybe tricherie.
þer for ich wene, þat þis lond neuer y wonne nere,
Bute yt þorȝ treson of þe folk of þe selue lond were.
þo þe emperoure ne myȝte þe kyng myd strengþe ouer come,
þat hul he kepte for to he hadde myd hongur hym y nome.
Atte laste [6] þe kyng was y brouȝt to gronde
Rex mittit comiti. [7] For honger for defaut of mete, alas! þilke stonde.

---

[1] Slaught *Ar.* [2] *L.* as. [3] The folk *Ar.* [4] Hulle, ther many roches were, *Ar.* [5] That was on this londe, *Ar.* [6] Tho the kyng was al y brought *Ar.* [7] Thurgh hunger *Ar.*

And

And he sei wel, þat he moste nede for honger dye,
Or ȝelde hym to þe emperour, as al ys men seye,
And þe emperoure's prison he dradde eke ful sore,
þer fore þe erl of Kent he by souȝte milce and ore,
þat he hadde rewþe of hym, [1] and for ys genterise
Made ys pes with þe emperour with oute feỳntỳse,
And þat þe kynde blod of þis lond, of wham [2] heo boþe,
Nere þoru hym y broȝt to schame, & þat he toke þer of gome.
And þat ȝef he hadde oȝt misde aȝeyn hym myd wowȝ,
þat he yt wolde amendy aȝeyn hym wel y now.
þo Androge herde þis, som del he was in þoȝt.
" þe prynce," he seide, " oþer kyng nỳs to preyse noȝt,
" þat in tyme of werre as a lomb ys boþe meke & mylde,
" And in tyme of pes as a lyon boþe cruel & wylde.
" Mi Goddes of heuene and of erþe, wat segge now ȝe?
" My lord bi secheþ now my grace, þat myȝte er [3] hoto me.
" Mid þe emperour and mid me pes he secheþ to drawe:
" And we boþe of hym bi fore pees wilnede wel fawe.
" þer fore he schulde hym habbe y þoȝt, þat þorȝ me he was aboue,
" And þorȝ me he myȝt haue come a doun, & y kud[4] me loue.
" For yt ys to [5] eche prince y wis and kyng vilenye,
" To de foule ys knyȝtes, þoru wam he haþ maystrie.
" For þe maistry nys not a kynge's, ne be he neuer so god,
" Ac knyȝtes, þat vnder hỳm fyȝteþ, & schedeþ here blod.

---

[1] And of his gentrise *Ar.*
[2] *Deest vox. Nam* hii both come *in Ar.*
[3] Hote. *Ar.*
[4] My loue *Ar.*
[5] Ech a kyng or prince vilanye *Ar.*

And

" And naþeles ich wol fonden, to brynge hym of ys sore.
" For ich habbe of hym wreche ynow, wen he bi seche þ myn ore.
þe erl wende [1] to emperour, & [2] set a doun on kne:
" Sire," he seide, " al þi wille þou hast þou myȝt y se
" Of þe kyng, þat ys myn vncle, he ys at þi wille.
" Haue merci of hym ich bidde, & let hym noȝt a spille.
" What woldest þou more of hym, bute þat he þe truage bere?
þe emperour was stille, & ne ȝef hym non onswere.
" Sire emperour," quoþ þe erl þo, " [3] ne be ȝe noȝt so bolde.
" Understond, þat forward ich habbe al þe y holde,
" To brynge þe kyng bi neþe þe, & þat þou wonne ys londe.
" Wat schulde ich þe more do, nast þou al þis in þin honde?
" Nolde God, þat y suffrede my lord, þat is and was,
(" [4] þat bid me for ȝefnesse, and to amende hys trespas)
" þat he in þyne bendes come, [5] God yt schyld me.
" For þou [6] ne schalt [7] so lyȝtliche hym nȳme, y segge þe.
" Wyle ich libbe for ich wole in eche maner fonde,
" To helpe my lord & myn vncle, bute þou me vnderstonde.
þo þe emperour herde þis, he bi gan hym by þenche,
And hys wraþþe toward þe kyng, for drede of þe erl, quenche.
[8] þo emperour & þe kyng in þis forme a cordede were,
þat þe kyng of þis lond to þe emperour bere

---

[1] The emp. *Ar.* [2] Sette hym doun a kne *Ar.* [3] Ne bere ye yough nought to bolde *Ar.* [4] And biddeth me foryeuenesse to amendy his trespas *Ar.* [5] God for shulde hit me *Ar.* [6] Ne shalt nought so lightlyche hym take, ich segge the. Al the while that ych lyue, euere ich wole fonde *Ar.* [7] *Non leve est interficere Cassibellianum me vivente, cui auxilium meum reddere non erubescam, nisi consilio meo parueris* Galfr. Mon. [8] Tho the Emperour *Ar.*

þre

þre þousant pownd of seluer from ȝer to ȝere,
As to truage to Rome, þat non [1] ner bore nere.
And in þis maner was Engelond brouȝt first in seruage.
And þorȝ treson of þis selue lond first ȝef truage.
þer fore a kyng ne may noȝt among ys knyȝtes be
[2] To starne of hys juggement, ac somdel hym by se,
[3] þat he haþ to hem neode he not wuche stounde.
For a such wille, as ȝe y seþ, broȝte þis lond to grounde.
þe emperour & þe kyng to grete loue drowe,
And eyþer [4] to oþer by twene hem ȝiftes ȝeue ynowe,
And bi leuede al þe wynter to gadere in þis lond.
Ac aȝeyn somer þe emperour, [5] þo he hadde al on hond,
Wende toward Rome, and myd gret loue
Nom with hym þe erl of Kent, þorw wam he was a boue.
[6] And þoru nobleye þat he was man of so gret fame,
He let a moneþ of þe ȝer clepye aftur ys owne name, [illegible]
Julius, as he het ym self, þe moneþ þat next ys
Bi fore heruest, as me clepuþ ȝet so þe moneþ y wys.

CASSIBEL þe gode kyng, as God ȝef [7] þat cas, Obitus Cassibellani.
Deide aftur [8] sene ȝer þat he ouer come was,
And y buryed was at Euerwyk, [9] & þis kyndom
Teniwant, ys broþer sone, aftur hym nome,

---

[1] Forbore *Ar.* [2] To strange of his juggementz *Ar.* [3] And that haueth to hem nede he not whuche stounde. For thurgh such a wilfulnesse this lond was brought to grounde. The emperour tho & the *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Whan he hadde *Ar.* [6] This Julius the Emperour was of so grete fame, *Ar.* [7] The *pro* þat *in Ar.* [8] Seuen *Ar.* [9] And tho this *Ar.*

þat was erl of Cornewaile, and þe erle's broþer of Kent
Androge, that was to Rome mid þe emperour y went.

AUGUSTUS was emperour aftur July of Rome,
þe truage boþe of þis lond from ȝer to ȝer heo nome.
þe kynge's sone Tenwant, Kymbel was ys name,
He huld with hym at Rome, man of noble fame,
He ȝaf hym armes & made him knyȝt [1] ys owne honde,
Kymbel rex. þis Kymbel aftur hys fader kyng was of þis londe.
So muche he louede þe [2] emperour, þat þei he myȝt out
Hys truage at holde a ȝer, for loue he nolde noȝt.
þo þis August hadde y be emperour two & fourti ȝer,
He let make a descriuyng, þat y mad nas neuer er.
He sende aboute ys messageres (as yt ys y write)
To eche lond in al þe world a certeyn [3] forte wyte,
How mony schiren were in eche lond, & townes in eche schire,
And how mony men in eche toun, (he was a gret sire)
And þat ech mon paide a peny, & þat me hym þe money bere,
War þoru he wiste, how mony men in al þe world were.
And me made þis descriuing in þis lond, as wel
As in any oþer lond, bi þe kynge's day [4] Kinbel.
And naþeles [5] y leue yt not, þat he ne dude al wel þanne
For loue of þe panes, as to wyte þe noumbre of þe menne.

---

[1] With his owen honde *Ar.* [2] Emperour, than whan he myghte he nolde, The truage that his fader bar, he wolde nought with holde *Ar.* [3] For to *Ar.* [4] Kymbel *Ar.* [5] Ich leue hit wel, he dude hit somdel thanne, As wel for loue of the pans, as to knowe the numbre of manne *Ar.*

A boute

A boute Jerusalem þis noumbryng he bi gan,
As in þe myddes of þe world, to noumbre eche man.
þilke tyme oure lord was in [1] Bedleem ybore — Ortus Christi.
Of [2] Marie, to saue men, þat arst were for lore;
By Kinbele's day, þat kyng was of Breteyne here,
And in þe emperoure's August two and fourti ȝere,
þat was y clepud Octouian in an oþer name.
þis emperour August was of so gret fame,
þat, for Juli þe emperour, (þat bi fore hym was er)
Hadde aftur hym y clepud a moneþ in the ȝer,
þe nexte [3] moneþ afturward, þat heruest moneþ ys,
He let clepe aftur [4] hym August y wys.
þo August hadde y be emperour fyfty ȝer and fyue,
And wel y holde ys power, he wende out of þis lyue.

TYBERI, ys stepsone, aftur hym com,
þat nobliche huld ys power, & eke ys kyndom.
þe [5] Gywes, & Herodes (þat here [6] kyng was)
He a dauntede harde y now, and non harm yt nas.
Pilatus he sende þider, [7] here" justise to be þere, — Pylatus.
Forto holde hem harde y now, as heo wel worþi were.
And ȝet for al þan, by ys day, þoru here luþer mode,
Heo broȝte oure lord Jhesu Christ [8] to dye on þe rode. — Passio Christi.

---

[1] Bethlem *Ar.* [2] Maide Marie, to saue mankynde, that theigh nere for lore; By kynge's day Kymbelyn of this Brutayne here, And the Emperoure's tyme August two & fourty yere, *Ar.* [3] Moneth in the yer, that harueste *Ar.* [4] His name *pro* hym *in Ar.* [5] Juwes *Ar.* [6] Kyng tho was *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] To dethe vpon the Rode *Ar.*

þre and twenti ȝer emperour he was by fore ys deþe;
And aftur hym was Gayus fyf ȝer vn neþe.
[1] Kynbel, oure kyng of þis lond, sones hadde twei,
Guyder and Aruirag, noblemen beyc.
Guyder aftur ys fader kyng was of þis lond,
And Claudius emperour aftur Gay ich vnderstonde.
Y mad he was emperour sixti ȝer, ich wene,
Aftur þat God was y bore, and a bouten an eiȝtetene
Aftur oure lorde's deþ. a sene hundred ȝer.
And euene eiȝte and nyenti Rome was y mad er.

GWIDER, our kyng of þis lond, ys truage at huld sonè,
[2] To Rome þat ys eldore were y wond to done.
Claudius venit Angliam. Claudius þe emperour þer of hym gan bi se.
þe ferþe ȝer þat he hadde emperour y be
Mid gret ost he wende here to þis londe,
[3] A boute Souþhamto he a ryuede ich vnderstonde.
þo kyng Guyder vnder ȝet, þat heo a riuede þere,
Hym þouȝte lonȝ mid ys [4] ost er he at hem were.
[5] Heo mette hem to gedere [6] mid power ynoȝ.
Bellum. Muche folk [7] in eyþe half to gronde me slog.
þe kyng Guyder more folk [8] slowe ys owne honde,
þan muche del of ys [9] ost, as ich vnderstonde.

---

[1] Kymbelyn, kyng of Brutaỳne, sones hadde tweye *Ar.* [2] That his auncetres to Rome were woned to done *Ar.* [3] In the contreie of Southamtone *Ar.* [4] Power *pro* ost *in Ar.* [5] Hii *Ar.* [6] With gret power ynough *Ar.* [7] On aither side to grounde me faste slough *Ar.* [8] Slough with his honde *Ar.* [9] Folk *pro* ost *in Ar.*

[1] þis

[1] þis Romaynes were for noȝt ouercome atte laste,
[2] þat þe emperour with ys ost bi gan to fle faste.
A cheuenteyn þer was with hym, [3] Haym was ys name.
He sey, þat [4] heore partye wroȝt was ney to schame.
He by þouȝte hym of felonye, and lette hym arme þere
Mid armes of Brytones, as he of þis lond were.
He sywede myd þe Brytones vp þe Romaynes so faste,
þat vr Kyng [5] him louede, & ys herte al vp hym caste. Haym interfecit regem per fraudem.
He spek Englisch, for he was at Rome ynorisched bi fore
Myd ostage of þis lond, me louede hym þe bet þer fore.
He was euer ur kyng nex, and atte last he drow
Hys swerd, [6] ar he were y war, and oure kyng so slow.
þer was tricheri y now. for nomon ne may bet do
Gyle [7] an oþer, þan þilke þat he trusteþ mest to.
To hys felawes he [8] wende anon, & bad hem hardi be:
So þat þe Brytones were [9] vp þe poynt to" fle
Aruirag, oure kynge's broþer, wende forþ anon þere,
And dude on þe kynge's armes, hym self as yt were:
And lepte on ys stede, and siwede and sloȝ fast ys fon,
[10] And þe Brutones with hym, for heo wende, þat it were þe kyng echon.

---

[1] The Romaynes, *Ar.* [2] So that themperour *Ar.* [3] Lellius Haym *Ar.* & Lellius Hamondus *in marg.* [4] His partye was neygh y brought to shame *Ar.* [5] Hym louede wel, & his herte to hym caste. He spake Brutone, for he was with ostages at Rome byfore Of this londe a queynted, and hadde hit nought y lore. He was euere oure kyng nexte *Ar.* [6] Er me were y war, and oure kyng a slough *Ar.* [7] To a nothur, than he that a man trusteth most to *Ar.* [8] Yede anon, *Ar.* [9] In poynt forto *Ar.* [10] The Brutones wende hit were hure kyng, & siwede hym echon *Ar.*

Heo were alle þo so [1] harde, and þat folk slowe so faste,
þat þe emperour bi gan to fle mid ys folk at the laste
[2] To schippes, & into þe see with wrechede hed y now.
Ac þe luþur Haym with ys folk toward þe wode hym drowe.
Aruirag hym sywede, and [3] to grounde euer slowȝ.
Atte laste ys tricherie wel lutel he [4] by lowȝ.
Hamptone. He ouer tok hym at an haucne & sloȝ hym ryȝt þere.
Lutel harm thei tricherus [5] so alle y serued were.
þe haucne þer he was y slawe, aftur [6] Haym ys name y wys,
Hamptone was y clepud, as he ȝet y clepud ys.
[7] For Souþhamptone he ys y clepud, and worþ euermo.
In þis maner þe Britones þis lond [8] wiste þo.
Claudius þe emperour nolde not ȝet bi leue.
Eft sone he [9] gan with ys ost into þis lond weue.
Aruirag at Wynchestre with ys men was echon.
With ys power þe emperour [10] bisegede hym anon.
Aruirag greyþede hym and ys folk a boute,
And wendeþ forþ to ȝeue hym batail with oute.
þo he com out ward with ys folk, þe emperour with stod,
And dredde of hys hardynesse, & þouȝte yt was not god,

---

[1] Wel y hardied, *Ar.* [2] To his shipes in to the see with wrechede ynough. The luther Haym with othur folk to ward a wode hem drough *Ar.* [3] Euere to grounde slough. And atte laste *Ar.* [4] By lough *Ar.* [5] Alle so y serued *Ar.* [6] Haym ywis, Haymtone was *Ar.* [7] Southamtone hit is eke y cluped, *Ar.* [8] Kepte tho *Ar.* [9] Com with his ost in to the lond weue *Ar.* [10] Bysette hem echon [*l.* anon.] Aruiragus araiede hym, and ordeynede his route, Wende forth to yeue hem bataille that were with oute. He com outward *Ar.*

To

To do hys lyf [1] an auntre, and ys men al so.
He þougte te speke of a cord, ȝef it myȝte be y do.
To þe kyng he sende word, þat he schulde hym [2] be se
And make a forme of a cord, as yt myȝte best be.
For when heo hadde al y foȝte, & here lyf [3] an auntre y do,
And here folk slawe on eyþer syde, & perauntre hem self also,
Al for a lutel couetyse [4] þe bi ȝete war þanne lute,
Beter yt were [5] a cordy, and bi leue heore [6] prude.
For he was so god [7] knyȝt, and also so noble kyng,
He [8] beod for to ȝeue hym ys doȝter in spousyng,
þe nobleste damesel þat was in eny londe,
And to spouse þe emperoure's [9] doȝter yt ner hym no schonde,
[10] For wat he bere ys truage, as ryȝt [11] were, to Rome
As [12] alle oþer kynges dude, and ys eldren y lome.
þe kyng for ys heye herte anon yt with seide:
Ac noþeles ys conseil hym gan þer to rede,
And saide, þat it was to hym gret prow and honour,
To be in such mariage alied to þe emperour,
þo [13] hexte prince of þe world, and þo maide so noble al so,
And þat it [14] nere hym no schame, ys truage to do

[1] In auenture, and his mennes also *Ar.* [2] By se *Ar.* [3] In auenture *Ar.* [4] The by ẏete were thanne lyte *Ar.* [5] To acordy *Ar.* [6] Pruyte *Ar.* [7] A knyght *Ar.* [8] Praide hym for to *Ar.* *At* beod *rectè se habet. idem nempe est atque* offered. [9] Douȝhtur nere to hym no shonde, For thy that he bere *Ar.* [10] *Ea conditione (ait) ut imperio Romano subditus esset. Sic enim* Galfridus Mon. "*Mandabat igitur ei* [*Arvirago*] *concordiam, daturum que promittebat sese filiam suam, si tantummodo regnum Britanniæ sub Romana potestate recognosceret.*" [11] Was *Ar.* [12] The *pro* alle *in Ar.* [13] Heighest *Ar.* [14] Were *Ar.*

[1] þrottene ȝer and an half, and þat was longe y now,
And Seynt Peter & Seynt Poule in hys [2] laſte ȝer he slowȝ.
Passio Petri & Pauli. He bi com [3] sone þer aftur pur gydi and wod:
[4] For he was in ys moder wembe, as he vnderstod.
He þoȝte he wolde wyte, & se how [5] fair þe chaumbre were,
[6] War inne he was & kenede, ar ys moder hym bere.
Ys moder he let quelle a non, forto se with inne
How fair þe inneward was, þat he kenede inne.
þo ys moder y slaw was, me blamede hym þer fore,
And seyde, þat heo boȝte hym dere, er he were y bore.
"[7] ȝe is hyt," quoþ he, "so strong, myd childe to be stonde?
"Bi þe fey, þat ich owe Mahone, þe soþe ich wol fonde.
Hys ficicianes he [8] clepede, and swor ys oþ anon,
Bute heo maden hym with childe, he wolde hem sle echon.
Heo bi speke hem [9] bi twene, and, þe deþ forto fle,
þei ȝeuen hym a koynte drench, with childe for to be.
Hys wombe bi gan to [10] grete, & euer þe lenger þe more,
So [11] longe," þat hym þoȝte strong, hys wombe ok wel sore.
He clepede ys fiscicianes, [12] and swor grete a non,
Bute heo made hym bere child, he wolde hem honge echon.

---

[1] Trittene *Ar.* [2] *Repone* laste *ex Ar. Nec est cur putes*, laſte *recte posse retineri, ut sententia sit, eo anno, quo fuerit mortuus* relictus. *SS. Petrum atque Paulum occidisse.* [3] Sone afterward puȳr *Ar.* [4] And hough he was in his moder wombe he thoughte & vnderstood *Ar.* [5] Mury *Ar.* [6] What that he was ynne y kenned, er *Ar.* [7] Ye, quath he, is hit strong, with childe to be bystonde? Bȳ the feȳ ich owe to my Godes, the sothe *Ar.* [8] Clepede tho, and *Ar.* [9] Bitwyne than, deth *Ar.* [10] Grety, *Ar.* [11] *Deest Ar.* [12] And swor his oth anon, Bute hii delyuerede hym anon, hii sholde deye echon. Hii yef *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe geue hym an oþer drenche, to habbe child þer,
So þat atte laste a sory child he ber. Rana.
[2] For it alles com forþ, yt was a foul frogge.
For gode me þinkeþ litel harm, þei yt hadde i be a dogge.
ȝet þis ȝredi wreche louede þis foule best,
As [3] wommon deþ hire child [4] alle þing mest,
And [5] let hym rere a noble court, with gret quoyntyse and gynne,
At þe on ende of Rome, to norische þe schrewe inne;
And clepude þe court Laterane, aftur þe frogge y wys,
For in þe langage of Rome, rane a frogge ys.
So ys þat stude y clepud now, & euer worþ for þat cas.
Feble was þe Godfader, aftur wam þe name was.
[6] þe firste chirche þat me lette in þo lond rere,
Seyn Jone's þe Lateran me rerede seþþe þere,
þat stond ȝet, & heued chirche þat of al Cristendom ys,
Ac a beter chef þer ys now, þan þe frogge was y wys.
Seþþe þe luþer emperour hadde in his herte joie,
To þenche [7] on fuyr, þat was in þe bataile of Troie, Combustio Romæ.
þo me barnde grete townes & courtes day & nyȝt,
And þoȝte yt was mury joie, to se so fair alyȝt.

---

[1] Hii *Ar.* [2] For tho hit al forth com, hit was a wel foul frogge. His fisiciens hadde y holde hym wel in the gogge. Yut this gidy wreche *Ar.* [3] A woman doth *Ar.* [4] Alther thynge *Ar.* [5] Let arere (*omisso* hym) *in Ar.* [6] The ferste cherche me rerede there of al Cristendom. And of Seynt Johanes de Laterane thus the name com. Suthe the luthure Emperour *Ar.* [7] On fair fuer, that brend the toun of Troye, When the grete toures brende & courtes day and nyght, Hym thoughte hit was a mury game to se such a syght. The wood wretche *Ar.*

þe gydye wretche lette sette þe toun of Rome on fuyre,
To habbe game of þe lyȝt, þe while yt myȝte dure.
þo wende forþ þe toun folk, as heo moste nede,
And nolde no more suffre þe schrewe among hem wede,
[1] And slowe þe schrewe in fyl deþ ynow,
And þus hym fel wreche of God for he þe apostle slowȝ.

VASPASIAN þe emperour aftur Nero com,
þat beter man was þan he, & [2] ne" worrede nogt Cristendom.
þe Giwes he worrede [4] y now, & brogt hem [3] first to nogt,
For as muche as þe luþer men oure Lord to deþ brogt.
For he and Tytus ys sone of oure Lord vnderstode,
Fourti ȝer aftur þat he deide on þe rode,
Occisio Judæorum. [6] And wende to Jerusalem, and þat toun felde to grounde,
And slowe [7] þe luþer Gywes al þat heo founde,
[8] Bute a schipful þer of a scapede, þat were to fele y wys,
War of com þe luþer brod, þat a mong men ȝet ys.
Ten [9] ȝer Vaspasian emperour was þo,
And Tytus ys sone aftur hym [10] ten ȝer, and no mo.
Domician, Tytus broþer, emperour þo was,
Fiftene ȝer aftur hym. no more schrewe þer nas.

---

[1] Cite *Ar.* [2] He fleigh for fere out of toun, and hym self slough, And for he Petur & Powel slough he hadde vengeance y nough *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Stronge ynough *Ar.* [5] Al to *Ar.* [6] Wonne the toun of Jerusalem, and fulde hit doun to grounde, *Ar.* [7] There the *Ar.* [8] Som yut of hem a skapede, & that was harm y wis, *Ar.* [9] Yer afterward Vaspasian *Ar.* [10] Two *Ar. recte. Adeo ut* teu *reponerem.*

For

For he [1] worrede Cristendom, as þe luþer Nero,
And let [2] martri Seyn Denys, & monÿ oþer al so.

[3] A NERUA was þo emperour a ȝer, & somdel more.
Trajan [4] com aftur hym, mon of gret lore. Trajanus.
Nyentene ȝer & an half emperour he was,
[5] þe noblest þat myȝte, bote þat he Cristene nas.
So ryȝtful he was, þat [6] þan he hadde a dede hym self ydo,
þat a ȝeyn [7] ys lawes was, and ys sone al so,
[8] For such dede a man schulde, þat þis hadde y wroȝt,
Lese ys on eye, & he hym self ne sparede hym self noȝt,
Bute let pulte out ys own eye, & ys sone's al so.
[9] Wel" fewe kynges [10] me syþ, þat yt wolde do.
þer fore Seyn Gregori, þo he o londe was,
More þan fyf hundred ȝer aftur þis ryȝtful cas,
þat such a mon schulde in helle be, he carede in hys þoȝt,
þe soule [11] þorp Gode's grace out of helle he broȝte,
And to ys body [12] ys joyned, & ȝef hym Cristendom,
[13] War with, as he worþi was, to blisse of Heuene [14] com.

---

[1] Werrede *Ar.* [2] Martire Seynt *Ar.* [3] *Litteram hanc majusculam* A *rectissime omittit Ar.* [4] Com tho after hym, a man *Ar.* [5] Noble man for soth he was, but he *Ar.* [6] Theigh *pro* þan *in Ar.* [7] The lawe were, or his sone *Ar.* [8] For which dede a man sholde, for that he hadde y wrought, Lese eny of hys lymes, hym self ne sparede he nought, Ac let *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Me nough sikth *Ar.* [11] Thurgh *Ar.* [12] Hym *Ar.* [13] Whar thurgh, as *Ar.* [14] He com *Ar.*

Adrian

ADRIAN com þo next, and twenti ȝer and on
Aftur hym emperour he was, of Giwes ne louede he non.
þe [1] boru of Jerusalem he let somdel a [2] ȝeyn" rere,
þat Vaspasian felde adoun, þo he slow þe Giwes þere.
Ac he nolde [3] þe Giwes leue ȝeue for noþing, þat heo myȝte,
þat þe moste of þe boru enes habbe a syȝte.
He dude hem schame y now, & temprede hem fulwel,
And mad [4] hem sone milde y now, þo heo were rebel.

ANTONIN was þo emperour twenti ȝer and two,
And aftur hym twei breþeren in þe emperie were y do,
Marcus & Aurelius, nyentene ȝer heo were,
Cristendam bi here day [5] me by gan faste lere.
For [6] Eleuthere a god mon was þo pope of Rome,
þorw wam first [7] Christenemen in to Engolond come,
Ych wol sone telle how, as ich vnderstonde,
And telle aftur þis emperoures of kynges of þis londe.

Reges. AFTUR kyng Aruirag, of wam we habbeþ y told,
Marius, ys sone, was kyng, quoynte mon & bold.
And ys sone was aftur hym, [8] Coil was ys name,
Boþe it were quoynte men, & of noble fame,

[1] Burgh *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] The Jewes loue for no thyng, that hii myghte, That hii moste of the burghe ones haue *Ar.* [4] Hem meok and mylde ynough, that erst were rebel *Ar.* [5] Me gan faste to lere *Ar.* [6] Eleutherie the good man *Ar.* [7] Cristendom *Ar.* [8] Kyng Coel was his name, A noble man & queynte, and of good fame, *Ar.*

And

And here truage dude to Rome, as hem ȝte to do.
For þer nas [1] nower so noble prince, þat ne dude [2] so.
Lucye, Coile's sone, aftur hym kyng was.
[3] For, as me may þe soþe segge, by fore hym no beter nas.
For he herde [4] of telle of miracles, þat come
þorw Cristenemen al a boute, as wel as at Rome.
He willede anon in hys herte to fonge Cristendom.
þer fore ys messageres mid gode lettres he nom,
þat to þe pope [5] Eleuchere hastiliche heo wende,
[6] þat he quik in to ys lond Cristendom hym sende, Prima Christianitas Angliæ.
þat [7] heo myȝte serue God, for he wilnede muche þer to,
And he ne schulde not be glad, er þe dede were y do.
[8] þo pope here of was glad, & twei holy men hym sende,
Fagan and [9] Dimian, hys soule for to amende
[10] þat ryȝt bi leue hym taȝte, and ȝef hym Cristendom.
þo folk þo faste a boute wyde þer to com.
þis was an hundred ȝer, and sixti ȝer and two,
Aftur þat God was ybore, þat þis dede was y do.
[11] þus com lo into þis lond first Cristendam,
Bute yt were any holi man, þat priueliche arst yt nom.

---

[1] None *Ar.* [2] Also *Ar.* [3] To fore hym in Engelonde Cristendom none nas *Ar.* [4] Ofte telle *Ar.* [5] Eleutherie *Ar.* [6] And that *Ar.* [7] He *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.* [9] Damian *Ar.* [10] The ryght bileue to teche, & yaf hym Cristendom. That folk faste a boute wide ther to com *Ar.* [11] Thus com lo Cristendom in to Brutaÿne londe, But ther were erst some preueliche Cristendom hadde fonge. As at the place of Glastyngbury Joseph of Arimathie Lyuede ther in Criste's laÿ, with hys companye. Ther were tho in Brutayne, false lawes to lere, *Ar.*

þer

Þer were arst in Engelond, hor false lawes to lere,
Eyzte and tuenti chef studes, bischopriches as it were,
And þre architemples, as it were [1] hext of echon,
London, and [2] Euerwik, and in Glomorgan on.
Episcopatus. Þis gode kyng & his holi men lette felle hem alle þere,
And eizte & tuenti bischopriches in here studes lette rere.
Archiepiscopatus. And þe erchbischopriches as þe þre architemples were,
As yt were of alle chef Cristendom to lere.
Alle þo bischopriches vnder Euerwik were ydo
Þat ben bi Norþ Homber, as heo deþ zet al so.
London [3] hadde þo al þis lond, þat bi Norþ Homber ys,
From Douere to Scuerne, and al Cornewaile iwis.
Þe þridde erchbischopriche was at Carleon in Walis
Vp Osk in Glomorgan, ac þe see a doune ys,
Ac crides of olde walles þer stondeþ zet [4] euerne,"
Under hym Walis þilke hadde, & al bi West Seuerne.
Reditus incredulitatis. [5] Þus com lo in to þis lond first Cristendom,
Ac þoru a luþer emperour, þat þer aftur com,
Þat het Dioclician, it was seþþe i brozt to gronde,
And [6] heþenes y brogt azeyn for to Seynt Austyn it vn bonde.

---

[1] Heýghest *Ar.* [2] Ebrackwik, and ther to Carlyon. The kyng and othur holy men destruýde hem alle y fere, And eighte and twenty bisshopes in hure stede dude there, And thre Erchebisshopes ther the Erchetemples were, *Ar.* [3] Hadde that othur del, that a this side Humber is, Fram Douere in to Cornewaille to the see ywis *Ar.* *Adeo ut* Souþ *pro* Norþ *reponi debeat.* [4] *Deest in Ar.* [5] Thus com in to this lond the lawe of Cristendom, *Ar.* [6] Hethenesse *Ar.*

Lucie þis gode kyng, þat þus Cristene bi com,
Deide aboute four ȝer aftur ys Cristendom.
At [1] Gloucestre he deide, ac eir nadde he non,
þat a corede al þis lond, and ys men echon.

SOUER was emperour þilke tyme at Rome,
So þat þe tyþinges sone to hym come,
þat [2] þo kyng of Breteyne with oute eyr was ded.
Sone he þoru is court þer of nom ys red,
And wende hider hastiliche [3] with power y now,
And folk, þat stode a ȝeyn hym, faste to ȝronde he slow.
A duk þer was of þis lond, Fulgence was ys name,
He stod aȝeyn hym mid ys ost, & dude hym gret schame;
And, forto be þe sikerore, he wende [4] to Scotlond,
And made hym þere [5] gret ost of folk of þat lond,
And wende oft vp hym, and slow and barnde faste.
Ac euer hadde þe emperour þe maystre atte laste.
[6] þe emperour in þis lond weddede þo a wyf, Imperator spon at sororem Fulgencii.
þat was Fulgence's [7] sostre, þo in al þis strif.
Bi hire he hadde a god sone, y clepud Basian;
An oþer he hadde, y hote Get, þat he at [8] Rome biwan.
þo Fulgence seiþ, þat he ne myȝte aȝeyn hym stonde,
To þe [9] lond of Scicie he wende out of þis londe,

[1] Gloucetre he was y buried, ac heir hadde he non, Muchel sorwe to the lond, and to the men echon. Seuer was tho Emperour *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] With gret power y nough. That folk *Ar.* [4] In to *Ar.* [5] A gret ost of landfolk of the londe, And wende out vpon hym *Ar.* [6] Themperour here in this lond tho weddede a wife, *Ar.* [7] Suster in this ilke strife *Ar.* [8] Rome wan *Ar.* [9] Contreie of Sithie *Ar.*

[1] And a gret ost of Picars, whas cheuenteyn he was,
Of stronge men he gederede, to helpe hym in þis cas.
Þo he y mad hym a fayr ost of þis bachelerie,
He com a ȝeyn in to þis lond out of [2] Scicie.
He by lay first Euerwik op þe emperour faste.
Bellum. So þat þe emperour hym ȝef batail at þe laste.
[3] Ac muche del of þis lond to Fulgence toke,
For [4] he more of kynde was, & þe emperour for soke.
Bataile þei smyte strong ynow, & mony slowe to grounde,
So þat Fulgence þere hadde deþeiswonde.
Ac þe emperour [5] was y slawe, & y buried at Euerwyk.
[6] Ac Fulgence deide seþþe, þo he hadde y ley sik.
Contencio. Þo þis men were b þe ded, me moste habbe a kyng.
Bi twene þo Romaynes & þis lond þer bi gan þo stryuyng.
[7] Get, þe emperoure's sone, þe Romaynes to kyng nome.
For he was [8] of fader and moder of þe kynde of Rome.
Ac þe Brutones of þis lond nome Basian þer to.
For ys moder was of þis lond, & ys vncle al so.
[9] Þo þer were twei kynges þus, þer nas not wel gret loue,
Ne myȝte, þei heo breþren were, er þo on were a boue.

---

[1] And of Pictes gedered an ost, and hure cheuenteyn was, Staleworthe men and hardy, to helpe hym in this cas. Tho this ost y gadered was of yonge bachelrie, *Ar.* [2] Sithie. He byseged Euerwyk vpon themperour faste *Ar.* [3] For *pro* ac *in Ar.* [4] He of hure kynde was, *Ar.* [5] Was er y slawe, *Ar.* [6] And Fulgence deyde afterward, tho he hadde longe be sik. Tho these men *Ar.* [7] Geth, themperoure's *Ar.* [8] Of the fader blod, & of the kynde of Rome *Ar.* [9] Theigh they were bretheren beye, ther was nought gret loue, Ne they myghte reste haue, forte on was a boue *Ar.*

So

So þat eiþer [1] vp oþer werrede [2] faste, Bellum.
And a batail strong y now smyten at þe laste.
[3] And Basian and ys power slow [4] Get ys broþer,
[5] And Basian bi leuede kyng, for þer nas þo non oþer.

A STALEWORÞE ȝong bachiler in þis lond was þo,
[6] Caraus was yclepud, þat couþe of muche wo.
For þo he hadde in werre y be, [7] & do gret maistrie,
[8] And hym self muche yfonded, he þouȝte do tricherie.
He wente and bed leue þo of þe emperour of Rome,
[9] To wyte þe se a boute þis lond fram stronge men þat come,
And bi het hym, þat, ȝef þer of wel auaunsed he were,
To ȝelde more god to Rome, þan al Breteyne þider bere.
þo þe conseil of Rome y leuede ys faire bi hest,
And þat he was strong mon, & of gret power with þe meste,
þe emperour with god cartre, & mid ys owne [10] cel,
[11] Hym ȝef of þe se a boute þe warde euer y del.
þis false mon wende [12] þo mid ys cartre a boute,
And of [13] willesful men hym ȝederede a gret route,
And bi het hem [14] god y now of purchas, þat God hem sende,
And purueide [15] hem gode schippes, & in to þe se wende,

---

[1] Upon *Ar.* [2] Swithe faste, *Ar.* [3] So Bassian *Ar.* [4] Geth *Ar.* [5] And so he was al one kyng, for ther was non other *Ar.* [6] Karant cluped he was, & couthe on muchel wo *Ar.* [7] Y do *Ar.* [8] And a sayd muche hym self, he thoughte in trecherie *Ar.* [9] To kepe the Bruttysshe see fro strange men that come *Ar.* [10] Sele, *Ar.* [11] Hym yaf the power of this lond to hym euery dele *Ar.* [12] Forth tho with his chartre *Ar.* [13] Euel doynge men gaderede *Ar.* [14] Good *Ar.* [15] Hym *Ar.*

And won hem sone muche god mid strengþe & quoyntise,
And sefþe mid robbery, bute þei myȝte [1] in" oþer wyse.
[2] Of hys purchas so large he was to men þat he fonde,
þat he hadde a gret ost in a lutel stonde.
þe yles he robbede in þe see, & þe hauenes [3] sefþe" a borȝe.
[4] So þat men of purchas come to hym so gret route,
þat þer nas [5] prince vn nefe þat hym myȝte at route.
Hys power wex euer so, þat eche lond hym gan doute.
So þat he spek mid hey men here of þis lond,
And bi het hem faire y now, & dude hem to vnderstonde,
þat ȝef heo abowe to hym, and to here kyng hym nome,
þat he [6] wole al out hem brynge of þe daunger of Rome,
And [7] deliuere þis lond of Romaynes, & of stronge men echon,
þat so fre lond as þis ne schulde nower non.
þe lond hym made þo here kyng, for he was so quoynte man,
And he bi gan to werre anon vp þe kyng Basian,
And eyþer aȝeyn oþer gederede ys ost faste,
Bellum. So þat þei comen and smyton a batail atte laste.
[8] Ac [9] Caraus of felonye hym gan vnderstonde,
And þoȝte, þat [10] Picars were of [11] strong londe,

---

[1] *Omittit Ar.* [2] So large he was to hys men of thynges that hii founde, *Ar.* [3] *Deest in Ar.* [4] *Sic igitur ipso agente confluebant ad illum quicunque in aliena anhelabant; ita ut in brevi tantum haberet exercitum, quanto nullus vicinus princeps resistere quivisset* Galfr. Mon. [5] Prince non that *Ar.* [6] Wolde hem brynge al out of *Ar.* [7] Delyuere out of this lond the Romeynes echon: So freo a lond as this in the worlde sholde be non. That folk hym made tho hure kyng, *Ar.* [8] *Quod cum impetrasset, dimicavit confestim cum Bassiano & interfecit eum, & gubernaculum regni suscepit. Prodiderant enim Bassianum Picti, quos dux Fulgentius, matris*

þat [1] were with Basian þe kyng, þat Fulgence [2] hider brozte,
þat [3] heo wolde liztliche to hym turne [4] he þozte.
Mid hem he spek so quoyntoliche, & mede [5] bi gan bede,
So þat þe kyng Basian heo by traide in hys nede.
For þo heo come to batail, heo turnede a zeyn hym echon:
[6] Heo nuste wich were [7] here frend, ne wych were [8] here fon.
[9] Ac Basian and al ys folk eode a non to gronde,
And he hym self and mony oþer y slawe were in astonde.
þo was þis false [10] Caraus kyng of þis lond here,
[11] Unel it bi com hym of kynde to ben of such power.
þo tyþing com þo to Rome, þat he dude hem such schame,
[12] Heo nome a gret lordyng, Allect was ys name,
And sende hym in to þis lond, & men mid hym ynowe,
So þat in batail þis [13] Caraus heo slowe.
þo þis batail was y do, heo bi gonne arere
Werre vp men of þis lond, for [14] heo with Caraus were.

---

tris suæ frater, in Britanniam conduxerat. Nam dum sibi auxiliari debuissent, promissis & donariis Carausii corrupti, in ipso prælio diverterunt se à Bassiano, & in commilitones suos irruerunt. Unde stupefacti ceteri, cum ignorarent quis socius esset, quis hostis, ocius dilabuntur, & victoria cessit Carausio. Qui ut triumphum habuit, dedit Pictis locum mansionis in Albania, ubi cum Britonibus mixti per subsequens ævum permanserunt. Galfr. Mon. [9] Carant of his felonye gan hym *Ar.* [10] The Pictes *Ar.* [11] Strange *Ar.*

[1] Hii were *Ar.* [2] His Uncle broughte, *Ar.* [3] Hii *Ar.* [4] Hure thoughte. To hem he spak *Ar.* [5] Bygan hem beode, *Ar.* [6] He *Ar.* [7] His *Ar.* [8] His *Ar.* [9] And *Ar.* [10] Carant *Ar.* [11] Unele hy̆ cam hym of kynde to haue such power *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.* [13] Carant hii *Ar.* [14] ii with Carant *Ar.*

þe Brytones þo of þis lond, to schilde [1] hem fro schame,
[2] Cheson hem anew kyng, [3] Asclepiod was ys name,
þat was erl of Cornewail. he [4] gedere ys ost anon
To werre, & to stonde a ȝeyn þe [5] Romaynes ys fon.
He [6] wende hym to Londone, as kyng Allect þo was,
To honoure [7] here false Godes, as it fel þo bi cas.
[8] þo þis kyng þis vnder ȝet, þat þis folk þus come,
[9] He bi leuede ys sacrifise, & ys folk with hym nom,
And wende out aȝeyn hem, & strong batalle heo smyte.
Bellum. So muche folk þer was y slawe, þat dcol yt was to wyte.
[10] þis Britones were so egre, and wox euer so faste,
þat [11] þo Romaynes and here kyng gonne fle atte laste.
[12] þo Britones siwede aftur, as heo aȝt do,
And slowe mony þousant, and Allect þe kyng al so.
A [13] lordyng of þe Romaynes, þat y hote was Galle,
Com & [14] ȝold hym to oure kyng, & ys men ney wat alle.
þe kyng hym nom to prison, to London he was y brozt.
þe kyng hym wolde ȝeue lyf, ac ys men nolde nozt,
Ne suffre, þat þer were [15] o liue eny of here fon,
Ac ladde hym in to London, & ys men echon,
To a rennyng water, þat ȝet ys þer y weno,
And smyten of alle here hedes, to bryng hem out of tene.
þe water þer heo were y slawe me clepude Galle brok,
Aftur Galle þilke prince, þat þer ys deþ tok.

[1] Hem self fram *Ar.* [2] Chese *Ar.* [3] Asclepedot *Ar.* [4] Gaderede *Ar.* [5] Romeynes, that were his fon *Ar.* [6] Wende thuder sone anon, ther as Allect was, *Ar.* [7] His *Ar.* [8] Tho Allect this vnder yat *Ar.* [9] He by lefte *Ar.* [10] These *Ar.* [11] The *Ar.* [12] The *Ar.* [13] Lordlyng *Ar.* [14] ȝeld *Ar.* [15] Alyue *Ar.*

þo was Breteyn þis lond of Romaynes almest lere,
[1] Ac albysi were yt ten ȝer, ar heo here aȝeyn were.
Asclepiod let hym þo crowne to kyng a non,
And kept a boute ten ȝer þis lond [2] wel mid.
Ac þoru Romaynes, þat [3] here come, þat heþene were echon,
And þoru [4] oþer, Cristendom was nei wat al agon.

TWEI [5] emperoures [6] of Rome, Dyoclician,
And an oþer, ys felaw, þat het Maximian,
[7] Were boþe at on tyme, þe on in þe Est ende,
[8] And þe oþer in þe West, Cristendom to schende.
For þe luþer Maximian Westward hider soȝte,
And Cristenemen, þat he fond, to strong deþ he broȝte.
Chirches he fel al a doun, þer ne moste non stonde.
And al þe bokes, þat he myȝte fynde in eny londe,
He wolde lete hem berne echon amid þe heye strete,
And [9] þo Cristenemen [10] alle sle, and none [11] o liue lete.
Seþþe God was [12] y bore, þer nas for Cristendom
In so lute stonde y do so gret martirdom.
For þer were in a moneþ seuentene þousant and mo
Y martired for oure Lorde's loue, ([12] nas not here gret wo?)

[1] Unnethe was hit ten yer, that hii her a yen nere. Ascleopedot hym let tho crouny kyng a non *Ar.* [2] *Pro* wel mid *legend. potius cum Ar.* fram his fon. *Id quod carminis ratio postulat.* [3] Hider *Ar.* [4] Othur mysbeleuede, Cristendom was al gon *Ar.* [5] *Vide Editionem nostram vitæ Æl. fredi Magni Spelmannianæ, p.* 4. [6] At Rome were, on Dioclician, *Ar.* [7] And were bothe *Ar.* [8] The othur in the West of the worlde, al Cristendom to shende *Ar.* [9] The *Ar.* [10] A sle *Ar.* [11] A lyue *Ar.* [12] Y bore, vpon Cristendom Such persecucion as tho was hadde ther be non *Ar.* [12] Nas there a gret wo? *Ar.*

With oute [1] grete halwe, þat heo hulde longe in torment,
As Seynt Cristyne & Seynt Fey, & al so Seynt Vincent;
[2] As Sebastian, & mony oþer, as me may in Chirche rede,
And monyon turnede a ȝeyn to heþene for drede.
Among alle þese in þis lond, þat were monion
Y martred as þilke tyme, Seynt Albon was on,
[3] þat was þe firste martir, þat to Engolond come,
Dere haþ, Lord! mony a mon y boȝt Cristendom.
Under þis luþer [4] emperoures þer was a noble mon,
As of [5] heore luþer lawes, þat vnder hem muche won.
Constancius. Constance was ys name, he conquerede of Spayne
þe truage, and of Fraunce, & seþþe here of Bretayne.

COLE was a noble mon, & [6] gret power hadde on honde,
Erl he was of Colchestre here in þis loude,
And Colchestre aftur ys name y clepud ys ich vnderstonde.
Oure lord, among oþer þinges, hym sende a fair sonde,
þat [7] he hadde an holy doȝter al Colchestre in þis londe,
þat Seynt Helene was y clepud, þat [8] þo holy croys fonde.

---

[1] Othure grete halwen, *Ar.* [2] Fabian and Sebastian, and othur, as men rede, that helde faste in the fey, and hadde non drede. And, among men of these londe, there were manyon I martred at thulke tyme, *Ar.* [3] He was the furste martir of Brutayne that com. Muche was the shame me dude tho to Cristendom. Under *Ar.* [4] Emperour *Ar.* [5] Hure luthur lawe, and vnder hym muche wan *Ar.* [6] Muche *Ar.* [7] He gat a fair doughter at Coelchestre *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.*

Bi twene oure kyng [1] Asclepiod & þis erl with oute faile
[2] þer wox gret worre, so þat heo smyte bataile. Bellum.
And þis erl Cole slow þe kyng, & þo he hadde [3] þo ouer hond,
Kyng he let hym crowne þo of [4] al þis lond.
þat folk was þo of þis lond y payed wel ynow,
þat he hadde y wonne þe kyndom, & þat he þe oþer slow.
þe tyþing to Rome com, [5] þat he y slawe was,
þat hem hadde y do schame, heo were glad of þat cas.
þe noble prince [6] heo sende hyder þe gode knyȝt Constance,
þat whan hem al þe power of Spayne & eke of France,
[7] þat he scholde eke þis lond wynne a ȝeyn to Rome.
So þat þis noble prince, and ys men hyder come.
[8] þe kyng Cole yt vnder ȝet, he dradde in ys mod,
For he was so noble [9] knyȝt, þat no mon hym with stod.
To hym he sende of acord, ȝef it were is wille, Concordia.
þat he wolde to Rome abowe, & lete alle strif be stille,
And þider bere ys truage, as oþer dude bi fore,
[10] For wat he huld þe kindam, wen þe truage were ybore.
Constance it grantede, and nom ys truage,
[11] And nom also to be siker of hym god ostage,
And grantede hym þe kyndom and þe pes of Rome,
And bi leuede in þis lond [12] to godere y some.

---

[1] Astleopedot *Ar.* [2] Gan ther were a contek, so that hii smyte ane bataille *Ar.* [3] The heygher *Ar.* [4] Al the Brutayne lond *Ar.* [5] The kyng a slawe was, *Ar.* [6] Hii *Ar.* [7] And that *Ar.* [8] Tho Coel *Ar.* [9] Prince *Ar.* [10] And to kepe the kynedom, that hit nere forlore. Constancius grauntede this, & *Ar.* [11] And to be the sikerour, of hym toke good ostage, *Ar.* [12] To gedere botho y come. Sone by fel afterward, That Coel kyng sik lay, And deide sone afterward with ynne a short day, *Ar.*

A moneþ

A moneþ it was þer aftur, þat Cole syk lay,
And deide, as God wolde, with inne þe eigtehe day,
And oþer eir nadde he non, bute Seynt Helene þe gode,
Ys dogter, þat seþþe fond þe swete holy rode.
Sponsacio Helenæ. Constance, for hire eritage, þis maide to wyue nom,
And nom with [1] hire so þis lond, and þis kyndom,
And let hym [2] crowne kyng, & god kyng was and fyn.
By hire he hadde a god sone, y clepu Constantyn.
þo Constance hadde y be ellene ger kyng y wys,
He deide at [3] Euerwyk, and yburied was þer and ys.

CONSTANTYN, is gonge sone, ycrowned was þo kyng.
Noble mon he bicom, & [4] wytty þorp alle þing.
Kyng he was þritti [5] ger. he ladde þis kyndom
Ryght nobliche and swiþe wel with quoyntyse and wysdom.

A LUTHER emperour bi fore, þat het Maximian,
þat was [6] vp Cristenemen (as we scide) so luþer a man,
A sone he hadde [7] schrewe y now, Maxencius to name,
Hym me made emperour, mony mon to schame.
He wes, as wel as ys fader, gret schrewe y now.
[8] For in strong martirdom Seynt Kateryn he slow,

---

[1] Hure al this lond, *Ar.* [2] Crouny to kyng, that good knyght was & fyn, *Ar.* [3] E. bracwyk, and ther y buried ys. Constantyn *Ar.* [4] Wys thurgh *Ar.* [5] Yer of this kyngdom, And gouernede hit swythe wel with [queyntise & wysdom. The luthur *Ar.* [6] Upon Cristendom a swithe luthur man, *Ar.* [7] Sherewed ek, Maxent was his name, Hym he made *Ar.* [8] For Kateryne, and other mo, in stronge deth he slough. Much folk he dude shame, and the folk

And mony oþer martir, and þat folk of Rome al so
He fondede to descrie, and mony schames do.
So þat þe deserites in to þis lond come
To Constantyn, þe gode kyng, for de faute from Rome.
And he hem faire vnder fong, so þat mo and mo
þer come for enlegeance to habbe of heore wo.
So þat [1] þese deserites bi gonne al on hym grede.
" Sire," heo seiden, " for Gode's loue bryng vs of þis wrechede.
" Of þe kynde blod of emperie þer nys bi leued non,
" [2] Ne þat bi kynde were emperour, non bute þou on.
" How longe wolt þou suffre þe schrewe's out rage ?
" Go and wyn þi kynde lond and þyn eritage.
" þou schalt habbe þer help y now of þi kynde londe.
" Wel þou wost, þat [3] lute while þe schrewe þe at stonde.
Constantyn hym vnderstod of ys kynde londe.
[4] And god it were to habbe þis and þat on honde.
Muche power of þis lond mid hym forþ he nom,
And seþþe also of France, as he þer forþ com.
And wende toward Rome to wynne þe emperie,
To brynge þe schrewe adoun, þat dude þat robberye.
As he wende, he bi huld toward heuene an hey, Visio crucis.
And þo vp in þe firmament an angel he sey,

folk of Rome also He fondede to disherite, and brynge hem to wo. The disheritez of Rome to this londe come To Constantyn,[1] and bysoughte hym of hem to take gome. And he hem *Ar.*

[1] The disherites gonne on hym to grede *Ar.* [2] That sholde be kynde emperour, non but though al on *Ar.* [3] Lytel while they shulleth the withstonde *Ar.* [4] And that hit were good to haue *Ar.*

þat

þat huld a croys, and þer on y write was lo! þis,
"[1] Costantyne þorȝ þis signe þou schalt be maister iwis."
Constantyne þis vnderstod, heþene þai he were.
A crois, in stude of ys baner, [2] ys men bi fore hym bere.
Maxencius þo he wiste him come, he hadde of hym gret doute.
He let at Rome a strong dich make al a boute
And dep aȝen Constantyne, and a ȝeyn al ys route
Forto holde hem þer þoru wan heo come with oute.
As he was a boute þis dich, he ne ȝan not muche wynne.
For he fel al amidde, and dreynt hym þer inne.
þoru þe vertu of the crois he was sone ouercome,
And Costantyn hadde al so sone þe toun ynome,
[7] Costantyn ne com nower in batail non,
þat he nadde þorȝ þe crois þe maistri of fon.
So þat he hym vnderstod [4] of þe beste won,
Baptizacio Constantini. And of Seynt Siluestre þe pope hym let baptize anon.
And he was (as yt is ywrite) pur mesel þo,
And he bi com in hys baptizing hol of ys wo.
Seynt Siluestre was pope þo, and þe first þat þer com
Of alle popes þat deide with oute martirdom.
For þer nas non by fore him þat he martired nas
Of þe luther emperoures, for eche heþene was.
Levacio ecclesiarum. A chirche of Seynt Jon þe baptist Constantyn let rere,
And clepude yt [5] Costantiniane, for he was ybaptized þere.

---

[1] Constantyn *Ar. & sic infra.* [2] Tofore hym he let rere *Ar.* [3] Constantyn ther afterward com in bataille non *Ar.* [4] What best was to don, *Ar.* [5] Constantiniane, *Ar.*

[1] Of

[1] Of Seynt Petur & of Poule an oþer he rerede al so,
And in strong [2] mastlyng he haþ þer inne boþe heore bones y do.
Of seynt Laurence he rerde anoþer, of seynt Anneis eke on.
And of oþer Seyntes þat ȝet stondeþ he rerede eke monion.
þo sende he Seynt Elene ys moder, [3] þat wys was y kud,
To Jerusalem to seche þe croys, þat þere was y hud.
So þat it was þer y founde [4] þe by gyng of þe Maý,
As ȝé habbeþ ofte yherd, þe holy rode daý.
Costantyn lette also in Jerusalem chirches rere,
And [5] wyde aboute elles wer, Cristendom to lere.
So þat þoru Gode's grace so noble mon he was,
þat þer nas prince in al þe world, þat vnder ys power nas.
þre vnclen ys moder hadde, þat on hatte Honyn,
And Trahen þo oþer hette, and þe þridde Maryn.
Alle þre Costantyn nom with hym to Rome,
And grete lordes þoru hym alle þre þer bi come.

AN erl þer was in þis lond, Octaui was ys name:
Romaynes, þat [6] here bileuede, he dude ofte schame,
And slow hem faste her & þer, [7] þat me schulde uewe y se.
þe Brutones hym crownede þo heore kyng for to be.
[8] þis word com to Constantyn, he þouȝte was to done:
Trahen, ys moder vncle, hyder he sende sone.

---

[1] To *pro* of *in Ar.* [2] Mastlyng he let hure bones do *Ar.* [3] That wýs womman was kud, *Ar.* [4] In the gynnynge of May, *Ar.* [5] Wende a boute *Ar.* [6] Were byleued, *Ar.* [7] That few me myghte y se *Ar.* [8] Whan this word cam to Constantyn, he nuste what best to done: *Ar.*

With

With gret power ynow, to wynne þis kyrdom.
At an hauene bi Souþe þis [1] folk o londe com.
þe kyng was of hem ywar, aȝeyn [2] hem he sette.
Bi side Winchestre in a feld to gedere heo hem mette.
Bellum. Batail heo smyten þer, & to gronde slowe faste,
So þat Octaui oure kyng aboue was [3] tte laste,
And Trahen, & muche of hys folk, y wonded ney to deþe,
[4] Flowe to se to heore schippes, and of scapede vnneþe.
To Scotlond heo wende bi water, & þer þei gonne ariue,
And gederede þer [5] al new ost aȝeyn þe kyng bi liue,
And robbede faste and barnde al þe contrei a boute.
Oure kyng wende þiderward faste mid ys route.
Bellum. In Westmerlond þei mette hem, and gonne fiȝte biliue,
Ac oure kyng Octaui of scapede vnneþe [6] o liue.
He of scapede [7] in tor Norwei, to wynne hym help faste.
þo was Trahen [8] al a lord, þe wyle yt wolde laste.
Ac as he out of Londen wente in a tyde,
A gret erl hym kepte þer in a wode syde,
With an hundred knyȝtes y armed wel ynow.
þis prince al vn ywar toward hem drow.
Heo comen aȝeyn [9] hym vn war, & slowe [10] hym al for noȝt.
þis tyþinȝ was ouer se to þe kyng sone y broȝt.
He com hyder sone a ȝeyn joyful y now,
And [11] þo Romaynes, þat he fond, to gronde faste he slow.

---

[1] Folk to londe *Ar.* [2] Hem sone he sette *Ar.* [3] Atte *Ar.* [4] Hii flough faste to hure shipes, and a scapede vnnethe *Ar.* [5] A newe ost a yenst the kyng as blyue, *Ar.* [6] A lyue *Ar.* [7] *L.* into *cum* *Ar.* [8] As lord, *Ar.* [9] Hem *Ar.* [10] Hem for nought *Ar.* [11] The *Ar.*

þo gederede he so gret [1] tresour, and al so so gret route,
And so gret power, þat he nadde of no prince in þe world doute.
For þer nas prince non þat hym dorste arere strif.
So þat he huld þo þis lond in pes al is lyf.
He [2] ascode at ys conseileres, þo he to elde com,
How he myȝte best do mid [3] þis kyndom,
For he nadde bote a doȝter ho myȝte ys eir be?
Some of ys conselers hym gonne þus bi se,
þat he schulde nyme ys neuew, þat [4] hatte Conan,
And crowne hym kyng of þis lond, for þat he was [5] man,
And lete ys doȝter [6] spousi mid richesse y now
To an oþer prince elles ware, as ys [7] herto to drow.
[8] Oþer radde, þat he schulde al myd þe kyndome
Late ys doȝter spousi to an hey prince of Rome,
And þenne, for [9] þe' aliance þat were hem [10] by twene,
Heo myȝt þis lond al in pes holde with oute tene.
So þat þer was among hem gret strif for þis dede.
Cradok erl of Cornewaile [11] hy a vys seide,
þat a senatour of Rome, y hote Maximian,
Was of þe kynde of þis lond, a swyþe noble man.
For he was Leoline's sone, þat [12] Elene vncle was
þe gode Costantyne's moder, [13] for non beter nas.

---

[1] Ost, and so gret *Ar.* [2] Axede *Ar.* [3] His *Ar.* [4] Was hote *Ar.* [5] A Man, *Ar.* [6] Be y wedded with rychesse *Ar.* [7] Herte drough *Ar.* [8] A nothur radde, that he sholde with the kyngdome Lete his doughtur be y spoused *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] So by twene, Hii *Ar.* [11] His a vys he sede *Ar.* [12] Heleyne's *Ar.* [13] That non *Ar.*

And

And wan he was a prince of Rome, ȝef he were eke þer to
Kyng [1] eke" her of þis lond, swiþe wel yt were y do.
Siker me myȝte þenne be, to habbe here þis god;
For he was y bore at Rome, & of þis londe's blod.
And for he was of þis kynge's kynde, þat of þis lond was,
þe beter pays þer scholde be for the riȝtful cas.
Conan, þe kynge's neuew, þo he herde þis,
[2] Was wroþ, and destourbede al þe court y wys.
And naþeles Cradok hym held al euene and stille,
And þe kyng stilleliche broȝte al to hys wille.
To Rome he sende Morice, þat ys owne sone was,
Pryueliche to Maximian, to telle hym of þis cas.
þer was þo stryf at Rome bi twene þis Maximian,
And þo emperour, þat was þo, þat hatte Gracian.
þo Morice þider com, and faire was vnderfonge,
And herde þis contek, þat ilaste longe,
To þis senatour he seide, " Sire Maximian,
" [3] Whi art þou so sore a drad of þis Gracian,
" [4] Wen þou miȝt of hym god wei alto þin wille y se?
" For com with me to Bretayne, & þou schalt þere kyng be.
" For þe kyng [5] now in elde naþ non eyr y wys
" Kynde, bote ys doȝter one, þat hym fol lef ys,

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Wex wroþ, *Ar.* [3] *Ut quid Gratianum times, Maximiane, cum tibi pateat via, qua ei imperium eripere poteris?* Galfridus Mon. [4] Thugh myght of hym haue al thi wille, & thugh konne the by se. Com with me *Ar.* [5] Nough is old, & ne hath non heir y wys, But a doughtur that is yong, that hym lef is, *Ar.*

And

" And he haþ god wille to þe, [1] as me deþ hym to vnderstonde,
" þat þou hire spousedest. for þou art of þe kynde of the londe.
" And such myȝt, wan yt so ys, þou myȝt þer þoru a fonge,
" þat þou myȝt perauntre [2] Rome wynne ar come oȝt lonȝe.
" For þi gode cosyn Costantyn Rome wan al so,
" And mony oþer of our kynges in þis maner come þer to.
þo þis Maximian vnderstod al þis,
He dude hym sone hyderward mid ȝret power y wis.
He ariuede at Souþ hampton, as [3] þo wynd hym had y lad.
þo our kyng herde her of, he was somdel a drad,
Leste he hadde for vnel y come. [4] Ac þe he wiste wad he was,
He vnder feng hym fayr y now, & conseilede of [5] þe cas,
Some seyde, [6] þat hym wer beter take ys neuew Conan
þe kyndom of þis lond, and some [7] Maximian,
And some, an hey mon of þis lond þat he ys doȝter toke,
And ys kyndom mid hire, for he yt wolde best loke.
Ac ys hext conseil naþeles, that he mest vnder stod,
Radde hym to Maximian, [8] for he was of so hey blod,
Of þe gode quene Elene, & of þe noble Costantyn,
(þat was kyng here of þis lond, & emperour atte fyn,)

---

[1] As he is vnderstonde, To wedde to the, by cause thugh ert of kynde of this londe. And such power whan hit is so though myght ther thurgh avonge, *Ar.* [2] Be lord of Rome er longe *Ar.* [3] The *Ar.* [4] And tho he wiste hough hit was, *Ar.* [5] This cas *Ar.* [6] Betere hit were to take *Ar.* [7] To Maximian, And some othur lordes of this londe that hys doughtur toke, And the kyngdom with hure, that hit couthe best loke *Ar.* [8] That was of heygh blod, And of the good *Ar.*

[1] And of þe kynge's blod Cole kyng of þis lond he com,
þat god yt were to al þe lond to take hym þe kindom.
þe kyng and ys meste men hulde al þis wisdom.
So þat þe kynge's dozter mid þis lond he nom.
Ac Conan, þe kynge's neuew, ne likede not þis game.
[2] He garkede power a zeyn hym to hym alle schame.
Ac ys power [3] lute was. for þe kyng was euer aboue,
So þat atte laste þei were y brozt [4] in loue
Bi Graciane's dai þe emperour. þis was, as ich wene,
[5] A boute þe zer of grace CCC. & LX. & seuentene.
Withinne fyf-zer aftur þis kyng so prout bi com,
For þe grete tresour nameliche þat he alday nom,
þat he [6] nas not ene y paid to habbe þis kyndom,
Bute he hadde France al so with strengþe wyþ oute dom.
He nom with hym of [7] hys lond gret power y now,
And to þe lond, þat was yclepud [8] Armore, he drow,
þat Breteyn ys now yclepud, as he it [9] nempde þo.
Fyftene þousant [10] hors y wrye þer were azeyn hym, & mo.
Bellum. Of þe lond of France, and of oþer londes bi syde.
þer heo smyte a batail, þat cowþ was fulwyde.
þer was þe [11] duk of France y slaw, and al is folk ney.
þo þe kyng Maximian þis grete slazt y sei,

---

[1] And of kynge's blood Coel of this londe com, *Ar.* [2] He ordeyned with his power to do hem alle shame *Ar.* [3] Litel *Ar.* [4] To loue *Ar.* [5] In the yer of oure Lord Crist thre hundred & seuentene, (*sine* & LX.) *Ar. minus recte.* [6] Was nought onlich a paid to haue the kyngdom, *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] Armorike, *Ar.* [9] Clupede *Ar.* [10] Hors y heled there were *Ar.* [11] Kyng *Ar.*

He

He was glad, for he wiste wel to wynne þo al ys wille.
Conan, [1] þe quene cosyn, he clepude out þo stille.
He bi gan som del to [2] lihe. " We habbeþ now," he seyde,
" Y wonne an ende of France, of þe oþer nys no drede.
" Þei ich be kyng of Breteyne, þat was þin [3] vncle lond,
" Ne be þou not sori þer fore, for ich wol habbe more an hond.
" Ych wol make þe of þis lond kyng, þou schalt yse,
" [4] And þis lond schal be þyn, and þe oþer Breteyn be.
" For honour of Breteyne, to wam þou haddest kynde,
" þe oþer Breteyne yt schal hote, as to habbe of þe mynde.
" Deliuere we schul yt of þis folk, þat [5] hire inne ys,
" And of folk fulle it fol of [6] oure kynde y wys.
Conan bowede a doun to hym, & þonkede hym [7] faste,
And bi het to serue hym trewliche, þe while ys lyf laste.
Heo wende a boute in al þe lond, & heye townes nome.
And al þe men, þat heo fonde, heo slow euer as heo come,
And let þe wimmen go aline; & þo heo hadde al [8] an honde,
[9] And hadde y slawe al clene a boute þat folk of þe londe,

[1] The quene's cosyn, he let tho clepe hym tille, And thus he began to speke to hym. We haueth nough, he sede, Wonne that on ende *Ar.* [2] *Id est*, to laugh. *Sic enim* Galfr. Mon. "*Vocaviter-*
"*go Conanum ad se extra tur-*
"*mas, & paulisper subridens*
"*ait: Ecce unum ex potioribus*
"*regnis Galliæ subjugavimus,*
"*ecce spem ad cetera habere*
"*possumus. &c.* [3] Uncle's *Ar.*
[4] And this, in mynde of that othur, the lasse Brutayne shal be. In honour of the more Brutayne, to what thugh haddest kende, The lasse Brutayne this shal be, to haue the more in mynde *Ar.*
[5] Ther *Ar.* [6] Thyne kynde *Ar.* [7] Ful faste, *Ar.* [8] On *Ar.* [9] And hadde delyuered al a boute clene that folk of londe *Ar.*

In eche stude heo sette þere strong warnesture and god
Of folk of þis lond [1] here, and of here owne blod.
þe kyng an hundred þousant [2] men in þis lond fette,
[3] And þritti þousant knyȝtes [4] here wardeynes he sette.
And delde among hem al þe lond, & ȝef eche diuerse þing,
And made Conan of hem alle, & of al þe lond kyng.
[5] And þus was Breteyne y wonne þoru oure [6] prince here,
And aftur þis lond Bretayn iclepud in þis maner.
Maximian wende [7] forþ þorw ys grete maistrie,
And wan with strengþe al France, and seþþe Normondie.
[8] For he ȝef ech mon, þat to hym com, his purchas in eche londe.
So muche power fel hym to, þat noþing myȝt hym at stonde.
And Gracian þe emperour at Rome [9] seþþe he slowȝ,
þat for hys hardy dedes of hym me dradde ynowȝ.
Ac þoru þe emperour, þat seþþe com, y hote Theodose,
Maximian was seþþe y slaw, [10] magrei ys nose.
And so þe schrewe robboures hadde here wille at stonde,
And cheui in here robberi, atte laste it goþ to gronde.

[1] Here of hure *Ar.* [2] Men of this londe let fette, *Ar.* [3] *Prætereaxxx. milia militum, qui ipsos infra patriam, qua mansuri erant, ab hostili irruptione tuerentur.* Galfr. Mon. [4] Hure *Ar.* [5] Thus was litle Brutayne *Ar.* [6] Princes *Ar.* [7] Tho forth *Ar.* [8] He yaf ech man that to hym com of purchas of his londe. So muche people drough to hym, myghte hym no man withstonde *Ar.* [9] Suth he dude to dethe, And his brothur Valentinian a scapede a lyue vnnethe. Ac thurgh an emperour *Ar.* [10] Maugre al his nose. But erst these sherrewe robboures hadde hure wille a stounde, And suth for hure roborie hii were y brought to grounde. þe Brutones *Ar.*

þe

þe Britones, þat Maximian of þis lond broȝte þo,
[1] In þe lasse Breteyn bi leueþ ȝet, and schul euer mo.
And so þilke Brutayne of þis lond com
More þoru strengþe, as ȝe yseþ, þan þoru ryȝt dom.
Of [2] þe lasse Bretayn Conan þat was þus kyng,
Among hem nolde of [3] þilke lond habbe no myngyng,
Ne children of þilke kynde, þer fore he lette sende
[4] To hye men of þis lond aboute in eche ende,
[5] þat of hye menne doȝtren maydenes me nome
[6] Ellene þousant at þe leste, & to hym þat heo come;
And of [7] simpler maydenes an sixti þousant godle,
þat heo miȝte [8] make here kynde al clene of heore blode.
[9] þis maidenes wer y gedered, and [10] to London y come.
Mony were glade þer of, and [11] ful sori some
þat heo schuld of lond wende, & neuer eft here frendes se,
And somme to lese here maidenhed, wyues for to be.

---

[1] Byleuede in Brutayne, that Conan com thus ther to, That Armorike erst cluped was, & to newe name thus com By conqueste, as who seith, more than thurgh *Ar.* [2] *Cumque sibi cessisset victoria, voluit commilitonibus suis conjuges dare, ut ex eis nascerentur heredes, qui terram illam perpetuo possiderent; & ut nullam commixtionem cum Gallis facerent, decrevit ut ex Britannia insula mulieres venirent, quæ ipsis maritarentur. &c.* Galfr. Mon. [3] That lond *Ar.* [4] To the heigh *Ar.* [5] That heighe mennes doughtren maydens me nome Enleuen thousend atte leste, *Ar.* [6] XI. ml. maydenes fre. LX. ml. madenes thewe *Ar. in marg.* [7] Simple menne doughtren sixti *Ar.* [8] Fulle that lond al clene *Ar.* [9] These *Ar.* [10] To shipe hii come *Ar.* [11] Wel sory some, Some for hii sholde of londe wende here frendes neuere to se, *Ar.*

þo þei were in þe schippes y do, & in [1] þe fer were,
[2] So gret tempest þer com, [3] þat drof hem here & þere,
So þat þe meste del a dreynt were in þe se,
And to oþer londes some y driue, and ne come ner aȝe.
A kyng þer was of Hongri, Guayn was ys name,
And Melga, kyng of Picardye, þat couþe ynow of schame,
þe wateres for to loke a boute þe se heo were,
A companie of þis maydenes so þat heo mette þere.
To here foly he wolde hem nime and hor men al so,
Ac þe maydenes wolde raþer dye, þan a cente þer to.
þo wende forþ þe luþer men, & the maydenes slow echon,
So þat to þe lasse Breteyne þer ne com aliue non.

OF þe wo, þat þer haþ in Engelond y be,
þoru emperoures of Rome, here ȝe mowe y se.
In oþer manere þat Scottes & [4] Picars, as ich seide,
Habbeþ y worred þis lond, ich wol telle þe dede.
Guain þe kyng of Hongri, and þe kyng of Picardie,
þo heo hadde, as ych haue y seit, mid so gret vilenie
Y slawe of þis maydenes þat swete companie,
Bi þouȝte to do þis lond more tricherie.
Heo vnderstode, þat þis lond ymad was al clene
[5] Of god folk þoru Maximian and Conan [6] as" at ene,
And þat heo myȝte þis lond al for noȝt wynne,
Heo gederede folk faste, þe werre to bi gynne.

---

[1] *Lege potius, cum Ar.* þe see fer were. [2] A gret *Ar.* [3] And blew hem *Ar.* Pictes *Ar.* [5] Of people thurgh *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.*

To

To þe se heo sende mid heore folk, þat heo hadde on honde,
And come, as hem leuest was, first in to Scotlonde.
Toward þis lond heo bi gonne forto robby faste,
þat folk to sle, and townes and castles adoun caste.
þe simple men, þat heore were, here red þer of nome,
And sende aftur more help to þe emperour of Rome.
A duk, þat [1] het Gracian, from Rome me sende,
þat mid gret power to þis lond hyder wende.
þo lond folk, þo he hyder com, turnede to hym faste,
So þat þer was slawȝt gret, þe wyle it wolde laste.
And þis kyng of Picardyo, and al so hys felawe,
Wer of come atte laste, þat heo nuste wyder to drawe.
Viliche þei were & mid strengþe ydryue into Yrlonde.
þo hadde Gracian þis lond al clanliche on honde,
[2] He let hym þo crowne kyng, and þo he alord was,
No more schrewe, þan he bi com, ych wene non nas.
[3] þat lond folk eode forþ, and to gedere drowe,
And, ar he dude to muche wo, þo foule schrewe slowe.
þat þo kyng was y slawe, it was sone couþ
In eche half from lond to lond, boþe Norþ & Souþ,
So þat it to þe kynges come, þat wende in to Yrlond.
[4] Heo porueide þat heo haddo folk y now on honde
Of Norwei, and of Denemark, and al so of Scotlonde,
And barnde and to gronde slowe faste in þis londe.

---

[1] Height Gracian, Maximian hider sende. With two legiones of men hiderward he wende. The landfolk *Ar.*

[2] And let hym self crouny kyng, & tho he al lord was, *Ar.*

[3] The landfolk so hii sey this, to gedre faste hem drough, *Ar.*

[4] Hii parueyede hem, that hii hadde sone power an honde *Ar.*

So þat þe folk of þis lond al clene was ouercome.
[1] For þe kyng had arst of þis lond þe knyȝtes so clene y nome.
Eft sone heo sende ȝet to Rome, wepyng ful sore,
þat heo schulde in here wo ȝet hem helpe more,
And [2] hem wolde obligi, and sikernesse finde gode,
To bere hem clene here truage, wyle þe world stode.
Eft sone ȝet þo Romaynes power hyder sende,
Knyȝtes and oþer werrours, þat to þis lond wende,
And in þe Souþ half ariuede of þis lond her.
Heo gadered folk ynow, þat heo hadde gret power,
And wende faste vp here fon, þat ne myȝt hem noȝt at stonde.
For some were y slawe sone, and some flow out of londe.
þo [3] þis lordes of Rome al here wille hadde,
Heo nomen here conseil, & þe folk of þis lond radde,
þat heo bi twene þis lond & Scotland schulde a wal rere,
Strong and heyȝ on eche syde, þer no water nere,
From þat on se to þat oþer, þat were hem bi twene,
To lette hem wen heo come, & to saue hem fro tene.
[4] For Scotlond haþ euer y be a luþer recet y lome,
Wan þer any werrours toward þis lond come.
þe Romaynes seide eke, þat heo nolde in nomaner so wende
Out of heore lond hiderward, ne heore power so sende;
Ne to rokke hem so in þe se, ne heore lyf [5] an auntre do,
Bote wite heore lond at home, and heore god al so:

---

[1] For Maximian hadde out byfore al clene the knyghtes y nome *Ar.* [2] Hii hem oblege wolde, and *Ar.* [3] These lordlynges *Ar.* [4] For Scotlond haueth for vs y be luther recet y lome, And euere enemys to this lond, & wolde neuere be some. *Ar.* [5] In a venture do, Ac witye hure owene lond at hom, and hure good also: For hii no more

Ac ȝe schulde of oure ȝonge folke teche for te fyȝte,
For heo ne more in þis lond nolde come, ne myȝte.
þat folk þo of þis lond, þo heo nuste non oþer red,
Bi gonne to rere þe stronge wal, as hem was y seyd.
A rerde he was strong ynow, as þe stude is ȝet sene.
Muche me moste swynke er, and ther aboute spene.
þo þe wal wes ȝare y mad, a conseil heo nome,
þat al þe [1] conseil of þis lond schulde to London come.
þo heo were alle [2] ycome wisliche for to rede,
þe bischop of London in þis maner hem seyde:
" Mi leue frende, to telle ȝou, as þis heye men me bede,
" Beter wille ich habbe to wepe, þan to do oþer dede.
" [3] For pite yt ys of þis lond, & of oure [4] wrecched hede,
" Aftur þat Maximian our [5] fol gan awei lede,
" Al our knyȝtes, and swaynes, and al oure ȝong hede,
" And [6] astored þer with oþer lond, alas! þat deolful dede!
" For ȝe ben men beter y taȝt to schouele and to spade,
" To cartestaf and to plowstaf, and a fischyng to wade,
" To hamer and to nedle, and to marchandise al so;
" þan [7] with swerd or [8] hauberk eny batail to do.

---

more in this lond wolde come ne myghte, And that hii sholde hure yong folk teche forto fyghte. That folk *Ar.*

[1] Grete *pro* conseil *in Ar.* [2] Thuder y come wisliche to rede, Therehebisshop Gwithelyn of London thus sede: *Ar.* [3] *Miseret enim me orphanitatis & debilitatis, quæ vobis accessit, postquam Maximianus regnum istud omni militia omnique juventute spoliavit. &c.* Galfr. Mon. [4] Wrecchede, After that *Ar.* [5] Folk *Ar.* [6] Othur londes storede ther with, alas! the deolful *Ar.* [7] With sper or with swerd bataille for to do. Whan your enemyes cometh yow to, ye ne kunneth bute fle, As shep byfore wolues. *Ar.* [8] *Id est,* haber-

" For wen oure fon to ow comeþ, ȝe ne konne noȝt bote fle,
" As schep to forc wolues: (how myȝte more wo be?)
" And þe se bi set ow al [1] a boute, bote twei weyes ȝe mowe þenche,
" Oþer ligge a doun and be slawe, oþer fle and drenche.
" [2] Wor þere [3] any hope of ow, bote clanliche al þat lond,
" Al þe help and lokyng, ys in oþer monne honde?
" [4] And þe Romaynes beþ anyed of here trauail so sore,
" Of perel on se, & eke on lond, þat heo nul come her no more.
" Heo wol raþer bi leue here truage, þat ȝe hem bereþ aȝer.
" Ne konne ȝe noȝt lerne þing, þat ȝe dude neuer er?
" [5] Change ȝoure hond, & to vse of swerd & lance ys ydo.
" For no men ne beþ strengor þen ȝe, ȝef ȝe turnede þer to.
" [6] Me may se a bonde mone's sone [7] oþer wyle knyȝt bi come,
" And some gromes and squiers, and seþþe knyȝtes some.

---

habergion *sive* lorica. *Potest tamen* & haubert *legi, quomodo & ipse legisse videtur* Codicis Ar. *interpolator. Et quidem hodie itidem bipennem* halbert *vocitare solemus.*

[1] A boute, hough mowe ye thanne by thenche? *Ar.*

[2] Help is ther non with yow, but clenlich al this londe, Al the helpyng and lokyng, ys in othur manne's honde. *Ar.*

[3] *Eritne ergo spes vestra semper in alieno tutamine, & non, instructis manibus vestris, ensibus & hastis depelletis latrones, nequaquam vobis fortiores, nisi segnitia & torpor adesset? Jam tædet Romanos tam assidui itineris &c.* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Malim* ac *pro* and.

[5] Aplieth your houdes to the spere and to swerd also *Ar.*

[6] *Nonne homines transverso ordine nascuntur, ita ut ex rustico generetur miles, & ex milite rusticus? Miles etiam de mangone venit, & de milite mango.* Galfr. Mon. [7] Som tyme a knyght by come, And of a grom a squyer, and after knyghtes some *Ar.*

" Wen

" Wen ȝe habbeþ [1] forme of men, beþ men [2] on alle wise,
" And turneþ ȝour hond to manhede, & [3] wyteþ oure franchise.
[4] þis bischop, þat hatte Gocelyn," þoru heor [5] alle rede,
To þe lasse Breteyne wende for þis dede.
King Conan he fond ded, [6] an oþer of gret fame
Kyng he fond in hys stude, [7] Androw was ys name.
" Sire kyng," quoþ þe bischop, ȝef þou wolt vnderstonde,
" Deol þou myȝt habbe in þin herte of þi kynde londe,
" Of þe more Bretayn, [8] as þin eldre were y bore.
" For þou wost wel Maximian þe kyng, & Conan her bi fore
" þe bachelerie al þat [9] aȝt wes out of þat lond nome,
" And a stored here þis [10] lond and þe power of Rome,
" And londes abouten vs habbeþ wel vnder ȝite,
" þat þer nis no folk bi leued, þat lond forto wyte.
" Heo sleþ & destruyeþ al, þat þer nys noþing bi leued,
" Warbi men [11] mow libbe, and al for defaut of heued.
" And þer nys no mor þat kynde haþ þerto bute þou [12] on.
" Help [13] þi kynde eritage, & þou worst þer kyng anon.
þe kyng gan som del to [14] lyȝhe, þo he herde þis.
" Ych [15] habbe," he seyde, "sire bischop, such tyme y sey y wys,

---

[1] The fourme *Ar.* [2] In *Ar.* [3] Kepeth youre *Ar.* [4] The erchebisshop Gwithelyn, *Ar.* [5] Aldre [*l.* alre] *Ar.* [6] And a nothur *Ar.* [7] Androge *Ar.* [8] Ther thyne elderne *Ar.* [9] Ought was *Ar.* [10] Lond thurgh the power *Ar.* [11] Myght *Ar.* [12] Al on *Ar.* [13] Nough thyn olde heritage, *Ar.* [14] Laughe, *Ar.* [15] *Olim tempus erat quo non negarem insulam Britanniæ accipere, si quis eam mihi largiretur. Non enim existimo alteram patriam fertiliorem fuisse, dum pace & tranquillitate frueretur. At nunc, quoniam infortunia accesserunt &c.* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] þat

" [1] þat y nolde nogt habbe for sake þat lond ho me hadde y brogt þer to.
" Ac so muche [2] wrecched hed þer ys, þat nys not now so.
" And nameliche for þe folk of [3] Rome þat so muche seruise habbeþ þere,
" [4] þat' in such þraldam forto be [5] eche god mon loþ were.
" þis lond ich [6] habbe here so fre, þat to non herre y schal abuye,
" Bute wite fram þe kyng of France, þat doþ me ofte anye.
" And for to wyte me from hym, y nyl not [7] henne wende.
" Ac for myn [8] eldore hadde þat lond, [9] y segge þe atte ende,
" To brynge it ageyn [10] to oure kynde, ich wol þider sende
" Costantyn my broþer, þat god knygt ys and hende,
" And wel [11] yfonded in armes, & two [12] hondred knygtes al so,
Wel [13] y wrye with þe atyl, þat god dede mow do
" Mid þe folk of þe lond, gef [14] heo agtes beþ,
" And ge mow hym make goure kyng, wen ge [15] tyme seþ.
þis Costantyn was of send, and [16] þis knygtes also,
And [17] schippes and here a tyl prest, such prowes forto do.

---

[1] That ich it wolde nought haue forsake, yf hit hadde ther to be brought *Ar.* [2] Wrecchede now ther is, that now is hit so nought *Ar.* [3] Rome such seruice *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Ech man ful loth were *Ar.* [6] Holde as freo, y ne dar non othur a buye, But witie me fro the kyng of France, *Ar.* [7] Hens *Ar.* [8] Elderne *Ar.* [9] Y seigh yow atten eynde, *Ar.* [10] To ryght, ich *Ar.* [11] Y founded *Ar.* [12] Thousend *Ar. cum* Galfrido Mon. [13] A rayd in good a tire, dedes of armes to do With the folk *Ar.* [14] Hii *Ar.* [15] The tyme *Ar.* [16] These *Ar.* [17] Hure shipes redy mad, this dede for to do *Ar.*

Ac

Ac heo ne myȝte [1] so raþe come, þat þe kynges twei
Nere y come out Yrlond, [2] wyt gret power bey
Of Scottes and of Picars, of Denemarch, [3] of Norwei,
þat euer [4] habbeþ þis lond y hated, bote it were for eye.
Fer bi Norþ [5] bi gonne, and hider faste drowe,
And caste a doun [6] þis stronge wal, & townes grete y nowe.
þe Britones, þat myȝte of scapie, by gonne faste to fle,
Some in roches, some in wodes, þat [7] rewþe yt was to se.

COSTANTYN [8] myd ys power, among al þis wrechedom,
At þe hauene of Tottenais [9] stilleliche o lond com.
Glad were þo þe Britones, & joyful & proute.
Heo comen out of þe wodes sone, and of þe roches aboute.
So þat Costantyn hadde sone [10] power y now,
And toward þis luþer men Norþward sone drow.
[11] He cudde þat [12] heo were men, & slowe [13] to gronde,
þe prude [14] of Scottes & Picars abouten in a stonde.
For heo flowe þat myȝte fle, and some fel to gronde.
Heo myȝte [15] segge, wen heo come home, þat heo hadde here pere ẏ fonde.
To Yrlond heo flowe aȝeyn, & elles wyder heo myȝte.
Heo ne þouȝte not a god while with þe Brytones to fyȝte.

---

[1] So sone come, that the luther kynges tweye *Ar.* [2] With *Ar.* [3] And of *Ar.* [4] Haueth hated this lond, but *Ar.* [5] Bigonne (*simplici voce*) in *Ar.* [6] Pict Wall *Ar.* [7] Deol *pro* rewþe *in Ar.* [8] And his power in al this *Ar.* [9] Stille a lond *Ar.* [10] Gret power y nough, *Ar.* [11] Hii *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.* [13] Faste to *Ar.* [14] Of this luther men hii batide in a stounde *Ar.* [15] Truly seigh tho, hure peer hii hadde y founde *Ar.*

þe

þe Brytones nome þo Costantyn, & glade þore all þyng
In þe town of [1] Cicestre crowned hym [2] to here" kyng.
[3] þis was so wel y wist in pes, with oute strif,
þat þer ne come ne Scottes þider, ne [4] Pycars al ys lyf.
þre [5] sones he hadde al so, Costantyn was on,
And Aurely and Uter, gode children echon.
Costanteyn, ys eldeste sone, in Gode's seruise
Monk he made at Wynchestre, & dude as þe wyse.
God mon he was y now, and gode lawes forþ caste,
And god pais [6] wes al ys lyf, [7] & to lute wyle þat laste.
For þer com a [8] Pycard, þat ys maners wel [9] wiste,
And þat he louede wel y now, & muche to hym truste.
He ladde hym into an [10] orchard, [11] as yt gret ned were
To speke wyþ hym priueliche, þat noman ywar nere.
Ac þo heo were al bi hem selue, & no mon hem aeyȝ,
He drow ys knyf, & slow þe kyng, þat no man [12] yt y seyȝ.
He was [13] sone forþ y went, er any mon were war.
And þo me hadde al y sought, þe kyng lay ded þar.

---

[1] *Rectius* Silchestre *cum* Galfr. Mon. *At* Cirecestria *in* Aluredo Beverlacensi, *quem defloravit* Galfridus. [2] *Desunt Ar.* [3] The lond was tho wel y kept in pais *Ar.* [4] Picardes *Ar.* [5] Sones hadde this Constantyn, Constans [Constans *quoque in* Aluredo Bev. & Galfr. Mon.] het that on, Aurelie Ambrose the other, the thridde Uter Pendragon. Constans his eldeste *Ar.* [6] Was in his tyme, while his lyf y laste *Ar.* [7] F. ac. [8] Picte *Ar.* [9] Wuste, *Ar.* [10] *Postremo, cum x. anni præterissent, venit quidam Pictus, qui in obsequium suum fuerat, & quasi secretum colloquium habiturus, in virgulto quodam semotis cunctis eum cultro interfecit* Galfridus Mon. [11] For counsail as hit were And to speke *Ar.* [12] Hit ne seigh *Ar.* [13] Anon *Ar.*

þo

þo was þis lond kyngles, wat halt yt to telle longe?
Gret word was among þat folk, ho myȝte þe crowne fonge.
For þe eldoste some monk was, & [1] þe twei ȝonge were,
And to nyme [2] ferrore of ys kynde no ryȝt nere.

VORTIGER, [3] þe quoynte swike, þat was erl of [4] Cornewail,
Forto do [5] a swykedom no conseil schulde hym fail.
To þe sone þat was monk to Wynchestre he wende y wis.
" Lo," (he seide) " now þou [6] syst, þat þi fader ded ys,
" And þi breþeren to ȝonge beþ to a fonge þe crowne,
" And þei þou be in oþer cloþes, þi ryȝte [7] nys not þer downe,
" Wel [8] me [9] wot eldest þou art, & myd best ryȝt kyng al so,
" ȝef þou wolt [10] wol be my frend, & bi my red al do,
" Ich wole brynge [11] þat folk in wille, to crowne þe to kyng.
" And þei þin ordre be þer aȝeyn, þer to ich wole it brynge.
" þo monk was joyful y now, þo he hurde þis,
" And bi het hym, ȝef it were so, euer more to be al hys.
Out of ys abyt anon Vortiger hym drow,
And cloþes, [12] as to kyng bi come, dude on him faire ynowȝ.

[1] The othur two *Ar.* [2] Forther of his kyn no ryght men thoughte hit nere *Ar.* [3] The luther swike, *Ar.* [4] " *Cronica Latina vocat eum* " *ducem Gewiseorum*" *Ar. in margine. Et quidem* Consul Gewissorum *in* Aluredo Bev. *At in* Galfr. Mon. " *consul* " *Gewiseorum. i. Orientalium* " *Anglorum* [5] A swykeldom he caste hym sanz faille. To the monek at Wynchestre sone he wende y wys *Ar.* [6] Sukst *Ar.* [7] Is nought ther *Ar.* [8] Thugh wost *Ar.* [9] *Nec alium video in progenie tua, quem populus in regem promoveret* Galfr. Mon. [10] Wel *Ar.* [11] The people in wille, *Ar.* [12] As a kyng *Ar.*

And

And bi fore al þe Parlement to London he gan hym brynge,
And seide he was purest eyr, to be crowned [1] to" kynge.
No mon ne myȝt wel it wyþ segge. [2] me may ryȝt y se,
Wan he was þer, & was pur eyr, þei he hadde [3] monk.
[4] Up hym self þe perel were, bote yt myȝte wel do.
þo hey men þoru Vortiger [5] a fong hym alle þer to.
þe erchbischop of London [6] Gocelyn was þo ded,
And non oþer [7] nolde hym crowne, for al þat þe erl bed.
For he hadde so longe in ordre be, & so was out y brozt.
For al þat [8] Vortiger nolde bi leue yt nozt,
Ac hym self hym crownede, & made hym kyng so.
þe sacryng was lute worþ, and naþeles yt was y do.
þo he was kyng ymad, ys hest he made a non,
þat clanliche to Vortiger ys men [9] abuyde echon.
[10] For" hymself he [11] nolde þenche nozt, bute take hym al on
honde.
For he cowþe wel bet þan he gouerne such a londe.
þo bi þouȝte Vortiger mest þoru alle þyng,
How he myȝte do quoynteliche, þat he hym selue were kyng.
For that [12] euer ys þozt, and þer fore þe monk he nom
To [13] kyng be. for he was nyce and kowþe no wisdom,

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Me may the ryght y se, That he ne is verrei heir, *Ar.* [3] *Adde* y be *cum Ar.* [4] Upon hym self a peril hit were, but he hit wolde do. The heigh *Ar.* [5] Assentede alle ther to *Ar.* [6] Gwythelyn *Ar.* [7] Hym crouny wolde theigh Vortiger hem bed *Ar.* [8] Yut Vortiger wolde by leue nought, that hym self ne croune hym, and made hym kyng ryght tho, And were hit ryght othur wough, yut hit was y do *Ar.* [9] Aboughwed *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Wolde thenke on nought, *Ar.* [12] Euere was his thought, *Ar.* [13] Be kyng. for *Ar.*

And

And ys twei brepren were brozt out of cradel vnnepe.
And pe heye men mest of pe lond were y brozt to depe
Myd batailes & myd oper wo, per fore he was so prowt,
[1] And pe kyng [2] nas bute a schade, & let hym worpe al out.
To pe kyng he seide, pat he moste ys castles astore,
penne wolde ys fon aboute [3] doute hym pe more.
And for pe [4] Picars were ys fon, some he wolde take
To be pryue with pe kyng, for pilke schulde make
Here felawes, pat were leued at home, to loue pat lond pe bet.
Ac [5] napeles per fore [6] nas yt nozt po yt wes al bi set,
Ac for pei louede not pe kyng, & in trayson were quoynte,
[7] pat heo schulde pe kyng sle, wen heo come [8] vp pe poynte.
pe kyng grantede al ys wil, and for ys gode [9] wende.
Aftur an hundred [10] Picars into Scotlond he sende
By certeyn messageres, so pat heo gonne brynge
[11] An hundred knyztes of Picars, pat bi leuede mid oure kynge,
Of mest priue men, poru pis luper Vortiger.
And pe kynge's tresour he delde eke a boute fer & ner,

[1] The kyng hym self was but a shade, & let him al one al out. And to the kyng *Ar.* [2] *Totum namq; dispositionie jus regnum commissum fuerat, & Constans rex dicebatur, qui nisi pro umbra principis astabat* Galfr. Mon. [3] Douty *Ar.* [4] Pictes *Ar.* [5] *Ecce occulta occulti amici proditio. Non enim id laudabat, ut salus inde proveniret Constantis, sed quia sciebat, Pictos gentem esse instabilem, & ad omne scelus paratam* Galfr. Mon. [6] Was hit nouht what hit was al by set, *Ar.* [7] And that *Ar.* [8] To the *Ar.* [9] He wende *Ar.* [10] Pictes to *Ar.* [11] An hundred Pictes soudeours to by leue with oure kynge, And to be most preue with hym thurgh this Vortiger. Of the kynge's tresour he delt fer and ner, Ac most to the Pictes *Ar.*

And mest to þe Picars, for to hem mest loue he drow.
Myd alle þat he wolde hym self he made hym bi loued ynow.
Alle [1] þat seruede þe kyng, þoru hym [2] were echone,
[3] So þat ech mon was a boute for to paye hym one,
And [4] songe al day bi þe strete [5] al for hys honour,
" Worþi were Vortiger [6] to kyng oþer emperour.
þo þis Vortiger hadde [7] þat folk al [8] in ys hond,
He seyde, he moste wende awyle out of þis lond,
To purchace more tresour þe kyng for to spene,
For he nadde noȝt y nowȝ, ys knyȝtes to sustene.
And [9] atte Picars nom ys leue, and at oþer þere,
And wende hom [10] to [11] hys fir, sori as he were.
þer was sorwe and deol ynow among al þe mayne,
For he schulde from hem [12] wend, (for þer was no kyng bote he)
And nameliche among Picars, þat were of so luþer þouȝt,
þat he hadde do such honour, & þat ne louede þe kyng noȝt.
" Wat," heo seyden, " wat is [13] vs to lete þis badde kyng
" Go þus o liue as a [14] schade, þat nys worþ noþing?

---

[1] The seruantes of the kyng *Ar.* [2] Were made echone *Ar.* [3] *Ita ut eum pro rege haberent. Adulantes igitur ei per plateas psallebant,* " *di-* " *gnus est Vortigernus impe-* " *rio, dignus est sceptro Bri-* " *tanniæ, Constans vero indig-* " *nus* Galfr. Mon. [4] Synge *Ar.* [5] As for *Ar.* [6] To be kyng or emperour *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] On *Ar.* [9] Of the Pictes tok his leue, and of othur there, *Ar.* [10] *Ad hospitium suum* Galfr. Mon. [11] His contre in sorwe as hit were *Ar.* [12] Wende, (that was so large and fre) And among the Pictes most, that were of luther thought, That he hadde do so muchel honour, and louede the kyng nouht *Ar.* [13] This *pro* vs *in Ar.* [14] Shadewe, *Ar.*

War-

Warto tarie we so longe, to quelle hym atten ende
þat Vortiger [1] were kyng, þat a ȝen vs ys so hende?
In gret [2] wayþe & hastinesse to þe kynge's chaumber heo wende,
And smyten of hys hed, and to Vortiger yt sende.
Vortiger made deol y now, [3] and sori was þer fore:
Ac naþeles so glad he nas seþþe he was y bore.
For [4] y compaced he hadde þat atte bi gynnyng,
First [5] wen he broȝte on so nyce a mon to kyng.
And seþþe þo he lette ys fon & [6] Picars to court brynge,
þat hatede muche þe kyng, [7] & al was for þis þinge.
And þo he was so large & hende of hys ȝiftes al so.
[8] þo hadde he al ys wille, for when yt was al ydo,
[9] And" to suc ende yt was y come, [10] as he hadde y compaced in ys þoȝt.
And naþeles he feynede hym, þat me vnder ȝet yt noȝt.
At London þis kyng was y slaw. he let þo nyme anon
[11] þe Picars, & þorn jugement let smyt of þe hedes echon.
þer he kudde [12] wat he was, vn kynde schrewe & quoynte.
[13] Ac al he dude, þat me ne vnder ȝet in swykdom in no poynte.

Decollatio Pictorum.

[1] Myght be kyng, that to us is so heynde? *Ar.* [2] Wrath *Ar.* [3] And wep fol sore ther fore *Ar.* [4] He hit hadde by compaced atte *Ar.* [5] Tho he made the monek, þat nyce was, to kynge *Ar.* [6] Pictes *Ar.* [7] And muche was for these thynge. And that he was *Ar.* [8] Tho he hadde al his wille, when this was *Ar.* [9] *Omittit Ar.* [10] As he cast in his thought. And euere he made hit so queynte, that me wiste hit nought *Ar.* [11] Alle the Pictes thurgh juggement, and hefdede hem echon *Ar.* [12] That he *Ar.* [13] And al was, that me ne sholde aspie his falshede in no poynte. Ac natheles some hit vnderyede, & ne leuede *Ar.*

And naþeles men yt trowede, and leuede not ys glese.
þe kynge's [1] breþren, Aurele and Ambrose,
Dradde, for here eritage, ymorþred for to be.
And [2] heo, that hem hadde [3] to ward, þer fore gonne by se,
And to þe lasse Breteyne wende to þe kyng,
And he [4] susteynede hem wel, for drede of þis þinge.
þo Vortiger al one was, and no pere [5] nad a londe.
Sone he lette hym [6] crowne kyng, & þe power nom on honde.
Princes ouer al aboute of [7] eche kyndom
Speke hym vnel, & hatede hym for hys [8] swikedom.
þe [9] Picars were wroþ eke, and [10] þratten hym ynow,
[11] For he myd such vnkyn dede heore felawes slow.
From þe lasse Bretayne eke hym com word ylome,
þat [12] þo twei children gret power to hem nome,
And [13] þat hit stronge childre were of here age,
And þat þei wolde hyder come, to wynne here heritage.
Such strong tyþinges in sorwe and in sore
Brogt þis false kyng, and er þe longer þe more.

---

[1] Yonge bretheren, Uter and Aurelie Ambrose, *Ar. rectius.* [2] Hii, *Ar.* [3] In warde, ther fore hem gonne by se. To the lasse Brutayne hii wende to Budic the kyng, *Ar.* [4] Hem let wardy wel, *Ar.* [5] Hadde in londe, *Ar.* [6] Crouny *Ar.* [7] Euery *Ar.* [8] Swikeldom *Ar.* [9] Pictes *Ar.* [10] Hatede *Ar.* [11] That he with so vile deth hure felawes he slough *Ar.* [12] The two *Ar.* [13] That hii stale-worthe were, as of hure age, *Ar.*

[1] Hors

[1]HORS and Hengist bothe, þat twei breþre were,
Come to Kent þilke tyme, and a riuede þere,
Myd þre schip ful of [2] knyȝtes y armed wel ynow.
[3] þo þis folk was on lond, forþ into Kent hit drow.
þo kyng was þo at Canterbury, and herde her of anon:
Bi fore hym he lette brynge [4] þis knyȝtes" echon.
[5] þo kyng bi huld hem faste ynow, (for it muchel men were)
And nameliche þe twei breþren, ([6]for so muchel non þer nere.)
He [7] ascode hem, of wanne þei, and ho" hem þider broȝte,
And for wat encheson heo come, & wat þing þei soȝte?
" Sire kyng," (quoþ Hengist, þat for al oþer spek y wys) Hengistus.
" [8] Of Saxonie we beþ y bore, [9] þat of Germanie ys.
" þe maner ỳs of þilke lond, þat wen þer ys forþ ybroȝt
" So muche folk [10] of men," þat [11] þo lond may [12] susteyne
noȝt.
" [13] þo" heye men of [14] þo lond schulle com bi fore þe kyng,
" And [15] alle þo ȝonge men of þe lond lete bi fore hym brynge.
" þe strengeste me schal bi choys and bi lot al so
" Chese out, and sende in to oþer lond," here beste forto do.

[1] Horn *Ar.* [2] Men *pro* knygtes *in Ar. At* militibus *in* Galfr. Mon. [3] The tydỳnges hough they come, were in contreie a brod drough. The kyng *Ar.* [4] These men *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] *Nam ipsi præ ceteris & nobilitate & decore præmitebant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Axede hem, whans hii were, & ho *Ar.* [8] *Saxonia tellus edidit nos, una ex regionibus Germaniæ* Galfr. Mon. [9] Of Germanye that is *Ar.* [10] *Desunt Ar.* [11] The *Ar.* [12] Hem susteyne *Ar.* [13] *Deest Ar.* [14] The *Ar.* [15] Alle the yonge bachelrie me shal to fore hym bryng. The stalewortheste me shal by loth and by chois also Chese, & seude hem out of londe, *Ar.*

" And

" And [1] heo schulle be such, þat no prince [2] dorre hem for sake,
" [3] Ac for heore prowesse gladliche in to here seruise take.
" þis cas ys to vs y come, y chose we beþ þer to,
" [4] For so muche ys in the lond, oure beste forto do.
" And forto be maistres of þis folk we beþ y chose & ynome
" Mi broþer & ich, (for wo beþ of dukes kyn y come.)
" For þoru our Godes in to þe se we wende ich vnderstonde,
Mercurius. " And Mercurius haþ vs y lad into [5] þi londe.
þo þe kyng herde nempne Mercurius in þis cas,
He askede, wat God and wat þing Mercurius was?
" Oure bi leue (quoþ [6] þis oþer) in þe hye [7] Godes ys y do,
" Saturnus and Jupiter, and al þe oþer al so,
" þat vp holdeþ þe world, & in Mercurius mest y wys,
" [8] þe heye God," þat in oure tonge Woden y clepud ys.
" [9] þer ner vrel dore him bi toke of þe woke þe ferþe day,
" In honour of hym y clepud in oure tonge Wednesday.
Venus. " Aftur hym we honoureþ Venus mest, þat Frie y clepud ys
" In oure tonge, & in þe wyke Friday for hym y wys.
" Her of ȝe schul vnderstonde, þat in þe firmament beþ
" Planetes, y liche cler sterres, scuenc, as ȝe seþ:
" Saturnus and Jubiter, Mars and þe Sonne y wys,
" Venus and Mercurius, and þe Mone lowest ys.

---

[1] Hii shulleth *Ar.* [2] Ne der *Ar.* [3] But *Ar.* [4] And for ther was to muche folk, oure beste we mote do. And to be *Ar.* [5] This *Ar.* [6] That *Ar.* [7] God *Ar.* [8] *Omittit* Galfridus Mon. [9] *Lege*, þer ner vr eldore, *i. e.* therefore our elders &c. *Nam in* Galfr. Mon. " *huic veteres nostri* " *dicaverunt quartam feriam* " *septimanæ, quæ usque in* " *hodiernum diem nomen* " Wodnesdei *de nomine ipsius* " *sortita est.*

" Aftur

" Aftur ech of hem in þe wike y clepud ys a day:
" First [1] os Sonne, & so of oþere and þe seneþe Saturday.
" And for weder, & oþer [2] þing on erþe, aftur hem muche is,
" [3] þis mys bi leuede men hem clepede Godes while y wis.
" Sori ich am" (quoþ Vortiger) " þo he herde þis.
" For zoure bi leue, þat [4] ze segget, for no bileue yt nys.
Ac for zoure coming ich am glad, ho so ow hider ladde,
[5] Were yt God, were yt oþer, for nede ich hadde.
For ich am myd my fon [6] on ech half by set,
And zef ich hem may ouer come þoru zou þe bet,
[7] Ich zou myd me at holde, & in grete richesse zou do
Of zyftes, and of chatews, and of londes al so.
Heo [8] maden certeyne couenaunt þat heo were al at on;
So þat þei bi leuede forþ with [9] þe kyng echon.
Hit was not longe [10] þer aftur þat þis Picars ne come
Out of Scotlond Souþward, and townes faste nome. Bellum.
[11] þe tyþing her of to oure kyng com,
þe wey mid al ys power azen hem faste he nom.

---

[1] Of the Sonne, & so forth the senethe *Ar.* [2] Thynges *Ar.* [3] These mysbyleuede *Ar.* [4] Ye bileueth, no bileue is. But of youre come ich *Ar.* [5] Were hit God, or eny othur, for al nede ych hadde *Ar.* [6] In euery half *Ar.* [7] Ich yough wole with me witholde, & gret honour yut do, And ȝiftes yiue ynough of londes, & othur catelles also. Hii made a certayn couenant, so that hii were at on; *Ar.* [8] *Paruerunt illico barbari, & fœdere confirmato in curia ipsius remanserunt. Nec mora emergentes ex Albania Picti, exercitum valde grandem mittunt, aquilonaresque partes insulæ vastare cœperunt* Galfr. Mon. [9] Our *pro* þe *in Ar.* [10] Afterward that the Pictes ne come *Ar.* [11] Tho the tydyng of this thyng to Vortiger come, *Ar.*

Strong bataile heo smyte þer, ac þe Saxones anon
So god were, þat þe oþere bi gonne to fle echone.
þo Vortiger þoru hem hadde þe maistrie,
He ȝef hem ȝiftes grete ynow, and dude ys corteyse.
Hengist, þat here maistre was, he ȝaf in Lyndeseie
Londes faire, and rentes and [1] townes grete and heye,[a]
[2] War þoru hym & ys men [3] in fair wareson he broȝte.
[4] þo Hengist hadde þis, forþer more he þoȝte.
þo he hadde þe kyng in priuete al clene at ys wille,
Peticio Hengisti. " Sire," he seide, " of derne [5] cas ich wol þe warne stille.
" þine fon beþ in ech half, & þis ys þe meste doute,
" þat þin owne men ne loueþ þe noȝt, þat þe beth aboute.
" Heo þretneþ þe stille, & seggeþ heo wolleþ [6] þe" brynge.
" þe twei breþre from Bretcyne, & [7] crowne þat on kynge:
" [8] þer fore ich [9] rede, þat me sende into my contrei ywys
" To [10] Saxoine aftur more help, for help y now þer ys.
For [11] habbe þou power ynow, þou myȝt be glad & bliþe.
Ac oþing ich [12] wolde bidde þe, þat þou me woldest tyþe.

[1] Tounes, & gret nobleye *Ar.* [2] *Quibus sese & commilitones suos sustenturet* Galfr. Mon. [3] In to rychesse *Ar.* [4] And yut tho he hadde al this, forthermore he thoughte *Ar.* [5] Thyng *pro* cas *in Ar.* [6] *Oculam hanc erasit in Ar. eadem, ut videtur, manus quæ & scripsit.* [7] Crouny on to kynge *Ar.* [8] *Si placet tibi, mittamus in patriam nostram, & invitemus milites ex ea, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [9] The rede, that we sende to my *Ar.* [10] *Sic in Cod. Harleyano. At* Saxonie *in Ar.* [11] If thugh hast power y nough, thugh maist be *Ar.* [12] Wole bidde the, & thugh wolt me lithe. Bidde what thugh wolt, quath the kyng, ich wole the graunte ywis, Elles forsothe ich were to blame, ẏf hit to grauuty is. And fetthe [*l.* fetche] help al that thugh maist, that be of good araye, And ich wole hure while yelde, and hure huyre paye

" Send [1] aftur help," quoþ þe kyng, " þat þou me nozt bi traie,
" And wole heore while zelde, so þat scholle holde hem wel paie.
" And bidde of me wat þou wolt, & ich wol þe grante ywis,
" For elles ich were vnkynde, zef it to grante ys.
Hengist faire hym þonkede, and hys hed lowtede a doun.
" þou hast," he seide, " zeue me mony a fayr town.
" And naþeles such þing [2] nabbe y nozt, as it to duk bi come.
" For wan ich am [3] duke's sone, yt bi comeþ to me"
" For to [4] habbe som [5] gret" cite or castel me to [6] ware,
" [7] War inne y myzte to þyn nede habbe my folk zare.
þer fore," as ich am þi knyzt, & [8] prest to þi nede al so,
Grante me [9] castel oþer cite þi nede in to do.
" Hengist," quoþ þe [10] kyng þo, " ner me not to done
" Such þyng, as þou me biddest to graunte þe, so sone.
" For þou art mon off strange lond, & Cristene mon non.
" And eke, þei ich wolde, my barones wolde yt with segge echon.
" Sire, grante me þonne," quoþ Hengist, " zef yt ys þi wille,
" [11] As muche place, as myd a þong ich may a boute tille,

---

paye. Hengis faire hym thonked tho, and his heed bowed a doun *Ar.*

[1] *Ad hæc Vortigernus, " Mitte ergo legatos tuos ad Germaniam, & invita quos volueris, & pete à me quod desideras, & nullam repulsam patieris* Galfr Mon. [2] Haue ich nought, as a duk *Ar.* [3] A duke's sone, me thinketh hit were to done *Ar.* [4] Haue *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] Where, *Ar.* [7] And, yf that ich nede hadde, kepe me fro dere. Ther fore, *Ar.* [8] Redy to the also, *Ar.* [9] Cite or castel my nede inne to do *Ar.* [10] Kyng, hit were me nought to done *Ar.* [11] As much as with a bole huyde ich may ouer tille, *Ar.*

" [1] þat

" [1] þat ich þer [2] vppe mowe a siker bold" a rere,
" þat ich [3] mowe in þi seruise wytie, ȝef yt nede were.
þe kyng ne hulde þat bute a [4] lutel, he grantede hys bone.
Hengist sende in to hys contre after more power sone.
þongca- þo carf he a bole hyde smale al [5] to a þong
ster. þoru out, wil he wolde laste, & þo was he somdel long.
In an hard [6] roche stude ys þong aboute he drow,
And þer wyþ inne al to ys wille markede place ynow,
And rerde þer an castel god y now and strong,
[7] þat þangcaster, oþer Tangcaster, yclepud was for þe þong.
þer come out of Germanie vnder þat, ych wene,
Y charged mid gode knyȝtes, schippes eiȝtetene.
And Rowen, Hengiste's doȝter, among hem y broȝt was,
þat fairor wommon nower a boute in no lond nas.
þo þis castel [8] ȝare was, Hengist þe king bi soȝte
[9] To come to hys castol, & se þe knyȝtes þat he broȝte.
þo kyng com þider priueliche, & [10] þis knyȝtes y sey,
And þis castel, [11] so" sone a rerd. so [12] strong and so hey.

---

[1] *Quo me, si opus fuerit, recipiam* Galfr. Mon. [2] Vppon maý a siker place *Ar.* [3] Myghte in thyne seruise me wytie and nede were; *Ar.* [4] Lite, & grauntede al his bone *Ar.* [5] To one thonge Thurgh out, while hit wolde y laste, and that was somdel longe *Ar.* [6] Roche's stode *Ar.* Saxorum locum *habet* Galfr. Mon. [7] And Thwong castel, or Tancastel, cleped is for the thwong. Thenne come ther out of Germanye vnder that, ich wene, Charged with orpede men, shipes eightetene *Ar.* [8] A redy was *Ar.* [9] To come and se his castel, and men he hadde y broughte. The kyng *Ar.* [10] These *Ar.* [11] *Deest Ar.* [12] Noble *pro* strong *in Ar.*

[8] Mid

[1] Mid al [2] he was wel a payed and bi leuede atte mete.
þis mayde out of chambre com, þo [3] þei hadden y ȝete,
With a coppe of gold, fol of wyn, syde drow hire tail
[4] A kne to þe kyng heo seyde, [5] " lord kyng wasseyl. Wasseyl.

[1] With al *Ar.* [2] *Ut vero regiis epulis refectus fuit, egressa est puella de thalamo, aureum ciphum, plenum vino, ferens. Accedens deinde propius, flexis genibus dixit,* louerd ching woschail Galfr. Mon. [3] Hii hadde y yete *Ar.* [4] A kne sheo sette hure byfore the kyng, & seide, " sire wassail *Ar.* [5] *Vide Seldeni Notas in Draytoni Poly-olbion, pag.* 153. *ubi locum quendam è Roberto nostro (alio tamen usus MS.) adduxit, innuitq;* Louerd kyng was-heil *idem esse quod* Lord kyng a health; Drinc-heile *vero idem quod* Drinke the health. *Verum his de rebus scripserunt plures, in quibus & ipse numerandus est Somnerus. Atqui tot auctorum verba non est cur exscribam. Sat est si ea tantummodo in medium proferam, quæ observavit in Itinerario Cantiano (p.* 20.) *doctissimus Lambardus. idque ea potissimum de caussa, quod & illum hac occasione plane consulendum esse monuerit eruditissimus Spelmannus in Glossario.* [*Hengist*] espying therefore, that king *Vortiger* was much delighted in womens companie, and knowing wel, that *sine Cerere & Libero, friget Venus,* he bad him to a solempne banquet, and after that he had (according to the maner of *Germanie* yet continuing) well plied him with pots, hee let slip before him a faire gentlewoman, his owne daughter, called *Roxena,* or *Rowen,* which being instructed before hande how to behaue hir selfe, most amiablie presented him with a goblet of wine, saying in hir own language, þæȝ Hæıle Hlaȝoȝð cẏnẏnȝ ⁊ wessail Lorde king, that is to say, bee merie Lord king: with which hir daliance, the King was so delighted, that he not onely vouchsafed to pledge hir, but desired also to performe it in the right maner of hir owne countrey. And therefore he answered (as he was taught) vnto hir againe, ðȝınc Hæıle ⁊ drinke merily. Which when shee had done, himselfe tooke the cup, and pledged hir so hartely, that fromthencefoorth hee could

The first wasseling cup.

þe kyng bi huld hire [1] swiþe ynow, & wondrede hire [2] fair hede.
[3] For so fair wommon nuste he non. He askede wat heo seide!
Men, þat knew þe langage, seide, wat was wassayl,
And þat he scholde þat broȝte onswere, "drynkhayl.
"Drinkhayl, quoþ þis kyng aȝen, & bed hire drinke anon.
þe coupe [4] he nom seþþe of hire among hem echon,
And custe hire, & sette hire a doun, & glad dronk hire hail.
And þat was lo! in þis lond þe firste vassayl,
As in langage of Saxonie, þat me myȝte euer y wyte,
And so [5] wel he paiþ þat folk aboute, þat he nys not ȝet for gete.
No sire, ne be þe day so [6] long, þe while heo sitteþ o benche,
And som of þe nyȝt nimeþ þer to, þe drynke forto sthenche.

The issue of an ungodly marriage.

could neuer be in rest, vntill he had obtained hir to wife, little weighing, either how deepely he had endaungered his conscience in matching himselfe with a heathen woman, or how greatly he had hazarded his *Croune* by joyning handes with so mightie a forein Nation.

[1] Faste ynough *Ar.* [2] Fairhede *Ar. unica voce. Nec tamen idem quod* forehead *esse judicarim. Non aliud enim plane est quam* facies pulchra. *id quod è* GalfridoMonumetensi *constat, qui sic ait*: At ille, visa facie puellæ, admiratus est tantum ejus decorem, & incaluit. And of men of hure langage couthe he axede what sheo sede? A non men tolde the kyng fore what was to seye wassail, And that he sholde to hure that tyme answere ther to drynk hail. Drynk hail, seide the kyng a ye, *Ar.* [4] He toke of hure anon, and a mong echon Kussed hure & a doun hure sette, & gladly dronk hure hail. And thus was here in this londe furst y knowe wassail *Ar.* [5] Wel yut hit paieth the folk, that hit is nought for yite *Ar.* [6] Long, and sitteth murye a benche, And of the nyght yut nymeth ther to, drynke ther by to shenche, On an holy rechoure's word hii wol nought

Of an holi prechoure's word heo nolde not so ofte þenche,
As of the muri word, þat hem þinkeþ of þe sely wenche.
So foul lechour was þe kyng, that anon" in þe howse
He willede, for foul lecheri, þis mayde [1] forte spouse.
Hengist wiste wel ys wille, [2] & þat he wes hastyf.
He grantede [3] in hys felonye ys dozter to be ys wyf,
For wat þe kyng zeue hym þe" contre of Kent y wis.
þe kyng in ys foule wille grantede al þis,
And weddede þis mayde [4] in a wel luþer cas,
For þat he was Cristene, and heo a paynen was.
[5] þat lond wes vnel y paied þer wyþ, & ys þre sones also,
Vortimer, and [6] Catigen, and Passen þer to.
Four hundred zer and fourti and [7] nyene, ich vnderstonde,
Yt wes of grace, þat þe Saxones þus come to þis londe.
þo were among Cristenemen [8] þis paynes þus y menged,
þat mys bileue [9] into al þis lond a mong men was y sprenged.
Hengist seide to þe kyng, " Sire, þou myzte y se,
" þat ich am in stude of þi fader, & þi conseiler schal be.
" Do al aftur my conseil, and þou schalt þoru me
" Ouer come al þi fon, to soþe ich segge þe.

Consilius Hengisti.

nought so wel thenche, As hii doth of that mury word of that sely wenche. The kyng on hure gan madde so, that anon *Ar.*

[1] *Pro,* forto. [2] And knew his nycete, And grauntede al for felonye his doughtur his wif to be, By so the kyng hym wolde yiue the *Ar.* [3] *Sed omnibus unum consilium fuit, ut puella daretur regi, & ut peteret pro ea provinciam Cantiæ ab illo. Nec mora, data fuit puella regi Wortigerno, & provincia Cantiæ Hengisto, &c.* Galfridus Mon. [4] This was a sory cas *Ar.* [5] The people was *Ar.* [6] Katigern *Ar.* [7] *Sic plane in Cod. nostro Harleyano. At* fyue *in Ar.* [8] The hethene thus *Ar.* [9] In al *Ar.*

" Sende

Duo filii Hengesti.

" Sende we ȝet aftur my sones [1] Octe and Ebise,
" þat quaynte werroures heþ, and stalworþe and wyse.
" In þe Norþ half ȝef hem lond, wher þou wolt by se,
" þat heo mowe bi tuene þe and þe Scottes be.
" þenne þou [2] myȝt siker be by Souþ Homber ywys.
þe kyng he sende aftur hem, and grauntede al þis.
So þat mid þre hundred schipes heo ariuede here,
[3] Ful of armes and of men, here was gret power.
þe kyng wel [4] fayn ȝaf hem lond, as Hengist hym bi soȝte,
And Hengist euer mo and mo schippes hyder broȝte.
þo þe Brytones þis ẏ seye, of treson heo were in drede.
For þo lond was al mid hem y fuld, þer fore þe kyng [5] heo bede,
þat he schulde hym vnder stonde, & out of [6] lond hem do.
For yt ne bi com noȝt to payns among Cristen men be so.
For yt was Cristendam, & in mony studes me nuste
Wuch was on, ne wuch was oþer, ne to wam me myȝte truste.
Some faderes were Cristene, & þo moderes heþene were.
Me nuste to weþer heo bi come þe children þat heo bere,
þe kyng louede þe Saxones, for loue of ys wyue,
And nolde, for al þe Britones, out of [7] hys londe hem dryue.

---

[1] Octa & Ose, *Ar.* [2] Maist *Ar.* [3] Ful of trauaillyng men, this was gret power *Ar.* [4] Fawe *Ar.* [5] Hii *Ar.* [6] This londe *Ar.* [7] This *Ar.*

Seynt

SEYNT [1] Germayn þe bischop to þis londe com,
For misbileue þat tyme, & to amende Cristendom,
And prechede, as yt nede was, & faire miracles wrozte,
So þat þe Cristene men in beter stat he brozte.
And heo a forcede hom" þe more, þe heþene a wey to dryue.
[2] He nolde bileue here porpos for þe kyng, ne for ys wyue.
Heo for soke þe kyng al out, & binome [3] ys power,
And hys eldest sone made kyng, þat hatte Vortimer.
þis Vortimer with gret power and god ernest ynow,
þoru conseil of Seynt Germayn, azen [4] þis heþene drow.
[5] þo sene zer yt was aftur, þat heo to londe come,
þe kyng was, God i þonk, a boue in four batailes, þat heo nome.
Alle heo were in one zer. atte firste, withoute one,
Catigen, þe kynge's broþer, myd hys men echone,
Asailede Hors and hys ost, so þat heo fouzte faste, Bellum Hors.
So þat þis Catigen yslawe was atte laste.
þo kyng for ys broþer deþ sori was y now.
To þis Hors he smot anon, & among al ys folk hym slow.
þo þis strong mon was slawe, þat so strong was in fyzt,
Ys men bi gonne to fle [6] and" fayn þat heo mygt.

---

[1] Germayn bysshop of Auferne, as ich vnderstonde, And of Treueros seynt Lup, come to this londe, For mysbileue a mong men, and othur heresye, That me clepede Arriane and also Pelagye, And prechede the people, as nede was, and faire miracles wroughte, So that thurgh hem Cristendom to betere stat was broughte. And hii a forcede hem *Ar*. [2] And wold nought leue for the kyng, *Ar*. [3] Hym his *Ar*. [4] The *pro* þis *in Ar*. [5] The senethe yer ther after hit was, that hii *Ar*. [6] *Deest Ar*.

þe

þe þridde batail, þat heo smyte, was ryȝt [1] vp the se,
þer com þe kyng myd ys ost, and Hengist hym a ȝe.
þer was batail strong y now, and mest yt was vp tweye,
Up þe kyng and Hengist, þat were so stronge beye.
Fuga Hengisti. þo stronge dyntes, þat heo smyten, grisliche yt was to se.
So þat Hengist bi gan atte laste to fle.
He, þat neuer er ne fley, fond þer ys pere.
He fley in to þe yle of Tenet, he no dorste a bide no ner.
ȝet eft heo fouȝten in þe se, and by side þere;
Ac þe Britones at eche tyme þe maistrye a wey bere.
[2] þo Saxones heo seye, þat heo myȝte no leng at stonde,
To þe kyng þei sende, þat þei [3] most wende hom to here londe.
þo heo were alle henne y went, here was joye y now,
þe kyng ȝef ys men grete ȝiftes, & gret loue to hem drow,
And let arere chirches vp, þat þe schrewes a doun caste,
And bi gan to make a muri lond, ac to lute wyle yt laste.
þe Deuel hadde enuy þer to, þat he susteynede Cristendam,
And in ys [4] stepmoder herte ys woniyng he nom.
So þat [5] þo luþer wommon of poyson hire bi þouȝte,
And apoysnede þe godeman, and to [6] þe'' deþe hym broȝte.
[7] þis kyng, þo he sey þen deþ, ys knyȝtes he let of sende,
And schewede hem al þe wey wyder he schulde wende,
And ȝef hem gold and'' soluer, and ȝiftes riche and gode,
And [8] bad hem for þe loue of God, þat heo hem vnderstode,

---

[1] Upon *Ar.* [2] The Saxones sey, that they ne myghte a yenst the Brutones stonde, *Ar.* [3] Myghte *Ar.* [4] Stepmodere's herte sone his In he nom *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] The kyng, tho he sholde be ded, his knyghtes let of sende, And shewede hem of his stat, and of his lyf is ende, And yaf hem goold *Ar.* [8] *Audaces autem & bellicosas juvenes,*

And [1] stabliche holde to gedere, to saue þat lond,
þat neuer þe luþer payns yt hadde eft an hond.
[2] And ȝef he myȝte libbe lenger, he nolde drede noȝt.
And wan it alles so was, þat he was to deþe y broȝt,
He bed, wan he were ded, þat me schulde ys bodi nome,
And burie yt [3] þe hauene, wer þe payns come,
In a temple swiþe heye, þat heo myȝt yt fer yse,
þat heo, for drede of þe syȝte, myȝte sone fle.
[4] Hardi was is herte to hem, wen he wolde þat þei hadde
Drede of ys bodi ded, [5] wan heo o liue hym dradde.
þer was deol & sorwe y now, þo þis gode mon was ded.
Ac noþeles heo ne buriede hym noȝt, as he hym self bed.
For hem þoȝte yt nas bute a wille, ac, as hee hem by þoȝte:
In London myd honour þis bedi an erþe broȝte.

VORTIGER, þe luþer mon, þo hys sone ded was,
Underfong aȝeyn to hym þe kyndam, alas!
For sone, þoru ys wyue's red, aftur Hengist he sende,
þat he þider to hym with [6] simple folk wende.
For he dradde, ȝef he hadde to gret power an honde,
þat þer schulde a rise strif by twene hym and þe londe.

---

juvenes, qui ei in debellationibus suis astare solebant, hortabatur, ut pro patria pugnantes, eam ab hostium irruptione tueri niterentur Galfr. Mon.

[1] Stabelliche helde hem to hepe, forto sauy that lond, *Ar.*

[2] And if he langor myght haue leued, he wolde haue drad ryght nought. But whan hit ther to come were, he were to deth y brought, *Ar.*

[3] At an hauene, þer the hethene men vp come, In a tumbe swithe an heigh, þat me myghte hit fer y se, *Ar.*

[4] Hard *Ar.* [5] As they a lyue hadde *Ar.* [6] *Ut iterum in Britaniam rediret; attamen privatim & cum paucis* Galfr. Mon.

Reditus Hengisti.

þo Hengist herde telle, þat Vortimer was ded,
He gaderede power y now, and sone nom ys red.
And þre hundred þousond [1] men mid y armod he nom,
And mid al þe atyl þer to in to þis lond he com.
þo þe kyng & ys consel wiste of [2] ys grete companye,
Heo bi þouȝte & dradde sore, [3] þat it were for tricherie.
And naþeles he sende hem word a ȝen in ys felonye,
þat in gret loue hider he com, and no þoȝte no vilanye,
Bute for drede of Vortimer, [4] last he o liue were,
Such folk myd hym he brouȝte, for he hadde of hym fere.
Ac wen he nas o liue noȝt, he bad þe kyng be hende,
þat he myȝte myd ys folk [5] vp ys lond wende,
Bi fore hym and ys conseil, [6] a certeyn tyme and place,
[7] With any maner arme to fonde ys grace,
And þat [8] þo kyng of hys men at huld wuche he wolde,
And dryue aȝeyn ouer þe se þilke þat he nolde.
þe kyng was her wyþ wel ypayd, & sette hem þo day,
And al ys owe folk, þat heo come þe firste day of May
At Ambresburi, [9] for to of þis þing som ende,
To at holde wuche he wolde of hem, & þe oþer aȝen sende.
þo þis folk in eyþer syde y war was of þe day,
In a newe maner Hengist þouȝt þe kyng & ys [10] bi tray.

---

[1] Men yarmyd with hym he nom, And with al hure atyr to this londe he com. Whan the kyng *Ar.* [2] This comp. *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Lest he a lyue *Ar.* [5] Upon his *Ar.* [6] In certeyn *Ar.* [7] With oute eny manere armes to fondy of his grace *Ar.* [8] The *Ar.* [9] For to speke of this *Ar. rectius.* ***Et tamen Auctori magis commodum***, for to do (*i. e.* to make.) [10] To by traye *Ar.*

He

He hette al ys knyȝtes, þat myd hym þer were.
þat in ys hose stilleliche ych of hem a knyf bere,
And, wan heo to [1] þis semble among þis Britones come,
þat ech of hem an hey mon in conseil to hym nome,
And swyþe faire speke with hym, & wan he þanne seyde,
" Nymeþ ȝoure saxes," [2] þat he a non mid þe dede
Drow ys knyf, and slow a non al an on ywar,
þat heo mi̇ȝt of þe hexte men þat lond make bar.
þis word was wel vnderstonde, [3] so þat þo heo come
In eyþer syde to Ambrisbury, þo day þat heo nome,
And þe Brutones al simpliche in god pay, as heo vnderstode,
And Hengist spek with þe kyng, as yt were for gode,
And þo he say ys time wel, he gan to grede anon,
" Nymeþ ȝoure saxes," and ys men [4] þer with echon
Kypte heore longe knyues, and slowe faste to gronde,
So þat heo slow [5] four hundred & sixti in astonde
Of erles and of barons þe [6] hexte þat þer were.
Alas! þe deol to þis lond, [7] wuch treson was þere?
Now ne kouþe þe Britones non Englisch y wys,
Ac þe Saxones speche it was, & þorw hem y come yt ys.

Nymeþ owre sexes.

---

[1] The assemble among the Brutones *Ar.* [2] Thanne anon with that ilke rede, Ech drough his knyf, and slough his felawe an vnywar, *Ar.* [3] And to hure day they come To Ambresbury on althur side, as they the day nome. Sympleliche the Brutones come for pees they vnderstode, *Ar.* [4] Tho anon echon Kaughte out hure longe knyues, and slough ther with to grounde, *Ar.* [5] *Ita & Galfr. Mon. Sed* thre *Ar. cum* Aluredo *Bev.* [6] Heighest *Ar.* [7] Such *Ar.*

Hengist anon [1] mid þe word [2] þe kyng hente faste
Bi þe mantel, and anon to his fet hym [3] caste.
So þat þis gode men were y brozt myd treson to gronde,
Ac some, þat of scapede, mid stones, þat heo fonde,
And mid staues of hegges, defondede hem a bonte,
Pugna. And slow of þis luþer men mony on in þe route.

ELDOL, erl of Glouccstre, [4] þat a strong knyzt was,
Hente a strong leuour, þat hym a com at honde bi cas.
þo he say ys felawes ymorþred so viliche,
God ernest he nom to hym, and sturde hym harde liche.
He smot to gronde, & lyztliche he ne zef strok non,
þat he ne brak hed oþer arm, or som oþer bon.
He ne zef of hys lyf nozt, ys felawes for to awreke,
So þat he slow in þe place, er ys staf gonne breke,
Sixti mon and tene, and wondede mony on,
And zet he of scapede o liue for hem euer ech on
And þe luþer folk, þat slowe þus þat folk myd tricherie.
[5] þo kyng þei bonde faste [6] y now, þat rewliche he gan crie,
[7] And defoulede hym myd bendes, forto he swor ys oþ,
Alle here wille euer eft to do, ner hym ner so loþ.
þo wende forþ þis luþer folk, and nome [8] London,
And Euerwyk, and Lincolne, al [9] þoru þis treson.

[1] With that word the kyng to hym caughte *Ar.* [2] *Et illico Vortigernum accepit, & per pallium detinuit* Galfr. Mon. [3] Raughte *Ar.* [4] That staleworthe man was, Hente a tronchon on his hond that hym com by cas, *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.* [6] Anon *pro* y now *as Ar.* [7] And so they gonne fare with hym, forte he swor his oth, Al hure wille for to do, were hym neuere so loth *Ar.* [8] Town *adjicit Ar.* [9] With tresoun *Ar.*

And

And [1] seþþe" Wynchestre bi Souþe, & oþer [2] grete" townes mo,
And robbede euer as heo wende, & slow, & dude gret wo.
þese were [3] lo! our faderes, of wam we beþ of y come,
þat mid such traison habbeþ þis lond þus y nome.

VORTIGER, [4] oure feble kyng, þat lute was worþ þo,
As he it hadde of serued wel to lutel hadde of wo,
He flow in to Walis, þider he com sone,
He ascode of hys couselers wat was best to done?
Me radde hym, for ys casteles al hym bi nome were,
þat he in som siker stude a castel [5] bulde þere,
þat he myȝte sikerliche wyte hym from hys fon.
þe kyng [6] a god stude þer to let seche out a non,
[7] And bigan a strong castel of lym and off ston,
And of quoynte werkmen let hym brynge mony on.
[8] þo heo bi gonne þis castel," al þat heo made a day,
O morwe, wen þei come þer to, al clene þer downe it lay

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Omittit Ar.* [3] Oure olde fadres lo! of wham we buth y come, And with such trechourie this loud thus hii haueth ynome. Vortiger this luthur kyng, that litel worth was tho, As he hadde of serued wel, hadde muche wo, And was let go a lyue. To Walis he wende sone, And axede tho of his consaillers, what best hym was to done? *Ar.* [4] *Cum igitur tandem tantam cladem inspexisset Vortigernus, secessit in partes Cambriæ, incius quid contra nefandam gentem ageret. Vocatis denique magis suis, consuluit illos, jussitque dicere quid faceret? &c.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Sholde rere, *Ar.* [6] A good place ther fore let *Ar.* [7] And let bygynne a castel of strong lym and ston, *Ar.* [8] In Herefordshire vp the mont of Eirik [Eir *Galfr. Mon.*] ful high Was this castel by gonne, vpon the water of Wigh. Tho hii bygonne the castel *Ar.*

[1] No beter sped heo, nere þat werk ner so strong.
þe kyng ascode at enchanteres, war on yt was ylong?
[2] þe enchanteres seide, þat me a childe sozte,
þat were y gete with oute fader, & þat me yt þider brozte,
And slow yt, and mid þe blode bisprenge wel here ston
And here morter, & yt scholde stonde þenne anon.
[3] Hem þozte yt was euel y do, ac heo bi leuede yt nozt,
Invencio Merlini. þat in mony a contrey such a child nas y sozt.
So þat some [4] þe messingeres to Kermerdyn come,
And [5] how children bi fore þe zate pleyede he toke gome.
þo seide on to [6] an oþer, "Merlyn, wat ys þe,
"[7] þou faderles schrewe wy [8] misdostow me?
"For ich am of [9] kynges ycome, & þou nart not worþ a fille.
"For þou [10] naddest ner no fader, þer fore hold þe stille.
þo þe messageres herde þis, heo astynte þere,
And askede [11] at men aboute, wat þat child were?
[12] He ne bod neuer fader, heo seyde, þat me myzte vnderstonde,
And ys moder a kynge's dozter was of þilke londe,

---

[1] Euere more hit ferde thus, nere that werk so strong *Ar.* [2] The kynge's enchauntours seide hym tho, ther most a child be sought, That hadde neuere fader, and thuder hit moste be brought, And sle that child, and with the blood me sholde bysprenge the ston *Ar.* [3] This thoughte hem wonder for to do, & yut they left hit nought, *Ar.* [4] Of the *Ar.* [5] Of children in the strete that playde they toke gome *Ar.* [6] That other, "what "myschaunce is the, *Ar.* [7] *Quid mecum contendis fatue?* Galfr. Mon. [8] Mysdoist thugh me? *Ar.* [9] Good men *pro* kynges *in Ar.* [10] Haddest neuere fader, *Ar.* [11] Of the men *Ar.* [12] Men seyde, he hadde fader non, as hii couthe vnderstonde. His moder kynge's

And wonede at Seynt Petre's in a nonnery þere.
þo þe messageres herde þis, joyful y now þei were.
To þe baylys of þe toun hastiliche heo wende,
þat he þe moder and þe sone to þe kyng sende.
þo me wiste wat [2] heo were, me ne durste with segge it nozt,
So þat þe moder & þe sone to þe kyng were y brozt.
þe kyng [3] bad þe wommon segge soþ, [3] þat heo noþing lete,
þat he ne seide in soþnesse, ho þat child bi gete.
" My lord [4] kyng," quoþ þis oþer, " to þe soþe i segge it þe,
" þat neuer mon ney me [5] com, þat yt bi get on me.
" Ac of o þing ich wot, wan ich ofte was
" In chambre mid my felawes," þer com to me bi eas
" [6] And swyþe fair mon with alle, & bi clupte wel softe,
" And semblant made fair ynow, & custe me wel ofte.
" þenne wende he forþ, as in schade, y nuste how ny ware.
" þo he hadde y siwed me longe in þis fare,

---

kynge's doughter was of i. *Southwales*
Demecie londe, And duelleth and [*l.* at] Seynt Petre's church, as a nonne there *Ar. Adeo ut* hod, *sive* had, *pro* bod *reponerem.*

[1] They *Ar.* [2] Het *Ar.*
[3] For no thyng shold heo lete, That heo ne told openlich, who þat child was by yete *Ar. perinde ac si* who *idem quod* how *valeret. Illud tamen noto in margine (ab eadem autem manu) voculam* was *adjectam esse, hac nota (viz. ^) in textu posita.* [4] Kyng, seide heo tho, the sothe ych sey the, *Ar.* [5] Cam, þat hit by gat in me. And of on thyng ich wote, whan ich al one was In priue chaumbres with oute felawes, *Ar.* [6] *Folia octo in Ar. excisa esse deprehendo, in quo proinde de sequentibus, usque ad hanc notam ☞ (quam in margine apposuimus, utpote ad quam iterum occurrit Ar.) longe fusius quam in Codice Harleyano tractatum est.*

" Atte laste in forme of mon ofte he lay bi me,
" Ac oþer mon neuer non, to soþe y segge it þe.
þo þe kyng herde þis, gret wonder he þouȝte þere.
He asched at is clerkes, [1] were yt to leue were?
þe clerkes seide, þat yt is in philosophie y fonde,
þat þer beþ in þe eir an hey, fer fro þe gronde,
As a maner gostes, wyȝtes as it be,
And me may hem ofte on erþe in wylde studes y se,
And ofte in monne's fourme wymmen heo comeþ to,
And ofte in wymmen forme þei comeþ to men al so,
þat men clepuþ eluene, and perantre in þis maner
On of hem in þis wommon bi get þis child her.
þo Merlyn hadde al þis y herd, to þe kyng he sede:
" Sire kyng, wy dudest þou my moder & me bi fore þe lede?
" My enchantoures," quoþ þe kyng, " me habbeþ þer to yrad,
" þat a child, þat nadde no fader, bi fore me were y lad,
" And þat þe werk myd ys blod, þat we habbeþ on honde,
" Be sprenged þat falleþ adoun, & þenne yt schulde stonde.
" Lat þin enchantors," quoþ Merlyn, " sone bi fore me brynge,
" And ich wol preue bi fore þe, þat heo telleþ al lesynge.
þis enchantors were ybroȝt sone bi fore þe kyng.
" Wad segge ȝe," quoþ Merlyn, " of þis newe þinge?
" Radde ȝe, þat me by sprengede þat morter mid my [2] blod.
" Here me schal sone y se, þat ne konne no god.

---

[1] *I. e.* whether he might believe it? *Nam*, si id, quod mulier dixerat, fieri potuisset, *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Potest & interrogandi nota distingui, nisi quod plenam tane distinctionem in Codice eximio (utcunque ad finem manco)* Galfridi Monumethensis, *mihi donato ab amico illo eruditissimo Richardo Gravesio de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, reperiam. Sic enim ibi:*

Lauda-

" Seggeth me, ȝef þat ȝe konne, wat ys bi neþe þe gronde,
" þat makeþ þat þo fundement no stond none stonde.
þei ne kouþe onswere noȝt, as it ys y wryte.
" Lord kyng," quoþ Merlyn, " ȝef þou wolt þe soþe wyte,
" Lat delue vnder þe fundement, & þou schalt bi neþe fynde
" A water pol, þat haþ y mad, þat þis werk ys bi hynde.
Me dalf bi neþe, and fond þe water, as Merlyn hadde y seid.
" Wat segge ȝe maistres," quod Merlyn, " þat ȝeue þat cole red,
" To bi nyme blod & my lyf, was ys bi neþe now þere?
þe maistres sete stille y now, ryȝt as heo doumbe were.
" Doþ out þis water," quoþ Merlyn, " & wen it is a weye,
" ȝe schul bi neþe ȝet y fynde holwe stones tweye,
" And in eyþer a dragon þer inne slepe faste.
Me let sone out of þis pol þe water clene caste,
And fonde, as he hadde y seid. Men wondred ynow,
And þoȝte, þat ys monhede to Godhed drow
As þis Vortiger and þis folk token gome,
Twei grete dragones out of þis stones come,
þat on was red, þe oþer wyte. þo gonne to fyȝte faste — Pugna draconum.
Strong batail, and þe fuyr out of þe mouþ caste.
So þat þe white was aboue, as þe folk y seye,
And drof þe rede al abak out of þe put ney.
þe rede, as for sorinesse, by turnede hym atten ende,
And asailede þe wyte, & made hym abac wende.
As þis dragones foȝte þus, þe kynge hette Merlyn þere,
Forte segge, ȝef he couþe, wat þe tokonyng were.

Laudavistis, ut sanguis meus diffunderetur in cœmentum, & quasi illicò opus constaret. Set dicite michi quid sub fundamento latet?

Mer-

Prophecia Merlini. Merlyn gan to wepe þo, and bi gan ys prophecie :
" Awey !" he scide, "þe rede dragon ! for ys ende gynneþ to liye,
" And þe white dragon schal in to ys holes wende,
" þat bi tokeneþ þe Saxones, þat þou let aftur sende.
" þe rede bi tokeneþ þe Britones, and youre kynde þat is,
" þat þe Saxones schulleþ zet ouer come, and here londe wynne ywis.
" Grote watres worþeþ zet rede of monne's blode,
" Cristendom worþ y cast a doun, & chirchon þat er stode.
" Ac zet schul þe Britones som tyme azeyn stonde,
" For þe bor of Cornewail schal helpe þis londe,
" And þo Saxnes hedes vnder fet trede.
" Mony yles wynne he schal, lond and oþer stude
" Lord he worþ of France, & Rome schal hys sturnhede
" Doute, & quake þerfore, ac ys endyng worþ in drede.
" [1] þat folk schal euer speke of hym, and ys noble dede
" Worþ to hym a swete mete, þat it con a rede.
" [2] Siþe, þat comeþ aftur hym, schulleþ holde þe seynorie.
Ac aftur hem schal aryse a worm of Germanye,
And þe [3] se wolf hym schal brynge vp, [4] & þanne religion
And holychirche eftsone worþ y brozt al a don.
Change worþ of bischopriches, & þe digne sege y wys
Worþ y brozt to Canterbury, þat at London now ys.

---

[1] *In ore populorum celebrabitur, & actus ejus cibus erit narrantibus* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Sex posteri ejus sequentur sceptrum, sed post ipsos exsurget Germanicus vermis,* Galfr. Mon. [3] *Æquoreus lupus* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Delebitur item religio, & transmutatio primarum sedium fiet. Dignitas Londoniæ adornabit Doroberniam* Galfr. Mon.

[1] Al

[1] Al þis bi fel afturward, as ȝe schul [2] y hure,
[3] þo Cornewaile's bor, of wam he spek, þat" was kyng Arthure,
þat so wel huld vp þis lond, and ys fon ouer com,
[4] þat þoru ys nobley wan mony a kyndom.
Of prophecie of Merlyn we ne mow telle no more,
For it so derk to symple men, bute me were þe bet in lore.
Gret wonder hadde þat folk of þe wisdam, þat he seyde,
Of þing, þat to come was, and of his ȝong hede.
þe kyng bed þo Merlyn, þat he hym tolde an dede.
In wat deþ he scholde deye, & Merlyn þis hym seyde.
" [5] Costantyne's sones [6] fur fle, ȝef þou myȝt.
" [7] For heo ȝarkeþ here schipes toward þi lond ryȝt.
" Heo bileueþ þat lond of Armore," þat þo lasse Breteyn ys.
" Heore seyles heo spredeþ in þe se, & hyder comeþ y wis.
" þe Saxones heo wolleþ a saile, & to gronde brynge.
" [8] Ac heo wolle þe in þin owne tour sle" atte bigynnynge.
" [9] þoru þi traison luþer mon heor fader þou slowe.
" [10] And" þoru þi trayson Saxones [11] into þis lond þou drowe.
" þou bede hem forto helpe þe, ac to þin wo heo beþ y come.
" Twei sorwes [12] þe beþ vp on, & þe ne worþ nowþer bi nome.

---

[1] Much of this *Ar.* [2] Hure, as of the Cornyssh boor, that *Ar.* [3] *F.* þro. [4] And thurgh his grete nobleye *Ar.* [5] Constantyne's sones fuir *Ar.* [6] *Ignem filiorum Constantini diffuge, si diffugere valueris* Galfr. Mon. [7] For hure naueye hii arayth hiderward nough ryght. They leueth the londe of Armoryk. *Ar.* [8] And the sle in thyn owen tour *Ar.* [9] Hure fader and hure brother eke þurgh thi treson men slowe *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Ferst in to this lond drowe *Ar.* [12] The cometh an honde, & neither the ne worth by nome. The Saxones nough destroyeth thy lond in the on ende. The two *Ar.*

" For

" For [1] þe Saxones destruyeþ þi lond in to þo on ende.
" þo twei" breþren in þe oþer half [2] vp þi lond wol wende,
" To awreke on þe here heor fader deþ, þe ne tyd no pays.
" For heo wolleþ to morwe aryue atte haue of Tottenays.
" And wen Hengist ys yslawe, Aurely worþ kyng.
" Pays he wole brynge aȝeyn, & [3] chirchon þoru-alle þing.
" Apoysned he worþ atte ende, and aftur hym an haste
" Hys broþer schal haue þe kyndam, þat apoysned worþ atte laste.
" So gret treson worþ among hem, þat aftur þe schul come,
[4] Ac þe Cornewaile's bor hem schal chaste some.

AURELI & Uter, þe twei breþren corteys,
With gret power a morwe ariuede at Tottenois:
þo þe tyþing sprong, þat heo comen attelaste,
þe Brutones, þat were helples, come aboute hem faste,
þat were to sprad here & þere, heo were þo glad ynowȝ,
[5] þat folk al so of holy chirche aboute hem faste drowȝ.
þer heo made Aureli kyng, & homage hym dude echon,
And [6] bede, þat heo moste vp þe Saxones wende anon.
Ac þe kyng Aurely þer aȝeyn gan [7] speke.
For he þoȝte on Vortiger ys fader first awreke.

---

[1] *Hinc enim regnum tuum devastant Saxones, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [2] Up the wolleþ wende, To a wreke hure fader deth, the ne tideth no pays *Ar.* [3] Chirches *Ar.* [4] But thurgh the boor of Cornewaille shal wrech of hym be nome *Ar.* [5] The folk eke of holy *Ar.* [6] Consailed hym on the Saxones, forto weynde anon *Ar.* [7] To speke, and wylned vpon Vortager his fader *Ar.*

[1] For

[1] For ys herte was so gret for ys fader deþ þere,
þat he ne myȝt glad be, ar he awreke were.
Vortiger[2] ys y flowe, for drede of hym ywis,
[3] To an castel in Yrchenfeld, in þe Est ende of Walis,
A boue þe water of Wye, vp an hul on heyȝ.
þe kyng Aureli þider com, & þat castel y seyȝ.
To Eldolf, erl of Gloucestre, he spek in þis manere:
" [4] Sire noble erl nym god ȝeme of þis castel here,
" Were he mowe þe luþer Vortiger wytye fro þe deþe,
" þat ich in ys inneward my swerd ne make a scheþe,
" þat ys aller mon worst, þat me euer seȝ with ye.
" þe deþ ne myȝte be to luþer, that he schulde in dye.
" For my fader Costantyn first he bi trayde amys,
" þat sauede hym & al þat lond from þe [5] Picars y wys.
" Seþþe my broþer [6] Constance he broȝte hym to kynge:
" For he wolde hym bi traie, and to deþe brynge.

---

[1] *Adeo enim propter proditionem patri illatam doluerat, quod nil agere videretur, nisi ipsum prius vindicaret* Galfr. Mon. [2] Was *Ar.* [3] To Genor castel in Yrchne, in the on ende of Walis, Vp an hille, that Dirty hight, þis castel stode ful hie, In the shire of Hergyn [Heryngfordeshire, *i.* Herfordshire, *in margine*] vp the water of Wye. The kyng tho he thuder com, spake in this maner to Eldolph, Erl of Gloucetre, sure se this castel here, Wher may hit this Vortiger wity fram his deth, And hit ich myghte in his body make my body a sheth. He is to me man worst to loken on with eye, His deth ne myghte to luther be þan he sholde deye *Ar.* [4] *Respice, dux nobilis, hujus urbis mœnia, utrum poterint Vortegirnum protegere, quin gladii mei mucronem ipse infra viscera ipsius recondam. &c.* Galfr. Mon. [5] Pictes *Ar,* [6] Constans he made to be kyng: *Ar.*

" And

" And seþþe, þoru ys tricherie þo he hadde þis lond on honde,
" He mengede þe luþer payns among [1] gou in þis londe,
" [2] Forte holde me & myn broþer out of oure eritage.
" [3] Ac oure Lord haþ vp ys heued ybrogt ys owne outrage.
" For þe luþer Saxones vnder gete ys luþer dede,
" Heo by nome hym ys kyndom, [4] & þat was a rygtful dede.
" Ac of o þing ich habbe deol, þat þis payns, þat luþer beþ,
" þat he brogte first to londe, as ge alle y seþ,
" þe noble men of þis lond þus to schame brogte,
" And þis lond, þat was riche, wastede al to nogte,
" And al holy chirche & Cristendom habbeþ y brogt to gronde
" Fram þat [5] o se to þat oþer, [6] a las! þilke stonde!
" Now ge kynde mon of þis lond [7] cuþeþ goure monhede.
" And awrekeþ gou of þis luþer men, þoru wam com þis wrechedhede;
" [8] And seþþe turne we oure hond vp oure oþer fon,
" And [9] delyuere þis lond of þe luþer men echon.
[10] þis folk myd god herte þis castel a sailede.
Ac for þe castel wes strong, here wille þo hem faylede.

---

[1] The Cristenmen *pro* gou *in Ar.* [2] To *pro* forte *in Ar.* [3] But God on his owene hede hath tournd his outrage. The Saxones whan hii vnderstode of his luther dede, *Ar.* [4] Thurgh gile and falshede. Ac of one thyng *Ar. Sed* Galfr. Mon. *plane ut Codex* Harleyanus. *Sic enim ille:* "*Nam ut nequitiam ipsius com-*
"*pererunt Saxones, ejecerunt*
"*illum ex regno, quod nemi-*
"*nem pigere debeat.* [5] On see *Ar.* [6] Alas! the harde stounde! *Ar.* [7] Kyeth your manhede *Ar.* [8] *Deinde vertamus arma in hostes imminentes, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [9] Delyuere we this lond of luther *Ar.* [10] The folk with good herte tho this castel gonne asaile. And for the castel was so strong, whan will dude hem faile, With queyntise

Myd quoyntise heo casten fuyr, & barnde þat castel withinne,
And þe kyng Vortiger was to doust y barnd þer inne.
And þo myȝte he fynde soþ, þat Merlyn hym er seide,
þat [1] heo Costantyne's sones fuyr schulde fle & drede.
þo was Hengist sore adrad of kyng Aurely þer,
And nomeliche for þe noble los, [2] þat he herde of hym er.
For þer nas in non ende of France, ny in no lond þer a boute,
þat in joustes & [3] tornemens echo mon gan hym doute.
For þer nas so god knyȝt non nower a boute France,
þat in joustes scholde at sitte þe dynt of ys launce,
þat he [4] ne schulde a doun oþer ys hors oþer boþe anon,
Oþer þe lance schulde breke in peses mony on.
þer fore Hengist was a drad to mete with ys launce,
Ouer Homber he fley a non, to wyte hym from meschance;
And casteles and cytees a storede faste þere,
[5] And in Scotlond al so; for þilke londes were
A luþer recet euer a geyn Engelonde.
For eche þat wolde hider harm, þer myȝte at stonde.
[6] þo Aureli wiste, þat heo were y flowe to hurne,
He was glad, þat heo were a ferd, & þoȝte be hom sturne."

---

tise hii caste fure, and brende hit with gynne, And Vortiger alto douste brende ther with ynne *Ar.*

[1] Constantyne's sones fuyr he sholde fle *Ar.* [2] That men of hym bere *Ar.* [3] Tournementz me ne hadde of hym ȝret doute *Ar.* [4] *Nam si congressum fecisset, vel hostem ab equo prosterneret, vel hastam in frusta confringeret* Galfr. Mon. [5] Al toward Scotlond, ther his recettes were. For ther a luthere recett hath be euer to Engelonde. All that hiderward wolde harme, ther hii mowe astonde *Ar.* [6] *Cumque id Aurelio nuntiatum fuisset, audacior effectus, spem victoriæ recepit* Galfr. Mon. *At in Cod. Ar.* Tho kyng Aure-

fle

He ȝarkede ys ost, & siwede aftur hem faste Norþ,
And þo he sey þe contreis, as he passede forþ,
Destruyde & bare in eche half, gret deol he made þere,
And nameliche for chirches, þat y cast to grounde were.
[1] He bi het God almyȝty, ȝef he sende hym þo ouer hond,
To rere vp aȝen þe chirches a boute into al þat lond.
þo Hengist wiste, þat [2] heo come toward Scotlond,
[3] He ȝarkede ys ost faste, aȝeyn hem for to stonde.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, as he wende in þis ferhede
Toward þe batail, to þe kyng þese wordes he seyde:
" Sire kyng, for al þe dayes, þat ich haue on erþe y go,
" O day me wolde þinke ynow to [4] libbe with oute mo,
" þat ich þe luþer Hengist in Batail myȝte mete,
" For on of vs schulde deye er we [5] þat batail lete.
" So [6] muche for ich habbe in myn herte, wan y þer on þenche,
" [7] þon come to make pays, of ys luþer wrenche,

---

lie hadde word, the Saxones were yflowe, Wel the more was his joye, the lasse was his howe.

[1] He made to God his avow, to haue the heigher honde, *Ar.* [2] He *Ar.* [3] He gan faste to greithi his oste, ayen hym forto stonde. Eldolf, erl of Gloucetre, that wende in companye Wiþ the kyng thuderward, gan to hym speke an hie: " Sire kyng, he seide, alle deies þat y haue go *Ar.* [4] Lyue *Ar.* [5] To *pro* þat *in Ar.* [6] *Reminiscor namque diei, qua convenimus quasi pacem habituri. Cumque & de concordia ageretur, prodidit omnes qui aderant, & cum cultris interfecit, præter me solum, qui reperto palo evasi. Succubuerunt eadem die* cccc. lxxx. *barones ac consules, qui omnes inermes advenerant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Whan we come to make pees, of his lither wrenche, That of Erles and Barons, that *Ar.*

" þat

" þat of oure erles and barnes, þat so noblemen were,
" Four hundred & four score [2] mid treson he slow þere,
" Of hem þat [3] were al on war, & with oute armour were also.
" Now God leue, þat þe wreche þer of by twene vs mow be do.
þe kyng Aurely ys felawes comforted wel to fyȝte,
And al ys hope in [4] Godesone dude & al ys myȝte.
As þe ost in eiþer syde to [4] þis batail drow,
Heo come & metten baldeliche mid god ernest y now.
Heo smyten harde & made mony a strong wonde.
Heo schedde blod and slowe in eyþer syde to gronde.
Aureli comfortede þe Cristenemen a boute,
And Hengist in his [5] half þe heþene menne's route.
Ac þe Cristene, þoru Gode's grace, hadde þe beter ende,
So þat toward [6] Corneborw þe heþene gonne wende,
[7] And þo Cristene aftur, & to gronde broȝte y nowe.
For al þat heo myȝte of take, heo nome oþer slowe.
þo Hengist y sey þe Cristene men hym siwe so faste,
And þat he moste nede turne aȝeyn, oþer deye atte laste,
He bi gan to ordeyne ys folk, & to batail aȝen drow,
[8] And in eyþer syde, as heo dude er, to gronde me slow,
þat þe cry of þe folk, þat me slow, þe oþere broȝte in drede.
Atte laste þe heþene men bi gonne hem to sprede.

---

[1] With *Ar.* [2] Were an vnywar, and vnarmed also. God leue that hit mote be wreke by twixte vs two. The kyng Aurelie *Ar.* [3] Gode's sone *Ar.* [4] The *pro* this *in Ar.* [5] Half also the hethene of his route *Ar.* [6] Conesburgh *Ar.* [7] The Cristene siwede after faste, broughte to grounde y now *Ar.* [8] Yn aither syde, as hii dude er, muche folk me slough. The cry of folk þat was a slawe, the other *Ar.*

þe Cristene were þe boldere, [1] þe kyng faste sette
Forto comforte ys men, and slow al þat he mette.
Eldol, erl of Gloucester, al so in hys syde
[2] Arnde, and kepte her and þer, and slow a boute wyde.
And muche hys entente was [3] Hengist forto mete.
[4] Heo mette hem atte laste, er heo þe batail lete.
Ow! Lord! þe dyntes stronge, þat" were bi twene hem þere,
[5] þat fuyr smot out of þat yre, lyȝtyng as yt were.
So strong knyȝtes boþe þei were, [6] & here herte gret was.
Gorlois, erl of Cornewail, [7] þer forþ com bicas.
As sone as Eldol hym seye, ys herte vpward drow:
Hengist by þe helme by neþe he hente faste ynowȝ,
And myd strengþe hym drow a doun, & lowde bi gan to grede,
" Cristenemen fiȝteþ now, of noþing ȝe ne drede.
" God me haþ my wille y ȝeue; for ich hym habbe nowþe,
" Hym þat made al þis wo bi Norþ & eke by Souþe.
" Cuþeþ now, þat ȝe ben men; for þe mastry al oure ys.
[8] þo Cristene men to grounde slow, þo [9] heo herde þis.
[10] Heo ne fynede neuer mo, ar þo oþer ware at gronde.
Some flowe to hulles and to wodes, þat heo fonde.
Ac Octa, Hengiste's sone, and ys power atte laste
[11] Of scapede to Euerwik, & streugþede þe toun faste.

---

[1] And the heþene faste of sette, And faste comfortide his men to sle alle that hii mette *Ar.* [2] Rood, & kept her and ther all a boute wide *Ar.* [3] With Hengis *Ar.* [4] So at last to gedere hii mette, and other batailles lete. Wonder stronge were the strokes, that *Ar.* [5] The fuir smot out of the ire, *Ar.* [6] And the herte so gret was *Ar.* [7] By side hem com by cas *Ar.* [8] The Cristene to grounde *Ar.* [9] Hii *Ar.* [10] And neuer wolde fyne, er the other were to grounde *Ar.* [11] Askapide in to Ebracwike, *Ar.*

Hengist

Hengist was o liue y nome, and y holde faste.
þo þis batail was y do, [1] þis Britones attelaste
Nome þe town of Cornboru, and þer inne hadde reste
þre dayes and þre [2] nyȝt, forto bi þenche hore beste.
þe kyng lette [4] þe wyle burye þe dede men þere,
And do vnder lechecraft hem, þat y wonded were.
þe kyng [5] lette bryng þer aftur Hengist bi fore hym sone,
And aschede at erles & barnes, wat were mid hym to done?
[6] Eldal, þat bischop of Gloucestre [7] was,
And þe erl ys broþer Eldol, was þer bi cas.
þo he sey Hengist stonde bi fore þe kyng þere,
He stod vp & seide þe verdyt by fore alle oþere þat þer were:
" ȝef oþer," he seide, " þat þer beþ hym wol deliuere echone,
" To smale peces ich hym wolde to hakke al one.
" [8] For ich wolde þo prophete wyle Samuel vnderstonde,
" þat þo he hadde þe luþer kyng Agag vnderhonde,"

[1] These *Ar.* [2] Conesburgh *Ar.* [3] Nyght, as hem thought beste *Ar.* [4] Thulke while the deed bury there, And dude tho to lechecraft, that y wounded were *Ar.* [5] The kyng let Hengist afterward be brought to fore hym sone, And axede of his Barones, best what was of hym to done? *Ar.* [6] Eldad, *Ar.* [7] Tho was, And the ferthe brother Eldolf, ther was eke by cas. Eldad seide the verdit for alle that ther were, When he seygh Hengis stonde byfore the kyng there. "Theigh alle," he seide, "that here beth him wolde deliuere echon, To smale pecis alto hacky ich hym wolde alone. For of prophete Samuel ich wolde vnderstonde, That Agag the luthur kyng hadde vnder hond, *Ar.* [8] *Insequerer namque prophetam Samuelem, qui cum Agag regem Amalech in potestatem retinuisset, concidit illum in frusta dicens,* " *Sicut fecisti* " *matres sine liberis, sic fa-* " *ciam hodie matrem tuam* " *sine liberis inter mulieres.* Galfr. Mon.

" He lette hym hew to peses, and also he seide,
" As þou hast y mad mony [1] wyf deolful lyf to lede,
" And mony child with oute fader, & mony wif lordles,
" [2] Al so ich wole make to day þine sones faderles.
" Al so [3] doþ bi þis mon, þat so muche wo haþ y do,
" So mony child mad faderles, dygteþ hym al so.
þis word was for dom yholde, þe erl Eldol hym drow,
And ladde hym with oute þe town [4] mid god herte y now;
And smot of hys heḍ, þat so muche wo hadde y do.
þo was mony mon a wreke, and mony mon glad al so.
þis was euene fourty ȝer, þat he hadde þis dom,
Aftur þat [5] he mid his folc to þis lond com.
þo wende þe kyng myd god ost to Euerwik anon,
For to sle [6] Hengistesone, and ys men echon.
þo Octa hit onderstod, þat heo comyng were,
He sei wel, þat [7] power nas nogt ageyn hem þere.
An [8] raketyne of yre in hys hond he nom,
And myd þe hexte of ys men [9] to þe kyng he com.
" Sire," he seide, " myne Godes al ouer come beþ,
" And þi [10] Lord ys God al one, as we to soþe seþ,

---

[1] A wif *Ar.* [2] So wole y make to day thi sone faderles *Ar.* [3] Do *Ar.* [4] With gret filte y now. *Ar.* [5] He ferst with his *Ar.* [6] Hengiste's sone, *Ar.* [7] His power was nought a yen so many there. A gret cheyne of iren *Ar.* [8] *Communicato itaque consilio, egressus est cum nobilioribus qui secum aderant, gestans catenam in manu, & sabulonem in capite, & sese regi in hæc verba præsentavit* Galfr. Mon. [9] A ye the kyng com *Ar.* [10] God is Lord al one, as we alle y seth, *Ar.*

" þat

" þat þus noble men to þyn wille bryngeþ in þis manere.
" [1] þer fore vs with [2] veteres vnderfong now here.
" [3] þat to eche torment, þat ge wole vs, gare we beþ in þis place,
" Bute þou wole of vs here pyte habbe and grace.
þe kyng hadde rewþe [4] of hem, & ys conseil hym gef þo,
Nom of hem sikernesse to ys þral euer mo"
And of eche þat with hym was, and in gret destresse,
Bi syde Scotlond hem ȝef a place, al in wildernesse,
To wone inne in þraldam vnder þe kyng euer mo.
þese, and mony oþere, þat y flowe were þo,
Y sei, þat þe kyng hadde such mercy hem do,
To hym heo wende as prisones, and [5] bedom mercy also.
þe kyng al inon maner hem ȝef [6] mercy and grace,
To wone al in [7] þralhede in þike wylde place,
[8] To wroþe hele al þis lond was he so mylde þo.
For þe schrewes dude to þis lond seþþe wel muche wo.
þo al þis was y do, þe kyng, ar he wende,
Let ordeyne in Euerwik þis lond for to amende,
And lette rere vp chirches in al þe lond a bowte,
And bischopes dude in heore power, þat [9] er were al withoute.

---

[1] *Accipe ergo nos & catenam istam, &, nisi misericordiam habueris, habe nos ligatos, & ad quodlibet supplicium voluntarie paratos* Galfr. Mon. [2] Thes feteres *Ar.* [3] To (*omisso* þat) which torment though wlt vs do, we beth redy in this place, But though wlt vs pyte do, or eny other grace *Ar.* [4] Of hym, as his consail yaf hym tho, And sikernysse nam of hym, to serue hym euere mo *Ar.* [5] Mercy bede also *Ar.* [6] Mylce *Ar.* [7] Thraldom *Ar.* [8] To wrotherhele to al this lond, that he mylde was tho. For they dude to al this lond suthe much wo *Ar.* [9] Erst *Ar.*

Aftur fyftene dawes, þat [1] he hadde y ordeyned [2] þis,
To London [3] he wende, for to amende [4] þat þer was amys.
He let amende al þo town of howses þat were a downe,
[5] And in þe contrey chirches let rere, and in þe towne.
Gode lawes," þat were aleyd, newe he lette make.
[6] Londes, þat were [7] arst by nome, [8] þe ryȝt eyr he lette take.
Bute ys wille al clene was ys lond forto amende.
And aftur al þis to Wynchestre from Londone he wende,
For to amende þilke [9] syde, & so & so to Salusbury.
And so, for to amende more, to þe [10] downe of Ambresbury.
þo he com to þat place, þat þe heye men inne laye,
þat Hengist myd ys sexes let sle and by traye,
Of þe morþre he hadde deol, & bi gan to wepe sore,
He þoȝte in hys herte, how he myȝte þe place [11] worþi.
For þer lay so gode men, [12] yt was wel ydo,
þat, for to defende þat lond, y morþred were so.
Hys conseil he tok þo, how he myȝt make þere
Some werk, [13] in honowr of hem, þat euer in mynde were.
þe erchbischop of Walis seide ys auys,
" Sire," he seide, " ȝef þer ys any mon so wys,

---

[1] Hii *Ar.* [2] Al this *Ar.* [3] Hii *Ar.* [4] Thyngs that were amys. And let amendy al the toun *Ar.* [5] Churchen he rerde in contreye fram toun to toune. Olde lawes, *Ar.* [6] And londes, *Ar.* [7] Er *Ar.* [8] To the ryght heires take. His wille was al clenly this lond for to amende *Ar.* [9] Cite, and so to Salesbury *Ar.* [10] Toune *Ar.* [11] Worship more. For ther *Ar.* [12] Hym thought hit wel to do, By cause, in sense of the lond, they were amorthered so *Ar.* [13] That hii euere more after in mynde were *Ar.*

" [1] þat

[1] þat beste red þe can rede, Merlyn þat ys.
For [2] þer nys in þi kyndam so wys mon y wys,
To segge soþ of þinges, þat to comene beþ.
[3] Ne of quoyntes for to rede, as we al day y seþ.
Merlyn was þo in Walis. he was sone of sorȝt
Myd messingeres, & y fonde, & to þe kyng y broȝte.
The kyng made hym joye ynow, & [4] amon hem alle
Bed hym telle of som [5] þing, þat hym schulde bi falle.
" Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn þo, " suche þinges y wys
" Ne beþ for to schewe noȝt, but wen gret nede ys.
" For [6] ȝef ich seide in bismare, oþer bute yt ned were,
" Sone from me [7] he wolde wende þe Gost, þat doþ me lere.
" þe kyng, þo non oþer nas, bod hym som quoyntyse
Bi þenke aboute [9] þilke cors, þat so noble were and wyse.
" Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn þo, " ȝef þou wolt here caste,
" In [10] þe honour of hem, a werk that euer schal y laste,
" To þe [11] hul of Kylar send in to Yrlond Kylar.
" [12] Aftur þe noble stones, þat þer habbet lenge y stonde,
" þat was þe treche of geandes, for a quoynte werk þer ys
" Of stones al wyþ art y mad, in þe world such non ys.

[1] That best red can ther of rede, Merlyn hit is *Ar.* [2] *Quippe non existimo, alterum in regno tuo esse, cui sit clarius ingenium, sive in futuris dicendis, sive in operationibus machinandis* Galfr. Mon. [3] Ne of queynte thynges for to rede, *Ar.* [4] Among *Ar.* [5] Thinges, *Ar.* [6] *Nam si ea in derisionem sive vanitatem proferrem, taceret spiritus, qui me docet, &, cum opus superveniret, recederet* Galfr. Mon. [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] The kyng, tho other [*f.* tho non other] myghte be, bad hym *Ar.* [9] Thulke bodies, *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Hille of Kildar *Ar.* [12] After stones noble and goode, that longe han ther stonde, That was carole of Geantz, for queynte werk hit is *Ar.*

" [1] Ne þer nys noþing, þat me scholde [2] myd strengþe a doun caste.
" Stode heo here, as heo doþ þere, [3] euer a wolde laste.
þe kyng [4] somdel to lyghe, þo he herde þis tale,
" [5] How myȝte," he seyde, " suche stones, so grete & so fale,
" [6] Be ý brogt of so fer lond? & ȝet mest of were,
" Me wolde wene, þat in þis lond no ston to worche nere.
" [7] Sire kyng," quoþ Merlyn, " ne make nogt an ydel such lyghyng.
" For yt nys and ydel nogt, þat ich telle þis tyþing.
" For in þe farreste stude of Affric geandes while fette
" þike stones for medycine, & in Yrlond hem sette,
" [8] While heo woneden in Yrlond, to make here baþes þere,
" þer vnder forto baþi, wen þei syk were.
" For [9] heo wolde þe stones wasch, & þer inne baþe y wis.
" [10] For ys no ston þer among, þat of gret vertu nys.

---

[1] Ne ther is nothing, that hem scholde with strength a doun caste *Ar.* [2] *Grandes sunt lapides, nec est aliquis cujus virtuti cedunt. Qui si eo modo, quo ibi positi sunt, circa plateam locabuntur, stabunt in æternum* Galfr. Mon. [3] Euere hii wolde y laste *Ar.* [4] By gan somdel to laugh *Ar.* [5] Who *Ar.* Bryng fro so ferre lond? And the meste were, that men wolde wene in þis *Ar.* " [7] Sire," quath Merlyn, " ne " taketh nought an ydel such " lyghynge. For hitt is an ydel nought, that y telle of this thynge *Ar. Ad hæc Merlinus: Ne moveas rex va-* " *num risum, quia hæc absque* " *vanitate profero* Galfr. Mon. [8] The while hii wonede in Irlonde, to make hem bathes there, *Ar.* [9] *Lavabant nempque lapides, & infra balnea diffundebant, unde ægroti curabantur. Miscebant etiam cum herbarum confectionibus, unde vulnerati sanabantur. Non est ibi lapis, qui medicamento careat* Galfr. Mon. [10] For ther is *Ar.*

þe

þe kyng and ys conseil [1] radde þo stones forte fette,
[2] And with gret power of batail, ȝef any mon hem lette.
Uter, (þe kynge's broþer,) þat Ambrose hette al so,
In anoþer maner name, y chose was þer to,
And fiftene þousant men, þis dede forto do,
And Merlyn, for his [3] quoyntise," þider wente al so.
[4] Gynemon was þilke kyng of Irlonde.
þo me tolde hym, þat þis Britones y come were to ys londe,
Aȝen hem he wente anon myd [5] god power ynowȝ.
þo me told him here ernde, he astynte and lowȝ.
" No wonder," he seyd, [6] þaw Breteyne al day go to gronde,
" [7] Wan heo, þat þer inne beþ, suche foles beþ yfonde.
" Wo haþ y herd such folye, wer þer be in non ende
" Stones, þer þat aȝtes be heo hyder sende?
" Armeþ ȝow [1] faste now, and wyteþ ȝowre lond.
" For [9] heo schul not habbe here no ston, wyle ich may wolde myn hond.
Uter and ys companye redi aȝeyn hem were,
[10] And a strong batail smyte, & þe Yrische to driue þere,
And wende forþ myd strengþe, þo nomon hem no lette,
And come to Kylar, þo stones forto fette.

---

[1] Radde tho the stones *Ar.* [2] And that with gret power of men, yf eny wolde lette *Ar.* [3] Queynte witt, *Ar.* [4] Gwyneman, that was thulke tyme kyng *Ar.* [5] Gret *pro* god *in Ar.* [6] Theigh Brutons *Ar.* [7] The moste foles of the worlde, ofte hii beth y founde. Who saw such a folye in to the worlde's eynde, Stones out of Irlond to Brutayn seynde? *Ar.* [8] Sone y now *Ar.* [9] Hii ne shul haue the leste ston, the while ic welde myn hond *Ar.* [10] So that the Irissh men hii ouercome there, And wente forth with strengthe, that noman hem ne lette, To the halle of Kildar the stones forto fette *Ar.*

þo

þo heo sey [1] þo stones, heo wondred y now
Of þe werk, þat was so gret, & [2] ho yt þider drow.
" ȝe ȝonge men," quoþ Merlyn, " cuþeþ now ȝoure myȝte,
" How ȝe mow [3] þis stones best to þe [4] schip dyȝte.
Heo stode, & bi þoȝte hem best, & cables fette ynowe,
And laddres, and leueres, & faste schoue & drowe.
Ac heo ne myȝte come for noþyng to ende [5] myd here wille.
Merlyn [6] say þis, and low, and bad hem stonde stille.
He sette hys gynnes, as he wolde, & [7] ys quoyntise dude stille,
And þe folk myd þo stones þo dude al here wille,
And lette hem to schippes brynge, & so in to þis londe,
Ac þer was som enchantery þer to, ich vnderstonde.
To þe [8] downe of Ambres bury [9] þe stones y broȝt were,
A ȝeyn þe fest of [10] Wytson tyde, as Merlyn gan lere.
Four hondred ȝer & four score & aboute þe tenþe ȝer,
Aftur [11] þat gon on erþe com, y set þei were þere.
Alle þe hey men of [12] þo lond þe kyng lette of sende.
Erles and barones and knyȝtes [13] in eche ende,
Bischopes and abbottes and [14] oþere þat þere were,
þat þe fest of Wytsontyde myd hem were þere."

---

[1] þis *pro* þo *in Ar.* [2] Who *Ar.* [3] Thes *Ar.* [4] Shippys *Ar.* [5] Of hure wille *Ar.* [6] Sey al this, *Ar.* [7] His queyntise caste. The folke of the stones tho hadde hure wille an haste, And hem to shippe gonne bryng, and so into this londe, Ac nought with out enchauntemente, as y vnderstonde *Ar.* [8] Doúnes *Ar.* [9] Thes stones *Ar.* [10] Wittsonday, as Merlyn gan hem lere *Ar.* [11] *Lege, cum Ar.* that God on erthe come &c. [12] The *Ar.* [13] By euery ende *Ar.* [14] Othur soth y say, That sholde come to the kyngus fest a Wittsoneday *Ar.*

þe kyng at Wytsonday, þo heo come alle to ys heste,
Sette þe crowne on ys heued, and huld [1] noble feste.
[2] And alle þe foure dayes þe fest [3] he huld there.
[4] Bischopes also, þat delyuered were,
In honour of þilke stude, þere he [5] ȝef ys þo,
As of [6] Euerwyk, & of Walis, & also of oþere mo.
Merlyn with ys chauntement, & myd ys quoyntyse, þer
Sette vp þe stones ryȝt so, as heo stode in Yrlond er.
Þus was Stonehenge þus [7] y mad, þat men al day seþ,
In honour of þe noble men, þat þer y buried beþ.

[8] PASCENCE, Vortigere's sone, ys fader for barnd was,
Fley into Germanye [9] myd wel hasty pas.
Þere he gaderede folc of Saxones y nowe,
For to a wreke hym of hem, þat ys fader slowe.
In þe Norþ ende of þis lond heo by gonne ariue,
And faste slowe and [10] barnde, and robbode bi lyue,
Þat word [11] to owre kyng com, so þat he wende
Myd ys power among hem, & heore prude schende.
Pascence and ys men, [12] þo ascapede o lyue,
To schippes flowe faste [13] aȝen, ech whyle hem þogte fyue.

[1] A noble [Ar.] [2] And fully alle [Ar.] [3] Held he there. Bysshopryches, that he held, delyuered there were [Ar.] [4] *Interea honores, qui possessoribus carebant, domesticis suis largitur, ut eis obsequii sui laborem remuneraret* Galfr. Mon. [5] Yaf hem tho, [6] Walis, & Ebracwick, and othur many mo [Ar.] [7] Furst y made, that we al day seith, [Ar.] [8] Passent, Vortigeris sone, tho his fader forbrend was, [Ar.] [9] With full hasty [Ar.] [10] Brende, and robbede swythe blyue [Ar.] [11] To kyng Aurelye come, [Ar.] [12] That [Ar.] [13] A ye, hying swyth blyue [Ar.]

Aboute

A boute heo wende by þe se, so þat to Yrlond heo come.
Gyneman kyng of Yrlond and heo gret conseil nome.
And þis lond forte schende alle heo swere an oþ.
For Gyneman was for the Stonhenge hiderward ȝet wroþ.
So þat þe Yrische and heo myd gret power y wys
Come toward þis lond, and aryuede in Walis.
In þe town of Sent Dauid heo by leuede and aboute,
And forto assaile þis lond greyþed here route.
Kyng Aureli at Wynchestre to gret siknesse drow,
Gyneman and Pascente wer glad þer of y now.
A quoynte maistre of þe Saxones ([1] Eope was ys name)
To Pascence wende [2] anon, þat God ȝeue hym schame,
"[3] What woldest," he seyde, "þilke mon to ys mede ȝeue fawe,
"þat þe kyng Aurely broȝte of lyf dawe?
"ȝef ich myȝte," quoþ Pascence, "such mon fynde on,
"A þousant pownd of seluer ich wolde hym ȝeue anon,
"And make hym euer vnder me mayster of al my londe,
"And þat ich hym wolde myd trewþe siker faste on honde.
þis forward was faste y mad, now couþe þis luþer man
[4] Langage of þis lond, as he were Cristeneman,
[5] And þe maner of Bruytones, as he hadde among [6] hem y go,
And þe art of lechecraft, al to muche þo.
His berd he lette schere first, [7] and a brod crowne al so,
And seþþe a monke's abyt on hym he lette do.

---

[1] Coppa *Ar.* [2] A non, God yif hym moch shame *Ar.* [3] "What wolt thou," he sayne, "yiue the to his mede fawe, "that wolde kyng Aurelie "brynge of lyff dawe? *Ar.* [4] The langage of Brutones, as *Ar.* [5] And all the manere of hem, *Ar.* [6] Hem go, *Ar.* [7] And made hym a crowne also, *Ar.*

And

And nom with hym spicery, [1] þat to fysik drow,
And wende hym to Wynchestre quoyntoliche y now,
And seyde [2] þe kynge's, þat he wolde hym to hele brynge.
[3] þat folk was sone glad y now for þe [4] tyþinge.
So wysliche he made yt & so wel, þat me leuede hym faste.
þe kyng in hys [5] syde ys herte al vp hym caste.
He ȝef hym a luþer drench, & þo he hadde dronke yt so,
He bed hym lygge & slepe wel, þat yt myȝte do bet hym do.
þe kyng hopede wel [6] to hym, and lette hym helie faste,
And stille was with oute noyse, & lay & slepte ys laste.
For þe poyson in ys slep þe veynes so [7] þorp souȝte,
[8] þat it of eode al þat body, & to deþe sone hym broȝte.
þe [9] wyle he slep, [10] þe traytour þo wey aweyward nom
Stilleliche bi halues, þat me nuste wher he bi com.
Riȝt aboute þe kynge's deþ, in þe firmament an hey
A sterre, gret and fayr ynow, and swyþe cler, me sey.
[11] O cler leom, with oute mo, þer stod fram hym wel pur,
Y formed as a dragon, as red as þe fuyr.
Out of þe dragone's mouþ twei leomes þer stode þere;
[12] Grettor tylde euene Est ouer Fraunce, as yt were,

[1] And *pro* that *in Ar.* [2] The kyng (that longe hadde be sike) he wolde to hele brynge *Ar.* *Urbem postremo ingressus, obtulit obsequium suum clientibus regis, & gratiam in oculis eorum invenit. Nihil enim desiderabilius expectabant, quam medicum* Galfr. Mon. [3] The folk *Ar.* [4] Tydynge *Ar.* [5] Side also, his herte *Ar.* [6] On hym, *Ar.* [7] Thurgh *Ar.* [8] That all the body hit oueryede, & sone to deth hym broughte *Ar.* [9] *Interea nefandus proditor ille, inter unum & alium elapsus, in curia nusquam comparuit* Galfr. Mon. [10] This traytour his wey a weyward nome Al by halues stillelych, me nuste *Ar.* [11] A cler leome fro hure com, bryght so gold pure, *Ar.* [12] The gryttere *Ar.*

þe oþer hadde sene branches, alle cler ynowe,
And toward þe Yrische see Westward euene [1] þei" drowe.
þo þis sterre was y sey, men [2] wondrede y now.
Uter, þe kynge's broþer, myd ys ost þo drow
To Walis to þis strange men, to a sayle hem & fyȝte.
A drad he was [3] sore y now of þis wonder syȝte.
[4] Merlyn he clepude & aschede anon, how he myȝte þer of be?
Merlyn wep a non so faste, þat deol yt was to se.
" Alas!" he seyde, " þe deolful harm, þat ys endeles!
" Alas! [5] þat folk of Breyteyne, þat now ys helples!
" Ded [6] he" ys þe noble kyng Aureli þi broþer.
" Ac þe sterre, þat me yseyþ, bi toþoneþ a noþer.
" Hye now þou noble duc, þat þe batail were y smyte.
" For kyng þou worst of Breteyne, & þe [7] maistry þou schalt gete.
" For þe sterre bi tokeneþ þe, and þe fur dragon al so.
" þe leom, [8] þat out of ys mouþ ouer Fraunce ys y do,
" þat by tokeneþ a chyld, þat þou schalt bi gete ywys,
" þat schal wynne France & oþer londes, in þe world such mon nys.
" þe leome, þat tylde Westward, a doȝter þat ys,
" [9] þat þou schalt bi gete, and schal habbe sones ywys.

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Wondrede ther on y nowe *Ar.* [3] Swythe sore of *Ar.* [4] Of Merlyn he axede anon, hough hitt myght be *Ar.* [5] The folk *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Maistry biyite. The bryght sterre bytokneth the, and the fury *Ar.* [8] That cometh out of his mouth, *Ar.* [9] Thugh shalt biyite of thy body, that shal haue sones y wis, That kynges of Brutayne shul here aftur be, Of sorwe and of contak thenne me shal y se *Ar.*

" þat

" þat scal, eche aftur oþer, kyng of Breteyne be,
" Of some oþer al in contek, and þis me schal y se.
þe noble mon, of wam he spek, þat he [1] wolde be gete,
þat was þe kyng Arthure, as ȝe schul ywyte.
[2] Uter let al þis be (for he ne leuede yt not anon)
And wende toward Sent Dauid, to mete with ys fon.
þe oþer were of hem y war, & [3] ȝarkede hem in here syde,
And [4] lette arme here ost wel, batail forto abyde. Bellum.
Heo come & smyte þis bataile, & faste slowe to gronde,
In eyþer syde muche folk in a lute stonde,
Knyȝtes and oþer folk, atte laste oure Lord þoȝte
On ys Cristene folk, and þe [5] maystry hem broȝte.
For þer was Gynemon y slawe, (þe kyng of Yrlonde)
And Pascence (Vortigere's sone) þat so gret power hade in honde,
And muche of here folk with hem, so þat fowe [6] atte nende
Alyue þer of scapede, þat to schip myȝte wende.
And so [7] heo schulde lerne, with Cristenemen to fyȝte.
For our lord wole among hys men euer cuþe ys myȝte.
To Uter of ys broþer deþ þer com werd atte laste.
Aftur þis batayl he wende to Wynchestre faste.

---

[1] Sholde biyite, *Ar.* [2] Uther, when he hadde hurd al this, forth he wende anon Toward Seynt Dauidis, to mete with his fon *Ar.* *At Uther (in dubio tamen existens, an verum protulisset Merlinus) in hostes, ut cæperat, progreditur. Advenerat namque prope Meneviam, &c.* Galfr. Mon [3] Greithede hem *Ar.* [4] Lete hem army swithe well, the bataille to a byde *Ar.* [5] Victory *Ar.* [6] Attende *Ar.* [7] Hy myghte lerny, *Ar.*

[1] Arst

[1] Arst was þe kyng y buryed, er he [2] myȝte come þere,
Withinne þe place of þe Stonheng, þat he [3] lette rere.
For he lette þe stude halwe, for þe gode cors þat þer were,
And bischopes and worthi men ys body þider bere."

UTER, aftur ys [4] broþer deþ, þe crowne to hym nom,
And þoru þe heye men [5] of þis lond fong þis kyndom.
Of þe dragon [6] he vnderstod, þat y seye was on heye.
And of þat Merlyn hadde [7] y seid, of þe sizte þat me seye.
To riche dragones of gold he lette [8] make anon,
[9] And at the mynstre of Wynchestre he offerede þat on.
[10] þat oþer he lette bi fore hym bere in batail wan he was.
Me clepede hym Uterpendragon þer aftur for þis cas,
þat [11] was, Uter dragone's heued, [12] &[11] þat was to signifie,
þat Merlyn hym clepede dragon in hys prophecie.
[13] Otte, (Hengiste sone) þat luþer Saxone,
And [14] Eose ys cosyn, heo þoȝte of treson.
þe oþ, þat to kyng Auryli heo swere by fore,
Hem þoȝte, þo he was ded, þat yt was al for lore.

---

[1] Ac er was the kyng *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] Let furst rere. He hadde lete halwy the place, for coorses that ther were, By therchebisshopp Seynt Dobrice, and other that were there *Ar.* [4] Brother is deth, *Ar.* [5] Of the lond a veng the kyngdom *Ar.* [6] He gan by thenche, that was y seye an hegh *Ar.* [7] Y seid, thurgh sight that he segh. Two ryche *Ar.* [8] Makie *Ar.* [9] Atte hegh mynstre *Ar.* [10] The othur *Ar.* [11] Is, *Ar.* [12] *Deest Ar.* [13] Octa (Hengiste's sone) the luthere *Ar.* [14] Osa his brother also bythoughte hem on treson *Ar.*

Heo,

Heo þozte, to do þis lond schame, to Germany heo sende
[1] y lome,"
(þat ys lond in Alymaine, [2] from wam heo alle come)
Aftur more folk of here kynde, so þat þer come ynowe.
At Scotlond heo by gonne, and faste barnde and slowe,
And so [3] forþ toward Euerwyk þe contre [4] a doun þei caste,
And bi segede Euerwik, þo heo þider come, faste.
þe kyng Uter herde" here of, þiderward faste he drowþ.
To gedere heo come, and smite a batail strong y now. Bellum.
Heo [5] smyten & slowe in eyther syde, þat rewþe yt was to se.
Atte laste [6] þis Saxones by gonne forto fle,
And [7] þis Britones aftur, and slowe to gronde faste;
So þat some of scapode vp monteynes atte laste,
And some in to townes, and yt drow to nyzt,
So þat [8] heo ne myzt noþer longor y se to fyzte.
And þe Britones hem wyþ drow, & þe Saxones hem reste.
Kyng Uter nom ys conseil, [9] wat red were beste.
Gorloys, erl of Cornewayl, (þat wysest was y holde,
And old, and mest hadde y seye) ys red first he tolde.
"We mote," he seyde, "be hardy, & stalworþe, & wyse,
"zef we wol habbe oure lyf, and holde oure franchise.
"Wexing euer beþ oure fon bi water and by londe,
"þat, zef we abydeth longe, we schal hem not at stonde.

---

[1] Sone, *Ar.* [2] Of wham hii furst come) *Ar.* [3] Euer to ward *Ar.* [4] Doun caste, And whan hii come to Ebracwyk by segede the toun faste. Whan kyng Uther hurde *Ar.* [5] Foughte and *Ar.* [6] The Saxones *Ar.* [7] The Brutones *Ar.* [8] Hii ne myght y se no lengor forto fight *Ar.* [9] What hym were do beste *Ar.*

" Now [1] he beþ al on ywar, heo wolleþ y swike by daye,
" þer fore [2] y ne rede in no maner þis nede lengor delaye.
" We schul hem habbe now for nozt, y ne rede no lengor abyde,
" For he beþ naked & on ywar, [3] & to sprad wyde.
" þis consel was wel yherd, heo hulde þer to echon:
Al by nyzte he wende forþ, and sozte out here fon.
Some heo fonde ligge [4] slepe, heo demayde hem anon.
Capclo Octa. [5] Some hem wolde arme, ac wyle nadde he non.
So þat heo slow þere a þousant and mo,
And nome [6] Octe and Eose, þat wrozte al [7] þe wo,
And dude hem at London in pryson, & þat was rewþe sore
þat heo nadde hem y slawe, for sorw þei dude zet more.

[8] AT þe fest of Estre þo kyng sende ys sonde,
þat heo comen alle to London þe hey men of þis londe,
And þe [9] leuedys al so [10] god," to ys noble fest wyde,
For he [11] schulde crowne bere, for þe hye tyde.
Alle þe noble men of þis lond to þe noble fest come,
And heore wyues & heore dozter with hem mony nome.
þis fest was noble ynow, and [12] nobliche y do;
For mony was þe faire ledy, þat y come was þerto.

---

[1] Hii beth an vnywar, hii wole y swyke *Ar.* [2] Y rede in no wise this thyng lengour *Ar.* [3] And y sprad a wyde *Ar.* [4] A slepe *Ar.* [5] And some wolde haue armede hem, but tyme hadde the non *Ar.* [6] Octa and Osa, *Ar.* [7] This wo, *Ar.* [8] At Ester the kyng made a feste, & sende a boute his sonde, That to London sholde come alle the hegh men of the londe, *Ar.* [9] Ladyes *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.* [11] Wolde *Ar.* [12] Nobelly *Ar.*

Ygerne,

Ygerne, Gorloys wyf, was fairest of echon,
þat was contasse of Cornewail, [1] for" so fair nas þer non.
þe kyng by huld hire faste y now, & ys herte on hire caste,
And þozte, þay heo were [2] wyf, to do folye atte laste.
He made [3] hire semblant fair y now, to non oþer so gret.
þe erl [4] nas not þer with y payed, þo he yt vnder ȝet.
Aftur mete he nom ys wyf myd [5] stordy med y now,
And, with oute leue of þe kyng, to ys contrei drow.
þe kyng sende to hym þo, to by leue al nyȝt,
For he moste of gret consel habbe som insyȝt.
[6] þat was for noȝt. Nolde he noȝt þe kyng sende ȝet ys sonde.
þat he by leuede at [7] ys" parlemente, for nede of þe londe.
[8] þo kyng was, þo he nolde noȝt, anguyssous & wroþ.
For [9] despyte he wolde [10] a wreke be he swor ys oþ,
Bute he come to amendement. Ys power atte laste
He ȝarkede, and wende forþ to Cornewail faste.
Gorloys ys casteles a storc al a boute.
In a strong castel he dude ys wyf, of hire was al ys doute.

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] A wif, *Ar.* [3] To hure semblant fair, to non *Ar.* [4] Was nought a paid ther with, tho he *Ar.* [5] Stourdy mod *Ar.* [6] But al was nought. The kyng eftsone sende a yen his sonde *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] The kyng was, tho he wolde nought, *Ar.* [9] That despit *Ar.* [10] Be a wreke, & that he swor his oth. And but he wolde do his wille, he wolde hym a gaste. So that in to Cornewaille he greithed his ost faste. In a castel of that cost, me cluped Tyntagel, The erl let putte his wif that stored was ful wel. And in anothur hym self he was, for he wolde nought, Yf cas come hit were wonne, bothe to dethe be brought *Ar.*

In anoþer hym self he was, for he nolde nozt,
ȝef cas come, þat heo were boþe to deþe y brozt."
Þe castel, þat þe erl inne was, þe kyng by segede faste,
For [1] he myȝte ys gynnes for schame to þe oþer caste.
[2] Þe he was þer sene nyȝt, and [3] he[4] spedde nozt,
Igerne þe contesse so muche was in ys þozt,
[4] þat he nuste non oþer wyt, ne he ne myȝte for schame
Telle yt bute a pryue knyȝt, Ulfyn was ys name,
þat he truste mest to. And þo þe knyȝt herde þis,
"Syre," he seide, "[5] y ne can wyte, wat red here of ys.
"For þe castel ys so strong, þat þe lady ys inne,
"For ich wene al þe lond ne schulde yt myd strengþe wynne.
"For þe se geþ al aboute, [7] bute entre on þer nys,
"And þat ys vp [8] on harde roches, & so narw wei it ys,
"þat þer may go bote on & on, þat þre men with inne
"Myȝte sle al þe lond, er heo come þer inne.
"And nozt for þan, ȝef Merlyn at þi conseil were,
"ȝef [9] any myȝte, he couþe þe best red þe lere.
Merlyn was [10] sone of send, yseid yt was hym [11] sone,
þat he schulde þe beste red segge, wat were to done.
Merlyn was sory ynow for þe kynge's folye,
And naþeles, "Sire kyng," he seide, "[12] here mot to maistrie.

[1] *F.* he ne myghte. *Et tamen particula negativa deest etiam in Ar.* [2] Tho *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] That almost he loste his witt, ac yut he ne dorste for shame Telle hyt but to a pryue *Ar.* [5] Y can no red, what vs to don is *Ar.* [6] That y wene al this lond hym ne sholde a wynne *Ar.* [7] But on entre ther is, *Ar.* [8] An harde roche, & so narw ywis, *Ar.* [9] Eny man couth or myghte, he wolde the best lere *Ar.* [10] Fulsone *Ar.* [11] Fulsone, *Ar.* [12] Her to by houeth maistrie *Ar.*

"Þe

" þe erl hath twey men hym next, [1] Bryȝthoel & Jordan.
" Ich wol [2] make þi self, ȝef þou wolt, þoru art þat y can,
" [3] Habbe al þo fourme of the erl, as þou were ryȝt he,
" And Olfyn as Jordan, and as Brithoel me.
þis art was al [4] clene y do, þat al [5] changet he were.
Heo þre in þe otheres forme, [6] þe selue at yt were.
Aȝeyn euen [7] he wende forþ, [8] nuste nomon þat cas.
To þe castel heo come ryȝt as yt euene was.
þe porter y se ys lord come, & [9] ys meste priuey twei,
With god herte he lette ys lord in, & ys men beye."
þe contas was glad y now, þo hire lord to hire com,
And eyþer oþer in here armes myd gret joye nom.
þo heo to bedde com, þat so longe a two were,
With hem was so gret delyt, þat bitwene hem þere
Bi gete was þe beste body, þat euer was in þis londe,
Kyng Arthure þe noble mon, þat euer worþ vnderstonde.
þo þe kynge's men nuste amorwe, wer he was bi come,
Heo ferde as wodemen, and wende he were ynome.
[10] Heo a sailelden þe castel, as yt schulde adoun a non.
Heo, þat with inne were, [11] ȝarkede hem echon, Occisio Gorlois.
And smyte out [12] in a fole wille, & foȝte myd here fon;
So þat þe erl was y slawe, & of ys men mony on,

---

[1] Bryghtol *Ar.* *Britahel* Galf. Mon. [2] The make, if thuw wolt, *Ar.* [3] Haue the fourme *Ar.* [4] Sone *Ar.* [5] Changed hii *Ar.* [6] Hem self as hit were *Ar.* [7] Hii *Ar.* [8] Ne wiste no man this cas *Ar.* [9] His moste priuees beye, Als hym thought, and let hem yn, & his seriauntz tweye *Ar.* [10] They assailede the castel egrely, as he shold doun anon *Ar.* [11] Greithed *Ar.* [12] With a full *Ar.*

And þe castel was y nome, & þe folk to sprad þere,
ȝet, þo þei hadde al ydo, heo ne fonde not þe kyng þere.
þe [1] tyþing to þe [2] compas sone was [3] y nome,
þat hire lord was y slawe, and þe castel y nome.
Ac [4] þo þe messinger [5] hym sey þe erl, as hym þoȝte,
þat he hadde so foule [6] ylow, ful sore hym of þoȝte.
þe contasse made some del deol, [7] for no soþnesse heo nuste.
þe kyng, [8] for to glade here, bi clupte hire and custe.
" Dame," he seide, " [9] no sixt þou wel, þat les yt ys al þis?
" Ne wost þou wel ich am olyue? Ich wole þe segge how it ys.
" Out of þe castel [10] stilleliche ych wende al in priuete,
" þat none of myne men yt [11] nuste, for to speke with þe.
" And þo heo myste me to day, and nuste wer ich was,
" [12] Heo ferden riȝt as gydie men, myd wam no red nas,
" And foȝte with þe folk [13] with oute, & habbeþ in þis manere
" [14] Y lore þe castel & hem sclue, ac wel thou wost y am here.

---

[1] Tydyng *Ar.* [2] *L.* contas. *Nam* countesse *in Ar.* [3] *Rectius,* y come, *cum Ar.* [4] *Sed cum regem in specie consulis juxta eam residere inspexissent* [*nuncii,*] *erubescentes admirabantur ipsum, quem in obsidione interfectum deseruerant, ita incolumem prævenisse* Galfr. Mon. [5] Y seigh the Erl right, as hym thought, *Ar.* [6] Y lowe, sore hit hym of thought, *Ar.* [7] But yut forsothe heo nuste *Ar.* [8] Thenne, to glady hure, clupte hure ofte & kuste *Ar.* [9] Ne seist though well, that fals hit is al this? Ne seist though well y am a lyue? Y woll telle hough hit is *Ar. Potest tamen* ne *idem quod* now *hic significare, quo sensu plena distinctione, non interrogandi nota, est utendum, id quod dicendum etiam est de* no *in textu, quod idem atque* now *valere queat.* [10] Priuelỳ *Ar.* [11] Wiste, to speke a word with the. And whanne hii faillede of me to day. *Ar.* [12] Hii ferde y wot as gidy men, with wham no red nas, *Ar.* [13] Ther oute, and haueth *Ar.* [14] I lost the castel and hem self, but y am with the here *Ar.*

" Ac

" Ac for my castel, þat ys ylore, sory ich am y now,
" And for myn men, þat þe kyng and ys power slogʒ.
" Ac [1] my power is now to lute, þer fore y drede sore,
" Leste þe kyng [2] vs nyme here, & sorwe þat we were more.
" þer fore ich wole, how so yt be, wende aʒen þe kynge,
" And make [3] my pays with hym, ar he vs to schame [4] vs" brynge.
Forþ he wende, & het ys men, [5] þat ʒef þe kyng come,
þat þei schulde hym þe castel ʒelde, ar he with strengþe it nome.
þo he come toward ys men, ys owne forme he nom,
And leuede þe erle's fourme, [6] & þe kyng Uter by com.
Sore hym of þoʒte þe erle's deþ, ac in oþer half he fonde
Joye in hys herte, for þe contasse of spoushed was vnbonde.
þo hę hadde þat he wolde, and paysed with ys fon,
To þe contasse he wende aʒen, me let hym in a non.
Wat halt it to telle longe? bute heo were seþþe at on,
In gret loue longe y now, wan yt nolde oþer gon;
And hadde to gedere þis noble sone, þat in þo world ys pere nas,
þe kyng Arture, and a doʒter, Anne hirę name was.

---

[1] Oure power ys now lyte, *Ar.* [2] Her ynne vs nyme, that were sorwe more *Ar.* [3] Ferst my pees with hym, *Ar.* [4] *Recte omittit Ar.* [5] Yf that the *Ar.* [6] And kyng a ye by cam *Ar.*

[1] OCTE and Eose, þis luþer Saxones twey,
In prison were at London, as ich ȝou tolde, beye.
Myd here wardeynes þei spekon, so þat þei boþ y wys
Flowe into [2] Germaine, þat in Alimayne ys,
And grete power gaderede of Saxones þer.
ȝet it hadde beter [3] y bo, þat me hadde y slawe hem er.
In Scotlond heo ariuede, and [4] werreden faste,
And barnde & slow to gronde, & townes a doun caste.
þe kyng lay þo sore syk, heo were glad for þat cas.
An erl þer was of Leycetre, Lot ys name was,
þat [5] strong knyȝt was & god, þe kyng hym by tok ys myȝt,
And þe power of þis lond, [6] with þe heþe men to fyȝte.
Also ys doȝter Anne he ȝif hym to [7] hys[8] wyue.
þis noble [8] erl with þe Britones aȝeyn ys fon wente biliue,
And fauȝt, and slow [9] faste, and þe heþene [10] al so god.
Ac naþeless þe heþene folk faster a ȝen stod.
For þe Brutones nolde for prude aftur þe erl do.
For he nas not kyng, & þer fore þe worse hem [11] com to.
þo þe tiþing com to þe kyng, þat [12] heo so febliche spedde,
He was so sori and so wroþ, þat he ney awedde.

---

[1] Octa and Osa, the luthere Saxones tweye, *Ar.* [2] Germanie *Ar.* [3] Y be, they hadde be queld ere *Ar.* [4] Werrede swithe faste, *Ar.* [5] Staleworth man was & good, the kyng toke hym his myght, *Ar.* [6] With hethene men *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Erl a yenst the Saxones wende forth as blyue, *Ar.* [9] Staleworthly, and *Ar.* [10] Also good. For the hethene men strengere euer with stood. The Brutones eke for pruyte nought for the Erl do *Ar.* [11] Cam to *Ar.* [12] Hii *Ar.*

Bi fore hym he lette brynge ys men, & bi gan hem faste blame,
þat heo for heore prude brozte þis lond to schame.
þider he seide he wolde hym self, þaz he ne myzte on fote, go,
zef any horsbere wold him bere, to wreke hym of ys fo.
Myd god wille he wende forþ in an horse bere,
[1] And ys folc forþ with hym, þat þe balder for hym were.
þe Saxones were so prowde, þat þe kyng com so,
þat [2] vnneþe heo wolde[n] armes on hem do.
For heo seide, it were schame, þat we y armed were.
[3] Nys he more þan half ded y lad in a bere?
þe kyng [4] set vp ys herte hye, & ordeyned ys men faste.
þe Saxones [5] he asailede, and to gronde caste.
So þat sone dayes hem of [6] þozte here prute,
þat heo of þe noble mon þe kyng tolde so [7] lute.
For þer was [8] Otte y slawe, and ys cosyn Oese al so, Occisio Octæ.
And so yt hadde be beter, þat me hadde er y do.
þe Saxones, þat myzte fle, bi gonne to fle faste.
þus [9] þe same dede kyng couþe hem agaste.
" [10] Lo," he seide, " þei clepude me sam ded kyng some,
" And zet ich habbe leuer sam ded hem ouercome,
" þan hol and sond be ouercome; and leuer al so me ys
" For to dye myd honour, þan [11] libbe in schame y wys.

[1] The folk, that wende forth with hym, the bolder for hym were *Ar.* [2] Unnethe for hure prute hii wolde *Ar.* [3] He is more than *Ar.* [4] His herte sett an hygh, & ordenyd his folk faste *Ar.* [5] Hii asaillede, and slough to gronde faste *Ar.* [6] Thought al hure gret pruyte, That hii of the noble man *Ar.* [7] Luyte *Ar.* [8] Octa y slawe, and Osa also, *Ar.* [9] The half dede *Ar.* *Semimortuus* Galfr. Mon. [10] " Lo " half dede kyng," he sede, " ye clupeth me somme, Yut " haue y leuer half dede hem " ouercome, *Ar.* [11] Lyue, *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe Saxones [2] were þo ouercome, ac heo ne leuede ȝet noȝt
Heore schrewede dede, ac to wroþe hele wer heo to deþe y broȝt.
For heore ost euer wax hem com euer mo and mo.
Boþe bi Est and bi Norþ þei dude [3] muchel wo.
þe kyng wolde aȝen hem wende, ac he no moste for ys conseil.
For þe [4] feblor wel he was for þe oþer trauail.
þe Saxones hem hadde ymad in þis lond ywys
Kynges in þre [5] studes, þat al to on y comen ys.
Primi reges Saxonum. Hengist [6] was first kyng of [7] Keng, & Elle in Souþsex,
And seþþe last wast Certyk kyng of Westsex.
For he and Kenryk ys sone come vp at ȝarnemouþe,
And seþþe a duk, þat hatte Port, com vp at Portesmowþe.
Yt was as [8] in ȝere of grace þat God was bore, ich wene,
þat Certik com first, four hundred ȝer & four score & tene.
Kyng he was of West sex, and ys ofspryng al so,
And atte laste þilke kynde al þe oþer wan þer to.
For Port, þike grete duk, com vp here by Souþe,
Me clepuþ [9] yt," þer he first com vp, aftur hym Portesmowþe.

---

[1] The Saxones tho were ouercome, that hii by left hit nought. Hure sherewed herte hem wrother hele to deth forsot h brought. f terwar eft the Saxones ost wax euer mo and mo *Ar.* [2] *Devicti autem Saxones, non idcirco à malitia sua destiterunt, sed aquilonares provincias ingressi, populos incessanter infestabant* Galfr. Mon. [3] Gret *Ar.* [4] Feblor he was tho for his erst travayll *Ar.* [5] Stedes, that come to on now is *Ar.* [6] Furst was kyng in Kent, and Elle *Ar.* [7] *Sic.* [8] In the ȳer *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.*

þus

þus were [1] heo" in werre and [2] wo ymenged þe Saxones,
Som tyme aboue [3] &" some tyme by neþe, [4] here myd þe Britones.
Ac al aboue [5] neuere hii nere ar aftur þe kyng Arture.
[6] Ac suþþe hii wonne al clene out, as ȝe solle here aftur hure.
Uter, þe gode kynge, (of [7] wan we speke bẏ vore,)
[8] Was feble after þat he was in þe hors bere ẏ bore,
þat he moste vor feblesse nede" holde hẏm stẏlle,
[9] þer vore þe luþer Saxons [10] so muche adde her wẏlle.
[11] And ȝute þo hẏẏ ne myȝte hym se, [12] hẏẏ þoȝte wyt traẏson
In some manere hym brynge of lẏue, oþer wyþ poyson.
Hiẏ sende her feble messagers in pouere monne wede,
þat at doles in þe court her mete mẏd oþere bede.
Hii aspẏed in þe court ouer al of þynges alle,
So þat hyi vnder ȝete [13] an welle, neẏ þe halle,
Of wat þe kẏng ofte dronc. vor he ne dronc in such cas
Lutẏl oþer þyng bote þere of, vor þe wadyr so cold was.
Wanne he dronc ekyn wyn, þeramong yt was ẏdo.
And me made metes in þe court mẏd þulke water al so.

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] In wo menged *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Among the *Ar.* [5] Where hii neuere er after *Ar.* [6] But after hym hii wonne al clene, as ye shul after hure *Ar.* [7] Wham *Ar.* [8] Gan faste for to feble an horse beere y bore, So that he moste for feblesse nedes *Ar.* [9] Ther fore *Ar.* [10] To muche *Ar.* [11] ẏut (*omisso* and) tho they ne *Ar.* [12] Hii thoughte in treson For to brẏnge hẏm to deth with som maner poyson. Hii sende fele messageres in poure mennes wede, *Ar.* [13] A well, negh the kynge's halle, Of which the kyng ofte dronk. For in this ilke cas Litel othur thẏng he dronk, but water that cold was. Whanne he dronk also anẏ wyne, ther on hit was y do, And mete me made in the court of thulk welle also *Ar.*

þo

þo þe traytors ỳt vnder ȝete, hii [1] ꝑn venymede wỳþ ỳnne
þe welle about in eche sỳde [2] mỳd her luþer gỳnne.
þat þe water, þat þerof com, poỳson was [3] wel strong.
þe kyng was sone apoỳsond, [4] þo he þerof dronc,
An mo þan an hondred of hys men, ar me wyste were of ỳt com.
Muche ssame were hii wurþe, þat doþ such [5] suỳke dom.
Soþ hym sede Merlyn er, þat he solde þoru puỳson deye.
þe chere men of lond, þo hii ded hym yseỳe,
Deol & sorwe hii made ynou, ac þo þer nas oþer red,
Hii let hym beburye by ys broþer, as he hỳm sulf bede.
[6] Atte mynỳstre of Ambỳsbure, at Stoneheng ỳwys.
Wel aȝte [7] þat he be wurþe stude, þat such sepulture ys.

ARTURE, [8] Uter sone, (of wan we tolde bỳ uore,)
Ye abbyth ỳ hurd hou he was bygete & ỳbore.
þo þỳs kyng was þus ded, þe heye men alle come
Of þe lond to [9] Cỳlỳcestre, and conseyl þerof nome
Vor to make hem a kyng. [10] Vor nede hom drof þerto.
Vor the Saxons wuste, þat þe kyng was ded so,

---

[1] *Fontem namque aggressi sunt nephandi proditores, ipsumque affecerunt veneno, ita ut manans aqua tota corrumpetur* Galf. Mon. [2] With hure enuenymouse gynne *Ar.* [3] Full *Ar.* [4] Whan he *Ar.* [5] Swikeldom. So hỳm seyde Merlyn er he sholde thurgh poỳson deye. The hegh men of the lond, tho hii his deth y seye, *Ar.* [6] By side the toun of Ambresbury, at Stonhenge y wis *Ar.* [7] That be a worthi stede, ther such sepulture is *Ar.* [8] Uthere's sone, (of wham) *Ar.* [9] Cilchestre *Ar.* [10] *Urgebat enim eos necessitas, quia, audito prædicti regis obitu, Saxones concives suos ex Germania invitaverant, & duce Colgrino ipsos exterminare nitebantur* Galfr. Mon.

Hii sende uorthe to Alymayne after more poer blyue,
And þogte þys Brutons al clene of londe dryue.
So þat hii adde ẏwonne al clene þat Norþ londe,
Fram Homber to Cataneys, & adde al in her honde.
Artur was þo ȝong mon of vyftene ȝere vnneþe,
And ȝut al þat londe made [1] hym, after ys fader's deþe,
And [2] began suon eke er such man vorto be,
þat menessolde in none londe ys per nour ẏse.
So large he was & so hende, & [3] al" so de bonere;
So hardy and so gentyl, and of so vayr manere.
[4] þo so muche folc to hẏm come, [5] of kyngtys ȝong & olde,
þat he [6] nadde nozt wel ware wyth such meyne up to holde.
Ac [7] ys herte was euere god, ȝong þey he were,
[8] Vor he þogte of þe Saxons ys spence vp arere.
He bẏgan þo wel sone to arere ẏs baner.
Vor ys prowesse he adde sone gret folc and poer.
He wende toward Euerwyk [9] myd vayr [10] copanye ẏ nou.
þo þe Saxons hyt vnder ȝete, þat he þuderward drou,
Of Scottes, and of Pẏcars, and of hym sulue hii nome,
Gret poer ẏ nou and strong, and aȝen hym come.

---

[1] *Subintellige*, kyng. [2] Thenne bygan such a man to be, That me myghte in non londe no whar his per se *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] And so *Ar.* [5] Of yonge and of olde, *Ar.* [6] Hadde vnnethe wharwith such a meyne holde *Ar.* [7] *Arthurus ergo, quia in illo probitas largitatem comitabatur, statuit Saxones inquietare, ut eorum opibus, quæ ei famulabatur, ditaret familiam* Galfr. Mon. [8] And euere he thoghte of the Saxones his dispenses rere *Ar.* [9] With gret power y nogh *Ar.* [10] *Sic.*

[1] þer

[1] þer was slaȝt in eyþer half, none mercy þer nas.
Ac kyng Arture atte laste (as God wolde) aboue was,
And sywede into Euerwyk [2] Colgrym her cheuenteyn,
And hym, þo he was wyþynne, byseged [3] myd al ys many.
Baldulf, Colgryme's broþer, syx þousend men myd him nom,
And, ys broþer vorto help, toward Euerwyk com.
[4] So he was fram Euerwyk aboute [5] an ten myle,
He [6] at stunte, & þoȝte, þat he wolde myd gyle
Up þe kyng Arture come anonywar by nyȝte,
And so him and al ys folc ssende, ȝyf he myhte.
þe kyng was [7] þerof ywar, he þoȝte to do bote.
Myd syx hondred kynȝtes, & [8] þre þousend men [9] auote,
Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, aȝen hym he sende,
[10] þat aȝen hym come anonywares, by awey þat he wende,
And slou and vere woundede, and monye broȝte to deþe,
So þat þys [11] Baldulf of scapede alyue vnneþe.
þe wyle [12] þat" þe kyng Arture biseged Euerwyk,
Me tolde hym of a gret duc, [13] þat het Theldryk,
þat out of Alemayne com [14] in to Scotlonde so
[15] Myd syx hondred syppuol kynȝtys, & al þe atyl þer to.

---

[1] Ther was slaughter gret y nogh, and mercy lite ther was *Ar.* [2] Colgryn *Ar.* [3] With his myght and mayn. Bathulf Colgryne's brother, *Ar.* [4] And tho he was *Ar.* [5] A *Ar.* [6] Astynte, *Ar.* [7] Her of y war, and thoghte her of do bote. With six *Ar.* [8] Foure *Ar.* *Sed ut Codex noster Harleyanus in* Galfr. Mon. [9] A fote, *Ar.* [10] An vn ywar to falle on hym, by weye as hii wende. The Erl brak vp his bussh-ment, & broghte manyon to dethe *Ar.* [11] Ilke Bathulf ascapede a lyue vnnethe *Ar.* [12] *Deest Ar.* [13] Me clupede Cheldryk, *Ar.* [14] To Scotlonde tho *Ar.* [15] With VI. hundred shupfull of men, and hure atyr ther to. That was power

þere was so gret poyr in to an londe y lad.
þo þe kyngy's conseyl wuste þys, hyt was som dele adrad.
þe kyng Arture hii radde anon, to London vorte wende,
To nyme þer ys conseyl, wuch were best ȝende,
Leste such poer come vp hym, and hym ssende.
þe kyng dude aftur her rede, and to Londone wende.
þere he hulde ys Parlement, wat were best to done.
[1] þo [2] þat he and ys conseyl at one red were sone.
[3] þo þat to þe lasse Brutayne þe kyng sone sende
To Howwel, kyng of þe lond, þat he to hym wende
To helpe hym in such nede, and that hym vnderstode
þat kunde yt wolde þat he dude, vor hii were of one blode.
þe kyng Arture's syster's sone þys kyng Howwel was,
[4] And þe kyngys sone of lasse Brytayne, & none nerer kunde
þer nas.
þo þe messager wyþ þe tydyng to kyng Howwel com,
Hys conseyl wel hastelyche in such nede he nome,
Vor to helpe ys [5] neueu, and ys kynedom.
[6] Myd vyftene þousend kynȝtes into þys londe he com.

---

power wonder gret to on londe y ladde. Tho the kyng hurde this, he was somdel a dradde. The kynge's counsail radde hym a non, to London forto wende, To counsaille hogh he myght best his enemyes a shende *Ar.*

[1] So that *Ar.* [2] *Communitandem assensu illato, mittuntur Armoricam nuncii ad regem Hoëlum, qui ei calamitatem Britanniæ notificarent. Erat autem Hoëlus filius sororis Arthuri, ex Budicio, rege Armoricorum Britonum, generatus* Galfr. Mon. [3] To the lasse Brutayne forto sende sone *Ar.* [4] The kynredene of hem no ferther nas *Ar.* [5] Kynnesman, *Ar.* [6] With XV. thousend of men to this *Ar.*

At

At Souþhamtone [1] he com vp, & þo hyi to gadere come
Þys tueye kyngys hii custe hem, & hii olupte hem ylome.
Þo hii adde her folc y set, [2] as ryzt was in such cas,
Vorþward toward Lyncolne hii wende [3] myd god pas.
Þere hii come & mette hym, & strong bataýle smyte þere,
So þat moo þan syx þousend of þe Saxon aslawe were,
Wat aslawe wat adrent, so þat atte laste,
Þo [4] hii ne seye oþer won, hii gonne to fle vaste
In to a wode þer by syde: and [5] þo hii þer in come,
Hem þozte hii were sykere ynou, & toke þe lasse gome.
Þe kyng sywede [6] aſter, & byseged hem aboute.
[7] Ac" among þe [8] tren hii wuste hem, þat hii nadde nodoute."
Þo þe kyng Arture yseý, þat hii nolde out come,
A boute þe wode he let fulle þe grete tren sone,
And leyde ech vpe oþer aboute in ech ende,
Þat yt was, as yt were, awal þat hii ne solde out wende.
Þre [9] dawes & þre nyzt mete les hii wuste hem so,
Þat hii nuste hou on take, ne wat vor hunger do.
Þe kyng" Arture hii bysozte mercy [10] atte ende,
Þat he granted hem in pes out of ys londe wende,

[1] This kynges tweyne furst to gedre come. Aither othur clippe gan, and kuste to gedre y lome *Ar.* [2] As hit fel in such *Ar.* [3] A ful good pas. The Brutones and the Saxones smyte a gret bataille there, So that sixty thousand [*sed*, sex milia *in* Galfr. Mon.] Saxones ther y slawe were, And fele ther of were a dreynt, so *Ar.* [4] Hii seygh non othur won, *Ar.* [5] Whenne *Ar.* [6] After faste, and *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Trees hii kepte hem longe, for al Arthure's route *Ar.* [9] Dayes & thre nyght hii were y kepte so, That hii nuste for hungre What hii myghte do. Of kyng *Ar.* [10] Atten ende, *Ar.*

An

An hii granted hym al her god, þat hii hyder ladde,
Gold and seluer and tresour, al clene þat hii adde.
Hii [1] bẏhete hym eke ech ȝer, to bere hẏm truage
Out of her londe, and þerto [2] take hym god ostage.
þe kẏng þoru ys conseyl [3] encented wel her to,
And god ostage of nom, þe truage vor to do;
And atel al her god, and let him al bar wende.
And ȝut hym of þoȝte sone, þat he was hem so hende.
Mẏd her gold & seluer & myd her tresour he mẏȝte
Susteẏnẏ gode wẏle hys ost vorto fyȝte.
Ac ȝut þẏs luþere false men, in þe see þo hii come,
Turnede aȝen to suẏkedome, and anoþer red nome.
Atte hauene of Tottenas hii gonne [4] eſt arẏue,
And dude hym alond, & rewede in Deuenyssyre blẏuc.
And so uorþ in Somersete, [5] and" muche wo gonne do
Al anone to Seuerne, and to Baþe [6] so,
And bysegede þe [7] thoun, ac wyt þoute hii were.
Vor þe kyng byuore was hii bygonne her werre þere.
Vor þe kyng was toward Scotlond, & awreke hym þoȝte
Of Scottes and of Þigars, þat euer vnele hẏm wroȝte.

[1] *Promiserunt quoque, se daturos ei tributum ex Germania, obsidesque inde mansuros* Galfr. Mon. [2] Make hym good *Ar.* [3] Assentede ther to, And ostage of hem nam truage to do. At helde hem & al hure ȝood, & let hem bar wende *Ar.* [4] Up arẏue, And come a londe, & robbede in Deuenesshire as blyue *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] Also, *Ar.* [7] Toun, but out hii holde were. The kyng fer by Northe was forto werry there. Of Scottes & of Picardz a wreke hym he thoghte, That euermore to his lond muche shame wroghte. The tydynge to hym com of thes Saxones tho, He wiste neuere hoder turne so wo was hym tho. Of Scottes *Ar.*

þo þe tydyng to hym come of þe Saxons [1] we,
He nuste in weþer ende turne, so vol he was of wo.
Of þe Scottes" he wolde awreke be, zyf tyme hym þerto zeue,
Ac he [2] nolde vor non þyng þe Saxons byleue.
[3] Howwel, ys scyster sone, kyng of þe oþer Brutayne,
Mest in ys herte was, vor anguysse to playne,
(Vor he lay byuore syk) þat he solde by leue hym þere,
Laste þe Scottes hym dude ssame, oþer þat he ded were.
He byleuyd hym poer ynou, and toward Somersete
Wende toward þe Saxons, vor þat nolde he nozt lete."
þo he come to Somersete, and þe Saxons sey,
He houede, & spec to ys men þes wordes al an hey:
" Vor [4] þys luþer Saxons [5] abbyt gret dedeyn
" Vorto holde me treuþe, zyf ych abbe eny mayn,
" Ich chylle treuþe holde to Jhesu Crist treuly (zyf ych may)
" And þat blod of ys kunde floc awreke zut to day."
" Armeþ zou nou hastelyche, armeþ zou anon,
" Vor we ssolle to day [6] myd God help ouercome vr fon.

---

[1] We *idem est quod Anglo-Sax.* þa *sive* þæ, i. e. wo *vel* sorrow. *Sed* þo *(ut reor) est reponendum è Cod. Ar. ut prius* þo, when, *posterius* then *signet.* [2] Wolde for no thyng *Ar.* [3] But for Howel, his suster sone, kyng of lasse Brutayne, At Alclud sore sik lay, he was in gret payne, And that he moste nedely byleue hym tho there, Leste the Scottes dude hym shame, or elles that he dede were. He bileft a power with hym, and toward Somersete He wende a yen the Saxones, he wolde hit noght for lete *Ar.* [4] These *Ar.* [5] Haueth of vs dedeyne, And haueth thus y broke hure oth, yf y haue myght and mayne, I make a vogh to Jhesu Christ, (to holde, yf y may,) The blood, that they haueth shad, to venge yut to day *Ar.* [6] Thurgh Gode's help ouercome oure fon. The kyng at the gynnynge let an hange anon

Ac þe kỳnng atte bỳgỳnnyg let hang echon
Her ostages vor þe treson, he ne bỳleuede noȝt on.
þo þỳs [1] godē folc ȝare was [2] in to batayle rỳde,
Seyn Dubrỳc, þe archebyssop of Carleon, gan abỳde,
And wende [3] vp a lutc hul amỳdde þỳs companye:
" ȝe Crystỳne men," he seyde, " of [4] soō noble seỳnore,
" þat beþ Gode's owe lỳmỳs, þoru ȝoure Crystendom,
" [5] þenc he on God, þat vor vs deỳde, & on [6] þỳs kỳnedom.
" Fyȝteþ vor ȝure [7] kunde, and defendeþ ȝoure ryȝte.
" þencheþ þe nede of þe londe, & of [8] vr louerdē myȝte.
" And ȝyf enỳ of ȝou ys aslawe here in þỳs fyȝte
" To sauỳ [9] þe lond folc vor þe londe's rỳȝte,
" He syweþ purlỳche God, þat ȝef ỳs owe lyf here,
" To sauy vs synneuol men fram þe deuele's poer.
" And wo so here ys aslawe, ỳs deþ hym sal be
" In [10] lesnesse of al ỳs sỳnnys, & ỳs soule ssalle fle
" And be ybroȝt byuore God, ar [11] þat bodỳ be cold.
He [12] asouled al þỳs folc, þo he adde al þys ỳ told.
[13] þat folc þoru ỳs prechynge so god wylle nom þere,
[14] þat hem þoȝte echewỳle fỳue, in bataỳle ar hii were.

anon Alle hure ostages, he lefte a lyue non *Ar.*

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] In bataille for to ryde, Therchebisshop Dobryght bade hem alle abyde, *Ar.* [3] Upon a litel hulle among this *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] Thenketh on God, *Ar.* [6] His *Ar. sed rectius* þỳs. [7] Kynde blod, and also for your ryght *Ar.* [8] Our Lorde's *Ar.* [9] The Christene fey, and his Lorde's ryght, he sỳweth purly God, that yaf *Ar.* [10] Foryieuenge *Ar.* [11] The body *Ar.* [12] Asoilede *Ar.* [13] The people *Ar.* [14] That euery while hem thoghte ten, er hii were there. The kyng thanne let arme hym self in hauberk noble & riche. An helm of gold vpon his hed, nowher non hitt liche *Ar.*

Þe [1] kynng was aboue yarmed wyþ haubert noble & rýche,
Wýþ helm of gold on ys heued, (nas nour hým ýlýche)
Þe fourme of a dragon þeron [2] was ycast.
Hys sseld, þat het Prydwen, was þanne ý honge wast
About ys ssoldren, and þeron ý peynt was and ýwort
Þe ýmage of our Lady, inwan was al ys þozt.
Mýd ýs suerd he was ýgurd, þat [3] so// strong was & kene,
Calýbourne yt was ýcluped, [4] nas nour no such yc wene.
In ys rýzt hond ýs lance he nom, þat ycluped was Ron,
Long & gret [5] & strong ynou, hym ne mýzte atsytte non.
He þozte al [6] on Jhesu Criste, and ýs men echon,
Upe þe doune aboue Baþe hii [7] mytte mýd her fon.
Hii smýte batayle strong ý nou, þat al long daý ýlaste.
Þe Saxons in her syde stode euere azen vaste.
Mýche folk þer was ýnon aslawe in eýþer sýde.
Þo þe nyzt vp hem come, þat hii ne myzte no leng abýde,
[8] Up an toret of an [9] herre hulle þe Saxons wende þere,
Þat þe heye hulle to hým was a castel, as ýt were.
Amorazc, þo yt daý was, adoun eft hii alyzte,
And in batayle strong ynou býgonne ef sone to fyzte,

---

[1] *Ipse vero Arthurus, lorica, tanto rege digna, indutus, auream galeam, simulachro draconis insculptam, capiti adaptat* Galfr. Mon. [2] Was his crest His shild, that het Pridewen, aboute his nekke he kest. A cros ther on was peynt, and on a corner An ymage of oure Lady on that sheld he ber. With his sweord *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Perlees as y wene *Ar.* [5] And poynted wel, myght hit of sitte non *Ar.* [6] In *Ar.* [7] Mette with *Ar.* [8] Up the cop of an hull the Saxones wende there, For to be refuyt to hem, and castel, as hit were. A morwe as sone as hit was day, doun hii a light, *Ar.* [9] *L.* heye.

And

And slowe vaste in eyþer half, þat reuþe ẏt was ẏnou.
þo þe kyng Arture ẏ seẏ, þat me so vaste ẏs men slou,
Hẏs herte he gan vp arere, þat he nadde þe maẏstrye,
And dude ẏs wẏlle [1] al to God, & on ẏs moder Marie,
And Calẏbourne, ẏs gode suerd, [2] mẏd gode ernest adrou,
And smot aboute [3] in euþer syde to grounde & þard ẏnou,
And four hondred men, ar he reste, ẏs owe honde he slou,
An syxtẏ and ten al so, þe asaut was somdel tou.
And þer to nadde he oþer help, bote God & Seẏnte Marie,
An Calybourne ẏs gode suerd, to do suche maẏstrẏe.
þo ẏs men ẏseẏe þẏs, after vaste hii drowe,
And to grounde aboute smẏte, & þe Saxons vaste slowe.
Colgrẏm, þat her maẏster was, and [4] Baldulf, ẏs broþer,
Aslawe were at þulke asaut, & also monẏ [5] a noþer.
Vor monẏ þousend þere were aslawe, & Teldryc atte laste,
Hẏs felawes þo he seẏ aslawe, bẏgan to fle vaste."
þo þẏs batayle was ẏdo, to þe kyng com message,
þat þe Scottes & [6] Pẏgars dude hẏm gret out rage,
[7] And syre Howwel ẏs neueu, kyng of þe oþer Brutannẏe,
[8] þat sẏk [9] daẏ, as ẏch seẏde er, byseged mẏd al her maẏne

[1] Al on God, and his moder *Ar.* [2] With ernyst vp he drogh, *Ar.* [3] In aither half to grounde and faste slogh. Foure hundred vnder his hond with his sweord gon deẏe, Thurgh the help of our Lord and his moder Marie. The kynge's men seigh this, & after hym faste drogh, *Ar.* [4] Bathulf *Ar.* [5] Anothur. Than thes men thus were slawe, Cheldrik atte laste, Tho he segh non other won, gan to fle faste *Ar.* [6] Picardes *Ar.* [7] And that Howel *Ar.* [8] That sik was, as I seyde er, by seged with hure mayne *Ar.* [9] *Lege*, lay.

And oþer holy chyrche þynges [1] bare vorþe echon.
Hyy [2] welle alle adoun eke byuore þe kyng anon,
And bed hym, vor ys suete loue, þat deyde on þe rode,
þat he hadde reuþe of hem, & of [3] ys" soule vnderstode.
[4] Wanne he adde þer byuore of hem yslawe y nowe,
[5] þat he soffrede þulke lybbe, þat he follyche alle ne slowe;
And þat he som hurne of þe londe grauntede hem þere,
War ynne hii leuede, & euermo seruage hym bere.
þe kyng, vor pyte [6] herof, bygan to wepe sore,
And nom of hem sykernesse, þat hii ne solde mys do nanmore,
And graunted hem [7] annende lond, to wonye ynne in seruage,
To bere [8] þerof hym and ys eueremor truage.
Nou [9] were þer myd hym þre men, (þat of ryzte kunde come
Of kynges of þulke lond, [10] vorte Saxons hem bynome)
Auncel, and Vryan, and Lot þe þrydde was,
þat spousede þe kynge's [11] suster, (ze abbyþ yhurd þat cas,)
And adde by hyre tueye sones, syre Wawen þe hende,
þe oþer het Modred, þat þe kyng bytrayde [12] atte nende.

[1] *Lege*, bare votte, *sive*, *ut in Ar.* barfot. *Nam* nudis pedibus *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] Felle *Ar.* [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] And suthe he *Ar.* [5] A fewe, that lefte, hii prayde hym saue, and holde hem al his owe. And that som heorne of the lond he wolde hem graunte there, Wher inne hii myghte lyue, and euere aftur truage hym bere *Ar.* [6] Hadde reuthe, he segh hem wepe so sore *Ar.* *aliter atque* Galfr. Mon. [7] An ende of lond, to lyue inne in seruage, *Ar.* [8] Ther fore hym *Ar.* [9] *Aderant ibi tres fratres, regali prosapia orti, Loth videlicet, atque Urianus, nec non Auguselus, qui antequam Saxones prævaluissent principatum illarum partium habuerant* Galfr. Mon. [10] Fort Saxones it hem by nome) Aguissel, & Urien, and Loth *Ar.* [11] Anne *addit Ar.* [12] After aten ende *Ar.*

þe kyng Arture þys þre men kynges made þere
[1] Ech of ys ryȝte ertage, as her elderne were.
[2] Auncel kyng of pur Scotland, and [3] Vrýan ys broþer
[4] Kyng of lond of Murýfycens, vor he was ner þen anoþer,
Of þe contreye of [5] Ledeneseye Lot he made kýng,
[6] And of al contreye þat þerto vel, & þat was muche þyng.
þo he adde al þýs lond ýbroȝt and Scotlond al so
Al clene in rýȝte to ys wýlle, anoþer he moste do.
He spousede a noble wýf [7] Guerwar her name was
Of þe heye kunne of Rome, no vaýror womman nas.

AS sone as Somer come, to Yrlond he gan wende,
Vor to afaytý þat lond, [8] & to wýnne ech ende.
Gyllam, kyng of lond, ar he þuder com,
Volc, as ýt were wyþoute noumbre, aȝen hym he nom.
Hii com [9] & ýmette hem sone, & gret batayle hii smýte,
Ac þe kyng Arture was aboue, as me maý wel ýwyte.
And þe kyng Gýllam was ýnome, and so al þat lond
[10] By certeý conuenant was in kýng Arture's hond.
[11] Fram [12] þan he wende sone to þe lond of Ys lond,
And wan hýt al clene to hým, and al þat he wond."

---

[1] Euery in his heritage *Ar.* [2] Anguissel *Ar.* [3] Vrien *Ar.* [4] Kyng he made of Moreff, for he was ner than othur, *Ar.* [5] Liones Loth he *Ar.* [6] With al the portenaunce ther to, and that was gret a [*l.* a gret] thing *Ar.* [7] Gunnore *Ar.* [8] And wynne in euery ende. Gwillamour, kyng of that lond, *Ar.* [9] And mette with hem sone, & gret bataille smyte, *Ar.* [10] By accordement *Ar.* [11] *Hæc duo carmina omittit Ar.* [12] *Subjugatis itaque totius Hyberniæ partibus, classem suam direxit in Yslandiam, eamque debellato sibi populo subjugavit* Galfr. Mon.

[1] So

And greyþede ys noble ost, and dude hym in þe weye,
And dude hym so in to see, and vorst to Norþweye.
Nou was þe kyng of Norþweye ded þer by uore by cas,
And Lot, þat was ys oþom, þe kynge's neueu was,
And þe kyng hym adde mad ys eyr þer byuore longe;
Ac þe men" of Norþeweye nolde vor prute hym [1] vnder vonge,
Ac adde ymad anoþer man kyng of þe londe,
þat agen þe kyng Arture hopede wel at stonde.
Chyld [2] Waweyn, Lotys sone, þulke tyme was
Bote of tuelf ger, & þe pope of Rome bytake was
To norys þoru þe kyng Arture, & þulke tyme ryght
þe pope hym tok armes, & ys owe honde made hym [3] kynght.
[4] As þe kyng Arture, as ych seyde, to Norweye com,
þe kyng of londe agen hym þen wey sone nom
Myd ys poer, and smyte an batayle strong ynou,
And ssedde blod in eyþer half, and muche folc me slou.
Ac her poer of Norweye ydo was anon,
þe kyng hym sulf was sone aslawe, & [5] ys men monyon.
þe Brutons hym sturede þo, and slowe and barnde vaste,
So þat hii wonne al clene Norþweye atte laste.
þer after hii wonne Denemarch, vorto do seruage
To þe kyng Arture euermo, and to bere hym truage.
He [6] made Lot ys oþom kyng of Norþweye,
þer [7] after toward France hii dude hym in þe weye.

---

[1] A vonge *Ar.* [2] *Erat tunc Walwanus, filius prædicti Loth, XII. annorum juvenis, obsequio Sulpicii papæ ab avunculo traditus, à quo arma recepit* Galfr. Mon. [3] Knyght *Ar.* [4] Whan the *Ar.* [5] His men negh echon *Ar.* [6] *Quibus subactis, cum Loth in regem Norguegiæ promovisset, navigavit Arthurus ad Gallias, factisque turmis patriam undique vastare incepit* Galfr. Mon. [7] Afterward toward France he dude *Ar.*

[1] Nou

[1] Nou adde France þulke tyme þe emperour Leon ;
And he bytoc yt in warde an duc, þat het Follon,
þat hardy body was and god, and poer adde y nou.
þo he wuste, þat þe þyng Arture þuder drou,
[2] Alle þe kynȝtes and þe folc, þat in ys poer were,
He nom, & mette þe Brutons, & smyte batayle þere.
Ac al þat hem was lute wurþ, vor aȝen þe kyng Arture
And ys poer hii myȝte lute wule dure.
Vor [3] euere, wanne he [4] nom alond, al þe bacheleryе,
þat aȝt was in þe lond, he [5] nom in ys companye
[6] And of ys maynage vp ys coust, & vor he was so hende,
Ech noble man vawe was myd hym vorto wende.
[7] And beste partye of Fraunce to hym al so drou.
[8] Vor he was so large & hende, þat to hym com poer ynou.
Vor me ne tolde welney of no mon, noþer here ne þere,
Bote he myd þe kyng Arture in som manere were.

---

[1] Nogh hadde Fraunce thulke tyme a lord, het Frollon, (That vndertok the gouernaunce thurgh emperour Leon) That hardy man was & strong, and hadde power y nogh *Ar.* [2] Alle maner of men, of his power that were, He toke, and with the Brutones mette, & smyten a bataille there *Ar.* [3] *Nam Arthurum juventus insularum omnium, quas subjugaverat, comitabatur. unde tantum perhibebatur habere exercitum, quantus erat difficile ab ullo posse superari* Galfr. Mon. [4] Wan a lond *Ar.* [5] Toke *Ar.* [6] And of mayne at his cost. and for he was so hende, Euery noble man was glad with hym forto wende. And the best part of Fraunce *Ar.* [7] *Famulabatur quoque ei melior pars Gallicanæ provinciæ, quam sua largitate sibi obnoxiam fecerat* Galfr. Mon. [8] For his largeste & hendeneste, that hym com folk y nogh *Ar.*

[1] þo

[1] þo þe duc Follon ỳseỳ, þat ỳs poer noþỳng nas,
He flen in to Parỳs mỳd wel quỳc pas,
And astorede [2] þen toun, and strengþe hỳm aboute.
Kỳng Arture and ys poer aseged hỳm wỳþoute.
So þat wỳþỳnne [3] a monþe þe duc Follon ỳseỳ,
þat ỳs men, vor defaute and vor hunger, deỳde nỳ,
And þat ỳs poer nas noþỳng, aȝen kỳng Arture
[4] He þoȝte do ỳs owe body, wỳle he mỳȝte dure.
Vor he was strong man & hardỳ, þe strengoste of ỳs londe.
To þe kỳng Arture he sende, þat he ssolde [5] hỳm vnder stonde
[6] To do an bataỳle hem sulue tuo mỳd her owe honde,
And weþer so myȝte aboute be were louerd of oþere's londe.
þo kyng Arture hurde [7] þỳs, no gladdere man nas.
He sende word, þat al prest to such bataỳle he was.
Sỳkernesse [8] & trouþe [9] ỳplỳȝt, of þys vorewarde hii nome.
So þat, at certeỳn daỳ ỳset, to þỳs bataỳle hii come
A lute wỳþoute Parỳs, [10] atỳled wel ỳ nou.
Muche was [11] þat folc aboute, þat to þỳs bataỳle drou.

[1] Whan that Frolle vnderstod, that he sconfited was, He flegh in to Parys with a quyke paas, *Ar.* [2] The toun, and strengthed hym a boute *Ar.* [3] A monthe day duk Flolle y seigh, That his men in defaute for honger deide negh, *Ar.* [4] He thoghte with his oweue bodỳ, while he myght endure *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] And do the bataille, yf he wolde, with his owen honde, And whether myghte a boue be were maister of othere's londe *Ar.* [7] This, gladder neuere he nas *Ar.* [8] *Dato igitur in amba parte fœdere, conveniunt uterque in insulam, quæ erat extra civitatem, populo expectante quid de eis erat futurum* Galfr. Mon. [9] Hii plight, and hure forward nome. So that at a day sett to bataille hii come *Ar.* [10] Arayed wel y nogh *Ar.* [11] The folk *Ar.*

[1] Hii fondede her steden vorst, & her lancen suþþe hii nome,
And wyþ hard dunt & gret yre to gadere suþþe hii come.
[2] þe kyng Arture agen þe brest ys felawe uorst anbytte
Agen þe breste, þat he vel, & ne myȝte noleng sytte.
As sone as he myȝte turne ys hors, ys suerd he dron þer,
Vor to asayly hym þerwyþ, ac þe oþer was vppe er,
And [3] ȝef þe sted myd ys sper agen brest deþe's wounde,
So þat boþe stede and kyng leye sone at grounde.
[4] þo þe [5] Brutons seye þys, hii vor bere vnneþe,
þat hii ne breke þe couenant, & brogte þen oþer to deþe.
Ac kyng Arture keuerede vp, & asaylede Follon vaste,
And smyte eyþer oþer her & þer, & harde duntes caste,
So þat Follon myd a stroc þe Brutons sore agaste,
Vor þe kyng Arture agen þe frount he smot atte laste,
þat, ȝyf he nadde wyþ þe selde somdel þe dunt yhent,
Syker he hym adde aslawe, al out yssent.
þo kyng [6] Arture yt yuelde, and yseye al so ys blod
Vp ys haubert & ys sselde, he was neye vor wraþþe wod.

---

[1] Hii a saide hure stedes furst, hure lances *Ar.* [2] And kyng Arthur on the brest Frolle so hitte, That he fel doun to grounde, he myghte no lengor sitte *Ar.* [3] Smot his stede in the breste, & yaf hym dethe's woude *Ar.* [4] *Desunt aliquammulta in Ar. utpote in quo folium unum integrum* (fol. sc. LXIX. *quatuor duntaxat versibus exceptis) hîc loci excisum esse, particulamque unius paginæ (sive faciei secundæ folii* LXVIII.) *plane vacuam, video, in cujus tamen particulæ vacuæ margine* The rounde table of Arthur *scriptum legitur.* [5] *Britones ut regem prostratum viderunt, timentes eum peremptum esse, vix potuerunt retineri, quia rupto fœdere in Gallos unanimiter irruerent* Galfr. *Mon.* [6] *Manante igitur sanguine, cum Arthurus loricam & clipeum rubere vidisset, ardentiori ira accensus est, atque erecto totis viribus caliburno, impressit*

a *cum*

He drou syre Calybourne ys suerd, þat was so gode,
An anowarde þe helm wyþ wel stourdy mod
þen oþer he smot, and to clef þat heued myd þe wounde.
He vel and ssoc þe helm, and deyde in astounde.
þo þys dede was ydo, and þere oþer was ded,
þut conseyl of France sone nom ys red,
And to þe kyng Arture hym zolde ech man þat was wys,
And zolde hym vp al þat lond, & þe keyen of Parys.
þys was lo þe Cornwellyssebor, of wan Merlyn spec ynou,
And clere leme of þe sterre, þat ouer France drou.
Som was ycome, as he sede, of þe noble kyng Arture,
Wel me ssal her after of hym zut yhure.
þo he adde ywonne France þus, & al þys was ydo,
þys noble kyng Arture delde ys men atuo.
[1] þe kyng Howwel he bytoc, and þe oþer princes al so,
þat odel of ys ost to wende to Peyto
Vor to wynne þat lond, and hym sulf he wolde wende
Vor to wynne seynorye aboute in oþer ende.
Kyng Howwel wyþ ys poer wan sone Peyto
Al to kyng Arture's wylle, and Gascoyne al so.
þe kyng won Normandye, and also god Aungeo,
And wyþynne anye zer al þys was ydo.

---

eum per galeam in caput Follonis, quod in duas partes dissecuit. Quo vulnere cecidit Follo, tellurem calcaneis pulsans, & spiritum in auras emisit Galfr. Mon.

[1] *Et unam partem Hoelo duci commisit, præcepitque illi, ut, ad expugnandum Guitardum, Pictaviensium ducem, iret; ipse vero cum reliqua parte ceteras provincias sibi subjugare vacavit* Galfr. Mon.

þe kyng wende þo to Parys, þo he adde ẏdo al þys,
And al heẏ men of lond þuder come ẏwẏs.
Her homages of hem, and her seruyse, he nom,
And þe lawes, as he wolde hẏm sulf, sette on þe kẏnedom.
He ȝef þat lond of Normandẏe Bedwer ẏs boteler,
And þat lond of Aungeo [1] Kaxe ẏs panter,
And oþer þẏng oþer heẏe men, & sẏker ẏt made ẏnou,
And suþþe aboute Leẏnte toward þẏs lond drou.

ÞO þe kẏng Arture com here in þẏs londe,
And so muche lond adde ẏwonne, & adde al so an honde,
In yoe & blẏsse he was ẏnou, & alle þat wyþ hẏm were,
And aȝen Wẏttesonetyd yt was in þe ȝere.
He þoȝte þe heẏe feste of Wytesontyd do
Wẏþ honour among ẏs men, and þat alle come þer to,
Boþe kẏnges and dukes, and erles echon,
Barons and kẏnȝtes, squeers monẏon,
Laẏdẏes and maydens, and ech mon þat aȝt were
In enẏ lond, þat ẏs was, þat hii were alle þere.
Of ẏs rounde table ẏs ban aboute he sende,
þat eche a Wẏtesonetẏd to Carleon wende,
A toun þat ẏs in Glammorgan vp þe water of Osc ẏdo,
A lute bysyde Seuerne, in murye stede al so.
Vor me maẏ þere in þe Souþhalf al by the see lede
Fram oþer londes god ẏnou, to endy such a dede.
[2] In oþer alf beþ grete wodes, lese and mede al so,
So þat þer vas no defaute such noble þyng to do.

[1] *F.* Kaẏe. *Nam* Gaioque Dapifero *in* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Hîc denuo pergit Cod. Ar.*

þer come to þys rounde table, as he sende ys ban,
[1] Aunsel kyng of Scotlond, and al so Vryan,
þat was kyng of Murýfýccns, & also of Norþ Walys
Cadwal, and also [2] Scater kyng of Souþ Walys,
Cador kyng of Cornwayle, and erchebyssopes al so
Of Londone, and of Euerwyk, and of [3] Carlen þer to.
Erles þer come ek monyon, as þe erl of Gloucestrye
[4] Morond, and Ingomer erl of Leycestre,
[5] Maron erl of Warewyk, and Cursal of Cycestre,
Galluc erl of Salesbury, Jonatal of Dorcestre,
Kymmar erl of [6] Canterbury, of Baþe syre [7] Vrgen,
Bose" erl of Oxenford, þat were alle noble men.
þe barons & the kyngtys, þat of hys londe aday
At hys rounde table were, noman telle ne may.
Kynges þer were eke of ylys, [8] ar þe kyng of yrlonde
[9] Gyllam, and also Malueys kyng of yslonde,
Lot kyng of Norþeweye, and [10] Doldam of Godlond,
And þe kyng of Orcadas, & of Denemarch ych vnderstonde.
Kynges eke of bygende see, as Kay of Aungeo,
Bedwer of Normandye, Guyder of Peyto,
Lygger of Colonye, and al so the [11] dosse pers
Of France were þere echon, þat so noble were and fers.

---

[1] Anguissel *Ar.* [2] Estanter *Ar.* [3] Carlyon *Ar.* [4] Morwid *Ar. in quo &* Dude ywan *pro* Ingomer. [5] Mauran of Wircetre, [*Maren Gwigornensis, quæ nunc Warguic dicitur*, Galfr. Mon.] Cursal erl of Chestre, Aleth of Salesbury, Jonathas of Dorchestre, Kynmar *Ar.* [6] Kent, *Ar.* [7] Vrbygen, Boso *Ar.* [8] As *Ar.* [9] Gwillamour, & Maunsel kyng of Islonde, *Ar.* [10] Doldan *Ar.* [11] Dusze *Ar.*

Hys

Hỳs neueu kỳng Howwel of þe lasse Brutenỳe al so
[1] Mỳd so vaỳr folc þuder com, & mỳd so gret charge þerto
Of mules, of cartes and of hors mỳdde alle gode,
þat þer nas non so wỳttỳ man, þat ỳt al vnderstode.
[2] þer nas [3] bỳtuene þys & Spanỳe no prince wiþoute al þỳs,
þat nas at þỳs rounde table, & at þỳs feste ỳwỳs.
And no wonder. Vor þe kynge's los so wyde sprong ỳnou
Of godenesse & of cortesye, [4] þat her herte to hỳm drou.

ÞO þỳs heỳe men were alỳcome, & þe heỳe tỳme also
Of Wỳtsontyd, þe feste vor to do,
[5] þe herchebyssopỳs were ỳbrozt, to sette þe kỳnge's croune
On ỳs heued. Ac [6] Seỳn Dubrỳc of sulue tỳme
Was erchebỳssop. hỳm byuel þe croune on hỳm do,
And þe seruỳse of holy chỳrche ek, þat byuel þer to.
þo croune was on ỳs heued, and ỳdo was ech oþer þỳng,
Tueỳe erchỳbỳssopys ladde þys noble kỳng

---

[1] With muche poeple thuder com, and gret nobleie ther to *Ar.* [2] Ther was no prynce by twixte Spayne & Alemayne of pris, *Ar.* [3] *Præter hos non remansit princeps alicujus pretii citra Hispaniam, quin ad istud edictum veniret. Nec mirum. Largitas namque Arthuri, per totum mundum divulgata, cunctos in amorem illius illexerat* Galfr. Mon. [4] That euery man to hym drogh *Ar.* [5] Thre Erchebisshopes were come, to sette on the kynge's croune. But Seynt Dubrice, that Erchebisshop was of the selue toune, (As hit was his costume that offys te do) Dude the seruise of holi churche, that byfel ther to. Tho the croune. [6] *Dubricius ergo, quoniam in sua diocesi curia tenebatur, paratus ad celebrandum obsequium, hujus rei curam suscepit* Galf. Mon.

To þe chẏrche of heẏe munstre. And þer ȝeode bẏuore hẏm þere
Four kyngs, and four suerdes of golde bẏuore hẏm bere;
Vorst þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe kẏng of Norþwalys,
And þe kyng of Cornwale, and þe kẏng of Souþwalys.
[1] Oþer bẏssopys and prelats by uore þẏs kyng Arture
And clerkes songe as rẏȝt was, þat joye yt was to hure.
In [2] oþer alf þe quenc was [3] of erchebyssopys al so
ẏlad, and ẏcrouned cke, as ryȝt was vor to [4] do,
And to noþer munstre ẏlad, & four quenes bẏ uore hẏr wende,
þe four kẏnges wẏues, þat we bẏ uore nemde,
[5] And foure wyte colfren byuore hẏr also bere.
þe companye of laẏdẏes wel grete also were.
þo [6] hii were to chyrche ybroȝt eẏþer in ẏs sẏde,
[7] So gret & murẏe was þat song, þat me song þer inne wyde,
þat þe folc stod, þat þer were, as hii were y nome,
Ne hii nuste to weþer chẏrche murgorẏe ẏt was to come.
þe kyng was to ẏs paleẏs, þo þe seruyse was ẏ do,
Ylad wyþ [8] þẏs menẏe, and þe quene to hyre al so.

[1] And bysshopes, and other prelates, to fore the kyng Arthure Songe with hure clergie, that joye it was to hure *Ar.* [2] The othur *Ar.* [3] Of therchbisshop also *Ar.* [4] Do, To a nother munstre there, & iiii. quenes by fore wende *Ar.* [5] And euery of hem in hure hond a whit coluere bere. Ladies fele & faire y nogh also ther were *Ar.* [6] *Postremo peracta processione, tot organa, tot cantus in utrisque fiunt templis, ut præ nimia dulcedine milites, qui aderant, nescirent quod templorum prius adirent* Galfr. Mon. [7] So noble and mery was the song and melody that tyde, That men thoghte also murye as thegh hii hadde be nome, Ne hii ne wiste to whather churche meryer it was to come *Ar.* [8] His meyne, *Ar.*

Vor

Vor [1] hii hulde þe olde vsages, þat men wyþ men were
Bỳ hem sulue, and wymmen bỳ hem sulue al so þere.
þo hii were echone ỳ set, as ỳt to her stat bycom,
Kaỳ, kỳng of Aungeo, a þousend kynȝtes nome
Of noble men, ỳ cloþed in ermỳne echone
[2] Of on sỳwete, and seruede [3] as þỳs noble feste a non.
Bedwer þe botỳler, kỳng of Normandỳe,
Nom al so in ỳs half a uaỳr companye
[4] Of on sywỳte, vorto seruy of þe botelerỳe.
Bỳ uore [5] þe [6] quene ỳt was also of al suche corteỳsỳe,
Vorto telle al þe noblỳe þat þer was ỳ do,
þey mỳ tonge were of [7] stel, me ssolde noȝt dure þerto.
Wỳmmen ne kepte of no kynȝt as in druerỳ,
Bote he were in armỳs wel ỳprowed, & atte leste þrỳe.
þat made, [8] lo! þe wỳmmen þe [9] chastore lỳf lede,
And þe kỳngtes þe stalwordore, & þe betere in her dede.
Sone after þys noble [10] mete, as rỳȝt was of such tỳde,
þe kỳngtes atỳled hem aboute in eche sỳde,

[1] *Antiquam namque consuetudinem curiæ servantes Brittones, consueverant mares cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus festivos dies celebrare separatim* Galfr. Mon. [2] Alle in on sewte, to serue the feste a non *Ar.* [3] *Malim*, at. [4] Of a nother siwte, to serue the butelrie *Ar.* [5] *In palatio quoque reginæ innumerabiles ministri, diversis ornamentis induti, obsequium suum præstabant, morem suum exercentes. Quem si omnino describere pergerem, nimiam prolixitatem historiæ generarem* Galfr. Mon. [6] Quene eke also ther was such courtaisye, *Ar.* [7] Stel, hit nolde suffice ther to. Wommen tolde of no knyght tho as in loue and druerye, But he were in armes preued atte leste thrye *Ar.* [8] Tho the *Ar.* [9] Chaster lyf to lede, *Ar.* [10] Mete, ech wende in his sỳde, Knyghtes and squyers eke, and buskede hem to ryde, In the feldes and in the medes *Ar.*

In feldes and in medys to preue her bachelerye.
Somme wyþ lance, some wyþ suerd, wyþ oute vylenye,
Wyþ pleyynge at [1] tables, oþer atte chekere,
Wyþ castynge oþer wyþ ssetynge, [2] oþer in som ogyrt manere.
And [3] wuch so of eny game adde þe maystrye,
[4] þ kyng hem of ys gyfteþ dude large corteysye.
Vpe þe alurs of þe castles þe laydes þanne stode,
And byhulde þys noble game, & wyche kyngts were god.
Alle þe þre hexte dawes ylaste þys nobleye
In halles and in veldes, of mete and eke of pleye.
þys men come þe verþe day byuore þe kynge þere,
And he gef hem large gyftys, euere as hii wurþe were.
Byssoprýches and cherches [5] clerkes he gef somme,
And castles and tounes kyngtes þat were ycome."
Seyn Dauid was þe kynge's vncle, hym he [6] gef aday
þe herchebyssopryche of Carleon, as he wel bysay.
Vor he was suyþe holy mon, [7] and munstre let rere,
þat me clepuþ in Walys Seyn Dauid, & gut he lyþ þere.

---

[1] The tables, & the eschekere, *Ar.* [2] Othur som othur manere. What man of any game hadde *Ar.* [3] *Quicumque ergo ludisui victoriam adeptus erat, ab Arturo largis muneribus ditabatur* Galfr. Mon. [4] *Sic Codex* Harleyanus; *at in Ar. plane*, The kyng hem yaf yiftes grete, & dude hem courtaisye. An hegh vpon alures ladies gonne by holde, To waite ho so dude best, & most was of tolde. Alle fulle fower daies last thus hure pleye In valeis aboute, and faire feldes, & mete eke of nobleye The v. day come thes men bifore the kyng there, *Ar.* [5] To clerkes he yaf sone, Castelles to knyghtes eke, as best hym thoght to done. *Ar.* [6] Yaf that day *Ar.* [7] And let a munstre rere In the cite of Meneve, and lith nogh buryed there *Ar.*

þe bẏssoprẏche of Wẏnchestre a god mon he ȝef þo,
Of Chychestre anoþer, and ȝut oþer mo.
þe wule þe kẏng and ẏs men aboute þẏs nobleye were,
þer come in tuelf olde men mẏd [1] eucne pas þere,
Men of wel vayr semblant, and branchẏs hii bere
Of olyue, as in sygne þat hii of pes were.
A letter [2] he toc þe kyng, þat þo he yt let rede.
Fram þe cenatour of Rome hii come, and þys seẏde:
" Lucie, þe cenatour of Rome, to Arture þe kyng,
" [3] Send, þat he [4] ofte serued aþ, wyth oute gretẏnge.
" Muche [5] me wondreþ and ouer muche of þy reuerẏe,
" Of þyn cruel luþer hede, and of þẏn robberẏ;
" And namelẏche of þẏn vn rygt ychabbe gret dedeẏn,
" þat þou to þe noble stede of Rome dest mẏd al þẏ mayn.
" And þat þou nelt [6] hẏm ẏknowe, ne do þyn seruage,
" Ne vnder stonde hou luþer yt ys, to [7] do enẏ outrage
" [8] Oþer wernẏ out þe noble stude, þat al þe world [9] abueþ to.
" Vor þyn auncetres dude al, þat we þe hoteþ do.
" And þou, as in gret despyt of so noble seẏnorẏe,
" [10] Ne at halst noȝt one þy truage, ac myd þy reuerye

[1] *Moderatis passibus* Galfr. Mon. [2] Hii toke to the kyng, and he than let hit rede. Fro Lucẏe the senatour hit come, and thus hit sede: " Lucie senatour *Ar.* [3] Sendeth, as he hath deseruyd, with oute gretyng. Muche wonder we haueth of thi reuerẏe, *Ar.* [4] *F.* of deserued aþ. [5] *Admirans vehementer admiror super tuæ tirannidis protervia. Admiror, inquam, & injuriam, quam Romæ intulisti, recolligens indignor* Galfr. Mon. [6] Hure *Ar.* [7] Do hure eny *Ar.* [8] Or greuy oght that noble stede, *Ar.* [9] Boweth *Ar.* [10] Noght only at halst hure truage, but dost also roberie, By reuynst Fraunce and othur londes, *Ar.*

" Rauÿsest France & oþer londes, þat bÿ Weste beþ echon,
" þat bere [1] truage to Rome, & þoru þe ne doþ noȝt non.
" Vor þanne of þe gret despÿt þe noble court of Rome
" Ryȝt wole habbe of þe ÿwys, þat þou hym dest ÿlome.
" Amydde haruest we þe setteþ day of þÿs nexte ȝere,
" At Rome vorto ansuerÿe, and þat þou be þe sulf þere
" We þe hoteþ, vorto auonge þat þe court þe wole deme.
" And bote þou do [2] of one þyng nÿm wel ȝode ȝeme,
" þat ÿchylle my sulf þe seche out, & þoru suerd restore
" Al þat þÿ reuerÿe vs aþ by nome, and more.
þÿs was a prout mandemcnt, [3] and an heÿnol dede.
þe kyng adde þerof gret despyt, þo he hurde ÿt rede.
Vor þe vorste truage, þat he sende to Rome, of seluer oþer of golde,
þat was Lucÿe's bod aslawe, burÿe ȝyf hii ÿt wolde.
The kyng cluped ac noȝt vor þan ys conseyl wel sone,
To ansuerÿe to þÿs [4] mandement, wat were best to done.
Cadour, erle of Cornwayle, stod somdel and lou,
And verste seyde ys auÿs mÿde gode wylle ÿnou.

---

[1] Som tyme truage to Rome, & nogh bereth hii non. And for this ilke grete despit the noble Court of Rome Ryght wole haue of, that thugh hast mysdo ofte y lome *Ar.* [2] Of that y seighe take ryght nogh good yeme, E les my self y wole the seche, and thurgh my sweord restore Al that thugh vs hast bynome, and yut ther to wel more *Ar.* [3] And gret manassynge. The kyng hadde foul scorn of this ilke bostynge. For in stede of truage of siluer and of goolde He sende hem Lucie's body, burie hit ho so wolde *Ar.* [4] Ilke lettre, what *Ar.*

" Syre,

" Syre," he sede, " þer [1] bỳuore ychabbe ỳbe sore drad,
" Laste [2] þat ỳdel lỳf, þat þỳne men [3] abbỳþ ỳ lad,
" Nou monỳ day out of los and in sleuþe hem broȝte.
" Vor wanne men beþ al ydel, þat er bataỳles soȝte,
" Her ỳdelnesse hem ssal brỳnge to synne lecherye,
" To tauerne, and [4] to sleuþe, and to hasarderỳe.
" Hyt ỳs neỳ vỳf ȝer, þat we abbỳþ ylyued in such vyce,
" Vor we [5] nadde noȝt to done, and in suche delỳce.
" And þer wỳþ [6] nỳs noȝt God ỳpaỳd, þer vore he aþ ybroȝt
" þe Romeỳns [7] in suche wỳlle, þat we nere to ỳdel noȝt,
" Ac þat we come to vr stat aȝen of vre verste prowesse,
" Lest we felle in dedlych sunne vor vr ỳdelnỳsse.
þo he adde ysed ỳs auỳs, & oþere hỳm bere wỳtnysse,
[8] þe kyng Arture sede ys al in gladnesse.
" ȝe louerdỳnges," he sede, " þat ychabbe in conseỳl & in batayle
" ỳ fonded as vor aȝte men, þat me nolde neuere faỳle,
" Doþ nou [9] al ȝoure wyt þerto, me wel to consayle,
" [10] And ych hopỳe we ssolle þe lasse recche of þe Romeyns tayle.

---

[1] *Huc usque in timore fueram, ne Britones, longa pace quietos, otium, quod ducunt, ignavos faceret, famamque militiæ, qua ceteris gentibus clariores censentur, in eis omnino deleret* Galfr. Mon. [2] The ydel *Ar.* [3] Longe haueth y lad, Nogh out of hure good loos in to slouth hem broghte *Ar.* [4] To drunkenesse, & othur hasardrie *Ar.* [5] Hadde noght to done, and haue had oure delice *Ar.* [6] Is noght God a payd, *Ar.* [7] In to such a will, that we be ydel noght *Ar.* [8] Than seide kyng Arthur in murthe & in gladnesse. " Ye lordynges, that y preued haue in consail and bataille, And as noble men founde, & wolde me neuere faille, *Ar.* [9] *Facilius ergo inquietationem Lucii tolerare poterimus, si communi studio præmeditati fuerimus, quibus modis eam debilitare*

" Vor me þencheþ myd vn ryȝt hii [1] eseþ vs truage.
" Vor [2] July Cesar yt nom vorst myd strengþe & myd outrage,
" þoru descord & contek, þat bytuene vr elderne vas þo.
" He nom verst myd vnryȝt, & broȝte þat lond in wo.
" And þyng þat ys myd strengþe ynom, hou myȝte yt be myd ryȝt?
" Vor he [3] naþ reson non, bote robberye and myȝt.
" [4] And [5] myd as reson we mowe of hem esse ywys.
" Bere he þanne þe oþer truage, þat bineþe ys.
" Vor July and oþer emperours, hii seggeþ, com þer to,
" þat emperors were of Rome. ych may segge al so,

tare institerimus. Quam non multum timendam nobis existimo, cum, irrationabili causa exigat tributum, quod ex Britannia habere desiderat Galfr. Mon. [10] And casteth, hogh to make a knotte in the Romaynes taille *Ar.*

[1] Axeth *Ar.* [2] Julius Cesar alther furst tok hit with outrage, For a contek that bytwyne oure eldrene was tho. He nom hit furst with vnright, & broght the lond in wo. That thyng, that with wrong is nome, hogh myght hit be with right? *Ar.* [3] Hath no reson to, but *Ar.* [4] And with also good reson we mowe of hem y wis Abere thilke truage, that as thyng robbed is. For by Julie and other emperours hii thenketh com ther to, And we in the same manere may seye also, That oure auncetres of this lond som tyme wonne Rome, As Belyn & Brenne, noble men that ye haue hurd of y lome *Ar.* [5] *Quoniam ergo id, quod injustum est, à nobis præsumpsit exigere, consimili ratione petamus ab illo tributum Romæ, & qui fortior supervenerit ferat quod habere exoptavit. Nam si, quia Julius Cæsar, ceterique Romani reges Britanniam olim subjugaverunt, vectigal nunc debere sibi ex illa reddi decernit, similiter nunc ego censeo, quod Roma mihi tributum reddere debet, quia antecessores mei eam antiquitus obtinuerunt. Belinus etenim &c.* Galfr. Mon.

" þat

" þat myn auncetres of þÿs lond wyle wonne Rome,
" As Belÿ þe noble kyng, þat ȝe abbeþ ÿhurd ÿ lome,
" And Constantyn, Eleyne sone, [1] hii wuteþ wel Rome nom,
" And suþþe Maxymÿan, and of [2] beyre blod ych com,
" Mÿn auncetres [3] were alle þre, & kynges of þÿs londe,
" [4] And wonne þe emperÿe of Rome, & boþe adde an honde.
" Of [5] France & [6] oþer londes, þat we wonne myd vr myȝte,
" We mowe segge, þat we [7] nabbeþ to ansuerÿe nozt myd ryȝte.
" Wanne hii for soke ÿs, & for slewþed, & to non defence ne come,
" þo we þoru chyualerÿe out of her poer ÿs nome.
" Vor hii ne mowe nozt segge, þat with treson, oþer stalþe, ÿt were do,
" Vor wÿþinne nÿe ȝere non of hem ne com enes þer to.
Howwell, kyng of þe oþer Brÿtaÿne, þo he hurde þÿs he sede:
" þeÿ ech of vs sete aldaÿ, þe best red to rede,
" Betere ansuere ne ssolde we fÿnde, [8] þan ge abbeþ nou ysed.
" þere vore we aȝte honoury wel of so noble wÿt þÿ red.

[1] Ye witeth *Ar.* [2] *F* heyre. *Nam* hure *in Ar.* [3] Hii were alle *Ar.* [4] Hii wonne themperie of Rome, & tho hii hitte hadde an honde *Ar.* [5] *Censetisne ergo vectigal ex Romanis petendum? De Gallia autem sive collateralibus insulis non est respondendum, cum illas diffugeretur defendere, quando easdem potestati eorum subtrahebamus* Galfr. Mon. [6] Of other londes, that we wonne with vnryght *Ar.* [7] Ne mogh answere ther to with ryght. When they forsoke and for sleuthede, and to non defence come, Tho we thurgh chiualrye out of hure hondes hit nome. For hii ne mogh seye with treson, ne with stalthe, hit was do, For thes ix, yer non of hem ones come ther to *Ar.* [8] Than that that ye han sede. Wel oughte the man honoured be, that is so noble of rede *Ar.*

" Vor

" Vor [1] ȝýſwe in þýs mancre wendeþ, we ne faýleþ [2] anone wýse,
" þat we ne ssolde abbe þe maýstre, wanne we defendeþ oure franchise.
" And wo so anoþer monne's [3] god býnýme wole mýd vnryȝt,
" Mýd ryȝt he maý ýs [4] owe lesc, ȝýf þe defendor aþ þe myȝte.
" And [5] wanne þe Romeyns aboute beþ, vs to býnýme vr ryȝte,
" Wýþ reson we [6] wolle hem býnýme, ȝýf we mowe to gadere fyȝt.
" Nou ýt worþ [7] ȝended, þat Sýbyle þe sage sede bý uore,
" þat þer ssold of Brutaýne þre men be ýbore,
" þat ssold wýnne þe emperýe of Rome, [8] & þe tueye ýdo ýt ys,
" As of Belý and Constantýn. & þou art þe þrydde ywýs.
" Hye [9] nou vaste vorto auonge þýs noble honour al,
" To brynge hem vnder þe, [10] þat þe wolde make her þral.
" Hye [11] nou to anhansý vs alle, & ýnelle noȝt be byhýnde,
" Ten þousend hors [12] ywrýe, ých þe wolle fýnde.

---

[1] *Nam si, juxta prædictam rationem, Romam adire volueris, non dubito quin triumpho potiamur, dum libertatem nostram tueamur; dum juste ab inimicis nostris exigamus, quod à nobis injuste ipsi repetere inceperunt. Quicumque enim sua alteri eripere conatur, merito, quæ sua sunt, per eum, quem impetit, amittit* Galfr. Mon. [2] In non wise, To haue the maistre, in defence of oure owene franchise *Ar.* [3] Good taketh with vnright, *Ar.* [4] Owene leose, & the defendour haue myght *Ar.* [5] Sut the the Romeynes beth aboute to reue vs of oure right, *Ar.* [6] Wolleth hem hure bynyme, & to gederes fight *Ar.* [7] Fulfuld, that *Ar.* [8] Of the two do hit is, *Ar.* [9] The faste for to *Ar.* [10] That wolde the make thral *Ar.* [11] Blyue to a vaunce vs alle, y wole noght be by hynde, *Ar.* [12] Heled ther to y wole the fynde *Ar.*

Aunsel,

Aunsel, þat þe kyng adde ymad kyng of Scotlonde,
Glad y nou was [1] myd þys word, & vor joye held vp ys honde.
" Vor þat," he sede, " ychabbe yhurd, so gret joye ychabbe and blys,
" [2] þat y nabbe non tonge, þat mowe al yt ssewe ywys.
" Vor al, þat we abbyþ of londes and of kynges byuore
" y wonne myd chyualerye, yt þyncþ me al vor lore,
" Bote we of Romeyns be awreke & of Saxons al so,
" þat vre elderne er þys so muche ssame abbeþ ydo.
" And nou þe tyme ys icome, þat we mowe ben awreke,
" So glad ycham, [3] þat y not, wat vor joye speke.
" Vor y ne wylnede neuere þyng so muche, as ych do her blod,
" [4] Ou! Jhesu! þat þulke day worþ me suete and god.
" Suete wolleþ þe wounded be to me, & noþyng stronge:
" Suete wole ek my deþ be, zyf ych ym auonge
" Vorto awreke [5] hor faderes, & to holde vp oure franchyse,
" And vorto [6] anansy our kyng, as we ssolde in al wyse.
" Seche [7] we out þulke halue men, ne abyde we nozt to longe,
" þat [8] we after her wrecche deþ her londes auonge.
" And ycholle our ost eche, & our bachelerye,
" Wyþoute archers & vot men, wyþ tuo þousend hors y wrye.

[1] For that word *Ar.* [2] That I haue no tonge, to telle hogh joyful my herte is *Ar.* [3] That I ne wot, what *Ar.* [4] Me thinketh, to haue to do o day with hem wold do me good. Softe wolde the woundes be to me, and no thyng stronge: Swete wolde also be my deth, yf y hym shal a fonge *Ar.* [5] Oure *Ar.* [6] A vaunce *Ar.* [7] *Aggrediamur igitur semiviros illos, & aggrediendo perstemus, ut, devictis ipsis, eorum honoribus cum læta potiamur victoria* Galfr. Mon. [8] We mogh, when they beth dede, hure faire londes fonge *Ar.*

Of

Of men here of þỳs lond þe kỳng adde þer wyþoute
Sỳxtỳ þousend hors [1] y wrye, & þat was a uaỳr route.
þe kynges of sỳx ỳles ek, as Norþewey & Yrlonde,
Godlond and Orcadas, Denemarch and Yslonde.
Sene kynges ek aboute Fraunce, as Brutayne & Normandỳe,
Gascoỳne and Aungeo, and al so Pỳcardỳe,
Of Peyto, and of oþer tuo, and [2] douze pers of France.
Among hem alle [3] hii were sỳker al, wỳþoute balance,
Of an hondred þousend hors, & four score þousend þerto,
And þre [4] sousend wel ywrỳe, & tuo hondered also,
Wyþoute fot men, þat were so vale, þat þer nas of non ende,
þỳs was a uaỳr compaỳnỳe, þoru al þe world to wende.
þo þỳs was sỳker & byspeke, þe kyng hem het [5] echom,
þat hii wende ech in ỳs syde to her contreỳe anon,
And þat hii alammasse daỳ mỳd her poer come
Echone to Barbesfliet, and þes veage nome.
þe kỳng bed þe messagers, þat hii þe senatour sede,
þat he wolde to Rome come, ac no truage hỳm to lede,
Ac vorto conquerỳ of hỳm þulke sulue seruage,
þat hii askỳeþ of hym [6] vyllỳche, & mỳd outrage,

[1] Y heled, and that *Ar.* [2] Dusze *Ar.* [3] Syker hii were, with oute variaunce. An hundred thusend hors he led, of fotmen was non ende. Ther was a faire companye thurgh al the worlde to wende. Tho that al this was byspoke, and syker were alle at on, Euery man to his contre highede sone anon, I charged a Lammasse day with hure power hii come Euery man to Barbefleet, and this viage nome. Thanne to the messagers answerd Arthur the kyng, That to Rome he wolde come and no truage bryng, But forto wynne ther of hem thulke self seruage, *Ar.* [4] *Sic.* [5] *L.* echon. [6] Spitously, *Ar.*

And

And þat he wolde to Rome come þe daỳ þat hii hỳm sette
[1] þe rỳȝte abbe weþer so myȝte, wanne hii hem to gadere
mette.
þus [2] departede [3] þo" þe court, and [4] eche in ỳs sỳde
ȝarked hem aȝen þe daỳ, vor hii [5] mỳȝte leng abỳde."

LUCỲE þe senatour, þo he wuste þys maundement,
Sone he adde wỳde aboute ỳs messagers [6] ysend,
Vorto gadery to ỳs help al [7] þat poer of Rome,
So þat aȝen Lammasse alle þes kỳnges to hỳm come,
Of Affrỳc and of Grece, of Spaỳne and of Sỳrye,
Of Medes and of Perces, [8] of [9] Ytours, of Lybye,
Of Egypt and of Babỳlonye, and of Frugye,
And al so of [10] Mesopot, of Bytỳnie, of Boecỳe.
Alle þes kynges, and al oþer þat were by Este Rome
And al þat to Rome ssolde seruỳse, to hym come,
So þat fourty þousend hors & syxty hondred also
þer were, [11] þo hii ȝare were, þỳs chyualerye to do.
Kỳng [12] Arture bytok Modred, ỳs sỳster sone, ỳch wene
[13] þỳs lond to loke, þo he wende, & Gouernewaur þe quene.

---

[1] And ryght hane ho so myght when hii to gederes mette *Ar.* [2] *Digrediuntur ergo legati, digrediuntur reges, digrediuntur proceres, &, quod eis præceptum fuerat, perficere non differunt* Galfr. Mon. [3] *Deest Ar.* [4] Euery man wende on his syde, And euery man to holde his day a rayde hym thanne to ryde *Ar.* [5] *F.* ne myȝte leng. [6] Sent *Ar.* [7] The power *Ar.* [8] Of Tharce and of Libie *Ar.* [9] *Ituræorum* Galfr. Mon. [10] Mesopotanie *Ar.* [11] Tho hii were alle redy, this *Ar.* [12] *Compositio igitur adventu ipsorum, Arturus, Modredo nepoti suo conservandam Britanniam atque Gannumaræ* [Sic Codex MS. quem mihi per quam benigne

Vor he truste to [1] hym mest, as me þyngþ he wel ayte,
[2] And, as ȝe ssolde her after yhure, hii broȝte hym suþþe to nayte.
Myd al ys ost of þys londe to Souþhamptone he wende,
And dude hym [3] in see, myd wynd þat God hym sende.
þo he come ver in þe see, and he aslepe was,
[4] At tyme of mydnyȝt of þe nyȝt, hym mette a greuous cas.
Hym þoȝte he seȝ a grysly beore [5] fle in þe eyr anheȝ,
[6] þat alle þe hauenes quakede of þe flyȝt hym þoȝte he seȝ.
And an dreduol dragon fram the West come myd hym to fyȝte,
þat [7] þe leom of ys eyen al þe contreye [8] lyȝte.
And þe dragon [9] velde þulke bere, & to grounde hym caste.
[10] An noþer dragon com fram Est, & myd þulke dragon faȝt vaste."
þo þe kynge awok, he told ys meyne of þys cas.
And some byþoȝte, and tolde wat þe [11] bytokne was,

---

nigne donavit amicissimus Gravesius, licet alii *Guennoveram & Guenheram*, vel *Gonnoram* sive *Gouernwauram* appellent] *reginæ committens, cum exercitu suo portum Haymonis adivit, ubi tempestivo ventorum flatu mare ingressus est* Galfr. Mon. [13] Hys lond to kepe tho he wende, & also Gonnore the quene *Ar.*

[1] *F.* hem. [2] Ac, as ye schulle her after hure, to most sorwe he hym broght *Ar.* [3] Forth in the see, *Ar.* [4] Euene a boute mydnyght, hym mette a wonder cas *Ar.* [5] Fle out of the Est an hegh, That alle men, that negh hym were, quaked, whan they hym segh. A grisly dragon fro by Weste *Ar.* [6] *Cujus murmure totalittora intremebant* Galfr. Mon. [7] Thurgh the lightnesse of his eyen *Ar.* [8] A light *Ar.* [9] Ouercome this bere, *Ar.* [10] *Loco hujus versus hæc habet Ar.* And ded left hym in the feld, this Arthur sore a gaste *Ar.* [11] Bitoknyng *Ar.*

þat þe dragon of bẏ Weste bytokned þe kẏng Arture,
And þe beore som foul geant, þat me ssolde of ẏhure.
[1] þat he ssolde ouercome þe geant; & þe dragon of bẏheste
Bẏtokned þe emperour of Rome, & þe bataẏle of the beste
Ouercome bẏtokned þat þe Romeẏns ssolde al so.
Ac þe kẏng ne jugede noȝt, þat ẏt ssolde be so ẏ do,
þer after hii come" to Barbesflet, & pẏȝte þer by sẏde
Her tentes and pauẏlons, her compaẏnẏe to abẏde.
Under þat þer com word to þe kyng Arture,
þat þe meste geant, þat mon ssolde of ẏhure,
Out of þe lond of Spaẏne com, & adde [2] ynome' Eleẏne,
þat was so vaẏr, þe kẏnge's nece Howwel of Brutayne,
And vpe þe mount of Seẏn Mẏchel ẏre lede atte laste,
And þe kynȝtes of þe lond sẏwed after vaste,
Ac hii ne myȝte nout aȝen hẏm do. Vor [3] weþer so hii wende
Bẏ water, oþer bẏ londe, anon rẏȝt he hem ssende,
[4] Mẏd gleẏue oþer mẏd roches, and uewe alẏue he let.
And some he mẏd strengþe nom, & al quyc hem fret.
[5] Al stỳllelyche wẏþinne nẏȝt þe kẏnȝ nom ys boteler
Bedwer, þat nomon yt wste, and Gaẏ ys panyter,

---

[1] Some seide also, that the kyng sholde with honour Fighte er longe were with the Cenatour, And seide, the Cenatour bi tokned the best of by Est, And Arthur to the dragon that com fro by West. Ther after hii come *Ar.* [2] Rauesshed *Ar.* [3] *Nam sive mari, sive terra illum invadebant, aut naves eorum ingentibus saxis obruebat, aut diversorum generum telis interimebat. Sed & plures cupiebat, quos semivivos devorabat* Galfr. Mon. [4] With speres & stones also, fewe a lyue he let *Ar.* [5] Al stillely, whan hit was nyght, Arthur clepede a part Beduer his boteler, and Kay his stiward, And two squyers with hem also, that he muche

(Vor he truste to hem meste) and wende vorþ as alone,
Vor [1] he volde to such geant verdes lede vone
Vor o bodỳ, as we seyþ, and so muche ek he truste
To hym sulue & to hardỳssỳ. Ys men wanne hii ỳt wuste,
þo he come toward þỳs hul, a gret fur þeruppe he seỳ,
And anoþer vppe a lasse hul, þat þer bỳsỳde was neỳ.
Nou [2] nuste hii" to soþe, vppe weþer þe geant were;
Bedwer he sende vorto aspỳc stỳlelỳche verst þere.
Verst to þe lasse hul [3] mỳd [4] assỳp, þat he vond,
He wende al bỳ water, vor he ne [5] mỳgt nogt alonde.
þo [6] he com [7] vp þe hul an heỳ, he hurde atte bỳgynnỳg
Of a womman a deoluol crỳ, and a pỳtos wepỳnge."
Verst he was sore adrad, þat þe geant were þere neỳ,
And naþeles he [8] hente herte, & drou more an heỳ.
[9] þo vond he [10] gere þet fur, and a lute þer bỳsyde
[11] An [12] burỳels al nywe ỳmad, & a womman, þat so crỳde,

triste, And wende forth al priuely, that his ost hit nyste. Whan thei negh the hulles come, a fure uppon they segh, And vppon the lasse hulle a nother that were somdel negh. Than nuste hii *Ar.*

[1] *Tanta namque virtute prævalendo negligebat contra talia monstra exercitum ducere, cum & suos hoc modo inanimaret, & solus ad illa destruenda sufficeret* Galfr. Mon. [2] *Dubitantes illico super quem eorum habitasset gigas, Beduerum dirigunt, ut certitudinem rei exploraret* Galfr. Mon. [3] In a bot, that he fond, *Ar.* [4] *Naviculâ* Galfr. Mon. [5] Myght by lond *Ar.* [6] *Cujus* [*montis*] *dum cacumen incepisset ascendere, audito desuper femineo ululato* [Sic Codex ille, quem mihi dono dedit amicissimus Gravesius, non *ululatu*] *primo inhorruit, quia dubitavit monstrum adesse* Galfr. Mon. [7] Up to the hulle an hegh, at the bygynnyng, Of a womman he hurde a cry pitously playnyng *Ar.* [8] Tok good herte, *Ar.* [9] Tho he fond ther a fuyr, and a lytel *Ar.* [10] *Sic quidem Codex (quem sequimur) Harleyanus, pro quo alii (ut*

in

Alner holded sytte þere, and anon, so heo ẏ seẏ
þe kẏng Bedwer, heo sẏȝte, and bẏgan to grede an heẏ,
" Alas! alás! þou wrecche mon, wuch mẏs auenture
" Haþ þe ẏbrȯȝt in to þẏs stede, alas! hou ssalt on dure?
" Alas! þe pẏnes, þat þou ssalt sone þolẏe, deþ!
" þe pẏte, þat ẏchabbe of þe, þoru out mẏn herte geþ.
" Vor þys verbroẏde geant, abbe he of the an sẏȝt,
" þy faẏre bodẏ so gentẏl vor suolwe he wole to nẏȝt.
" Vor he wole sone come þulke verbroẏde pece,
" þat nom Helene, noble maẏde, kẏng Howwel nece,"
" þat ẏchabbe nou rẏȝt her ẏbured, was norẏse ẏch was,
" þat was al mẏ soule, & al mẏ lyf, ẏch wene non such nas.

---

in Ar. þer (*sive* þere) *forsitan malint. Sed* ȝere (*quod* paratum *notat*) *retineo.* " A burieles newe made, & the womman, that cride, Al for olded & for wope, and tho heo segh Bedewer, " Lord haue mercy," sheo sayde, " on the man " what dost though nouth her? " Alas!" sheo seide, " though " wrecche man, what mys a " venture Hath broght the to " this stede, hogh shalt though " longe endure? The pite, " that y haue of the, thurgh " my herte it geth. Sory I " am, that though shalt suffre " sone deth. For this foule " Geant, haue he of the a- " syght, Thi body, that so " gentil is, wole sone be to " twyght. For hider he wole " come right sone that ilke " foule pece, That rauesshede " faire Eleyne, kyng Howelc's " nece *Ar.* [12] *Inspexit quoque tumulum recenter factum, & juxta eum quandam anum flentem & ejulantem. Quæ ut eum aspexit, conspectum fletu impediente in hunc modum profata est:* " *O infelix* " *homo, quod infortunium te* " *in hunc locum subvectat?* " *O! inenarrabiles mortis* " *pœnas passure! miseret me* " *tui, miseret, quia tam detes-* " *tabile monstrum florem ju-* " *ventutis tuæ in hac nocte* " *consumet* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] And [2] þe wule he wolde þys tendre þyng wemmy foule
ỳ nou,
" And heo ne myȝte ỳt soffrỳ noȝt, mỳd lecherỳe he ỳr slou.
" þo eode he to me olde [3] werche, to endỳ ỳs [4] floule cas,
(" To wytnesse God ỳch take, þat aȝen my wylle ỳt was)
" And dude bỳ me ỳs lecherye, alas! þulke stounde!
" þer uor fle þou hendy mon, vor sỳker be þou ỳ founde,
" Wanne he comþ bỳ me to lỳgge, he wole þe lỳme mele
" To drawe and vorsuolwe, perauntre at one mele.
Bedwer" bỳgan to comfortỳ þe womman in þe place,
And bỳ het ỳre bote of hyre wo bỳtỳme, þoru Gode's grace,
And wende aȝen to þe kyng, and tolde al þys cas.
þe kỳng was sorỳ, þo he wuste, þat [5] þet mayde aslawe was,
[6] Ac anauntre he þoȝte hym do, & dude hỳm [7] in weye,
þỳs clene maỳde vorto [8] awreke, and ỳs felawes beye.

---

[1] And as this foule Geant wold haue leye hure by, This ilk faire mayde he slogh thurgh his lechery. Tho yede he to me, olde wrecche, his lechorye to fulfille, I take God to witnesse hit was a ye my wille, So that euere wole, whan hym lust with me haue a do. And thus I lyue in this penance, and dury moch wo. Wel sone he wole come her to me, and if though her be founde, Though shalt sey waillaway, & curse the harde stounde. Bedewer *Ar.* [2] *Namque, recepto infra tenerrimum pectus timore, dum eam nefandus ille amplecteretur, vitam, diuturniore luce dignam, finivit. Ut igitur illam, quæ erat mihi altera spes, altera vita, altera dulcedo jocunditatis, fædo coitu suo deturpare nequivit, detestandæ venere succensus, mihi invito (Deum & senectutem meam testor) violentiam ingessit. Fuge, dilecte mi, fuge, &c.* Galfr. Mon. [3] *L.* wrecche. [4] *L.* foule. [5] The *Ar.* [6] In a venture *Ar.* [7] In his weye, *Ar.* [8] A wreke, with his felawes tweye *Ar.*

Ar

Ar hii come vpe [1] þys hul, arst he was ẏcome
þys gryslyche geant, & hadde an vatte baru ẏnome,
And ẏspẏted hym þoru out myd an ẏrene spẏte,
And rostede in þys grete fure, to abbe þe folle bẏte.
Artur bed ys [2] felawes, talate hym ẏworþe alone,
Ac ȝyf hii seye hym in nede, þat hii me made targynge none.
Kyng Artur hym blessede, and baldelyche ynou
Toward þys ȝryslyche [3] fourme myd gode herte hym drou.
þe [4] ȝeant, þo he sey hym come, bygan ys mace adrawe,
þat tueye stalwarde men ne ssolde noȝt [5] enes wawe.
Toward [6] þe heued þe kyng he smot, ac he hente myd ys
sselde.
Ac ȝut he brydc aladoun, and wel harde ẏt veldc.
Vor ẏt [7] þorte al þe hul myd þe stroc was astoned.
Artur was lyȝt ynou, as he was ẏwoned.
He hupe vp, þo he wroþþe was, and ys suerd adrou,
And smot [8] þen ssrewe in the frount, myd gode ernest ẏnouȝ.

[1] To the hul, the Geant was come, And hadde broght a gret swyn, that he hadde nome, *Ar.* [2] Felawes tho to lete hym al one, *Ar.* [3] Gest with good hert he drogh *Ar.* [4] *Mox illos ut, nihil tale præmeditatus, aspexit, festinavit clavam suam sumere, quam duo juvenes vix à terra erigerent. Evaginavit ergo rex gladium suum, & prætenso clipeo, quantum velocitas sinebat, properabat eum præcedere, antequam clavam cepisset. At ille, non ignarus meditationis, jam cepe-rat eam, regemque interposito clipeo tanto conamine percussit, quod sonitus ictus & tota littora replevit, & aures ejusdem ultra modum hebetavit* Galfr. Mon. [5] Ones *Ar.* [6] The kynge's hed he smot, he hepte hym wyth his shelde. But yut he bowede hit al doun, and wel harde hit felde. For hit ferde of the strok al the hulle was stoned. Arthur was light a fote, as he was woned. And lept vp, tho he wrathed was, *Ar.* [7] *F.* þozte. [8] The *Ar.*

Ac þe vel & fless was so [1] bard, & þe scolle hard & þycke,
þat, vor þeý ýt ne come nozt þoru, þe dunt nas nozt wycke.
And ýs mace he dude ek bytuene, [2] ac þet blod adoun wende
So vaste in eye, and in face, þat hym neý ablende.
þe kyng [3] hupte her & þer, & leýde on euere vaste,
So strong vas þe ssrewe, þat no dunt ne myzte hym adoun caste.
He vemde, & grunte, & stod azen, as ýt were a strong bor,
þat euere wole azen þe stroc, vorte he ne maý namor.
þe kýng smot euere her and þer, so þat atte laste
Ernest of herte he nome to hým, and adrou so vaste
Calýburne, ýs god suerd, þat he scolle clef a tuo,
þat þe suerd was al þer inne ýhud, [4] þat braýn ornout also,
þo [5] gryslych zal þe ssrewe þo, þat grislych was ýs bere.
He vel douns as a gret ok, þat býneþe ýcorue were,
þat ýt þozte þat al hul mýd þe vallýnge ssok.
þo stod þe kýng and lou, þeý ech lýme hým ok,
Vor he was weryý ýfazt. Bedwer he het þere,
þat he [6] croune of þe grislych heued, & to castel bere.
So þat hii come to her felawes [7] in dawýnge.
So noble [8] los nas neuere yhurd, as me bar þo þe kýnge.

---

[1] Togh, and the scolle so thicke, That hit greuede hym nozt ful muche, thegh he harde hitte *Ar.* [2] And yut the blod out wende, And ran in his eyen so, that hit hym muche a blende *Ar.* [3] Lepte *Ar.* [4] The brayn orn out also. So grisly yul the sherrewe, and grisly was his bere, And fel doun as an oke, that for torne were *Ar.* [5] *Exclamavit vero invisus ille, & velut quercus, ventorum viribus eradicata, cum maximo sonitu corruit* Galfr. Mon. [6] Smyte of *Ar.* [7] In the dawenynge *Ar.* [8] A los was neuere *Ar.*

Hýs

Hys men truste þe bet to hym, and mony blessynge
He adde, vor he delyuerede men of an so voule þynge.
þo kyng Arture's men y come were echon,
Sone hii drowe hem toward France, vorto seche her fon.
Hem com tytynge, þat [1] emperour to France ycome was
Myd so gret folc hym to seche, þat such neuere yseye was.
þer of nas nozt þe kyng adrad, [2] ac vorþore he wende bysyde,
And bygan to [3] puthe ys pauylons, hym vorto abyde.
þe erl of Oxenford he nom, and anoþer erl al so,
And syre Waweyn, ys syster sone, þo al þys was ydo,
And to Lucye þe senatour in þys manere hem sende,
To hote hym, þat hastelyche out of France he wende,
Oþer þat he come [4] amorwe, bataýle vorto do,
Vorto cuþe, weþer adde beterre ryzt þer to.
[5] þys noble kyngtes wende vorþ, and hete Lucye so
Vorto wende out of France, [6] oþer bataýle do,
Quyntylyan, ys neueu, ansuerede atten ende,
þat he nas nozt þuder ycome, out þanne vorto wende,
Ac to gouerny France, [7] þat of ryzte of Rome ys,
And þat bote zulpynge and bost noþyng myd Brutons nys.
[8] Syre [9] Waweyn, þe gode kyngt, was þo wroþ ynou,
And among al þat folc hupte ner, and ys suerd adrou,

---

[1] Themperour *Ar.* [2] Ac wende ther by side *Ar.* [3] Picche his pauelones, themperour to a bide *Ar.* [4] On the morwe, *Ar.* [5] Thes *Ar.* [6] Or elles the bataille do. The senatour's cosyn Quinçian answerede gayne attende, *Ar.* [7] That holden of Rome is, *Ar.* [8] Sire Wawayn the good knyght was tho wroth y nogh, God wot, And sodeynly drogh his sweord, & of his hed he smot, And with that hed to hors he lepte, ther folwede hym y

And smot of þat heued, & anon þat heued myd hym nom.
And wyþ ys felawes to ys hors vor hem all zut he com.
Ac wat an horse, wat a vote, þe Romeyns hym sywyde ynouz.
Vorto awreke her gret mayster, þat syre Waweyn slou.
Gerýn, erl of Carcoys, þat myd kyng Arture was,
He byturnede hym þo he sey þe Romeyns luþer pas,
And on þoru out þat body he smot myd ys lance.
þe erl of Oxenford ek þozte of ys cheance,
And byturnde hym, & myd ys lance þoru þe þrote smot on.
And þus þys þre gode kyngtys stured hem among her fon.
þo was þer on, þat het Marcel, þat fondede myd al ys mayn,
Forto [1] awreke Quintylyan, to sle syre Waweyn,
Syre Waweyn hym byturnde, & an stroc hym zef,
þat al [2] þat heued & þe brest [3] clanlyche hym to clef.
" Go," he seyde, " to [4] Quintylyan in helle þer he ys,
" And seye hym, þat syre Waweyn hym sende word þys,
" þat suche strokes þe Brutons conne zyue ywys,
" [5] þat he seyde, þat myd hym bote zulpynge & bost nys.
" Vor [6] ychot wel þuder þou ssalt, þyn del þou myzt hym ssewe.
Hys felawes he bed turne azen, [7] al þey hii were vewe.

nowe Of Romeyns, to haue wreke hure maistre, & made gret a vowe. Geryn Erl of Chartres, that messager also was, Byturnde hym, whan he sey the Romaynes folwe such a paas, And thurgh the body on he smot with his good launce *Ar.* 9 *Iratus illico Gwalguanus, ense, quo accinctus erat, irruit in eum, & ejusdem capite amputato, ad equos cum sociis regreditur. Insequuntur itaque Romani, partim pede, partim equis, ut concivem suum in legatos omni nisu diffugientes vindicent* Galfr. Mon.

[1] A venge Quincian, and quelle sire *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Al clene he to claf *Ar.* [4] Quincian *Ar.* [5] For he seide, but ylpyng and bost with Brutons is *Ar.* [6] Ywot *Ar.* [7] Al thogh they *Ar.*

Hii turnde aȝen, & ech of hem atte leste one slou.
Ac euere þe Romeyns after sẏwede vaste ynouȝ.
So þat þer com out of an wode, as ẏt was hẏspeke,
An sẏx þousend of Brutons, her felawes vorto awreke.
Hii come out mẏd god eẏr, and asaẏlede vaste
The Romeyns, & monẏe slowe, & somme adoun caste.
Þo to Petreẏe, a gret Romeyn, þẏs tẏdẏnge come,
Ten þousend of hors ẏ wrẏe mẏd hẏm sone he nome,
Vorto helpe ẏs felawes, and þo oþer ne mẏȝte be,
Toward þe wode, fram [1] wanne he come, þe Brutons gonne to fle.
Ac þo hii come among narwe heggẏs, hii stode aȝen anon,
And turnde [2] þe breste aȝen, & vaste slowe her fon.
And þe Romeyns stod aȝen þo, þat þer was gret slaȝt.
[3] þe erl of Oxenford ẏseẏ, þat þẏs fare nas noȝt,
Þulke, þat he mest truste to, as a gret companẏe,
He bed hẏm sẏwẏ, trwelẏche to do chyualerẏe.
Þo þẏs vorewarde was ẏmad, þoru out [4] ost he drou,
And percede þe ost þoru out, and vaste aboute slou.
So þat to her maẏster Petreye he come,
And vaste, as he adde ẏþoȝt, bẏ þe necke hẏm nome,
And [5] þraste hẏm adoun of ẏs hors, & hẏm sulue al so
[6] Anowarde hẏm vel adoun, as he adde ẏþoȝt to do."

---

[1] Whennes that hii come, *Ar.* [2] Toward hure enemẏes, & faste leyde hem on *Ar.* [3] So that the Erl of Oxenford seygh hure fare was noght, *Ar. Adeo ut in Codice etiam Harleyano* was *pro* nas *forsitan sit repo-nendum.* [4] This ost *Ar.* [5] Wrast *Ar. quo modo etiam in Codice Harleyano potest legi, si litteram primam non pro þ sed pro p (nam in hoc codice eodem modo hæ litteræ effinguntur) ha-beas.*

þe Romeyns sturte [1] to" anon, her prince vp to rere,
þe Brutons to helpe [2] her alf, vaste aboute were.
þer was pultyng and ssouyng, and stroc mony one.
So þat þe Brutons atte laste, among alle her fon,
Myd strengþe ladde vorþ Petreye [3] her prince þere.
þo þe Romeyns were wyþ out chef, dyscomforid hii were
[4] And to spradde hem her & þer, & þe oþere after vaste,
And slowe & despoylede, and to grounde hem caste,
And astored hem myd her armes, & þe hexte alyue nome,
So þat myd gret prowesse to [5] þe" kyng Arture hii come.
[6] Welle þat þe kyng was þo glad, vor he nuste her of nogt,
Vayre gyftys he hym gef, and wel mo he adde yþogt.
þe prysons amorwe to Parys he sende,
To holde in prison, & wyþ [7] hym god condut þer wende.
þe Romeyns [8] þogte þys wel, and, as þe maystres hete,
Vyftene þousend þer wende, þys prisons vorto mete.
þo þe Brytons come myd þe prisons þar,
þe Romeyns come agen hem al anonywar,
And wende hem to ssende anon, ac þe Brutons agen stode,
And defended hem wyle hii mygte myd wel stourdy mode.
So þat, vor defaute of help, hii were al ney yssend.
Ac þo com þe duc of Peyto, as God adde þe grace ysend,

---

beas. Fel doun euene vp hym, and ley ther bothe two *Ar.*

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] Hure lord, faste *Ar.* [3] The Romeynes prince there *Ar.* [4] And dis-parpled her & ther, the Brutones after hem faste, *Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] The kyng was tho glad y nogh, for he wiste ther of noght, *Ar.* [7] Hem *Ar.* [8] Thoght her on wel *Ar.*

Myd

Mýd þre þousend hors ywrýe, & þer of was [1] y war.
Þo were þe Brutons glad ýnou, & þen feld made bar,
And þe kyng of [2] Sýrge, and mony oþer hii slowe,
And louerdýnges, þat hii nome, to prison vaste hii drowe.
Þo hii to þe kýng come, and ssewed her stalwardhede,
Þe kýng wos þo glad ýnou, vor hym þozte he nadde no drede.

LUCÝE þe senatour in þozt was he sone,
In such ard cas as hým vel, wat were best to done.
So þat he þozte [3] stýllelýche, to a strong cýte wende,
Vorte þe emperour hým mýzte more poer sende.
Kýng Arture was her of ýwar, and þozte, ar he slepe,
Mýd al ýs poer bý þe weý somwar hým [4] kepe.
Vorþ he wende mýd ýs ost, and þo he was ý come
To þe stede, þer he wolde bee, cheucteyns he made somme;
As þe kyng of Cornwaýle, and of Scotlond al so,
Of Norþweýe, of Denemarch, of Bruteýne, of Peýto,
Of Gascoýne, of Normandýe, and erles zut þerto
Of Cartoýs, of Oxenford, of Leýcestre al so,
And sýre Wawein ýs neueu, flour of corteýsýe.
Hýs ost he delde a seuene, and in ech companýe
Výf þousend and výf hondred he dude of bachelerýe
And výfty and výue, and þat was vaýr seyngnerýe.
Þe eýzteþe ost to hým sulue he adde þer wyþoute,
Sýx þousend and sýx hondred þere were in þulke route

---

[1] *Id est*, he was aware of the trap of the Romans. *Nam*, "*Guithardus etenim, dux Pictavensium, comperto "dolo cum tribus milibus "advenerat,"* in Galfr. Mon.
[2] Sirie, *Ar.* [3] Priuely, *Ar.*
[4] To kepe *Ar.*

And

And syxtỳ and syxe, and ỳs dragon yrerd of golde,
As in stede of ỳs baner, and þanne, ȝỳf eny wolde
Come as to defense, þat ner wounded were,
Oþer werỳ, as in a castel recetted were þere.
þo he adde þỳs ost ỳset, he bỳgan hem rede,
And in þỳs bataỳle to conseỳly, and þes wordes seỳde:
" Myn [1] leue [2] priue kỳnȝtes, þat gode abbỳþ euere y be,
(" Vor non, as wỳde as ỳs þe worl, me ne ssal ȝoure per yseỳ)
" [3] ȝe abbeþ ỳ mad leuedỳ, Brutaỳne ȝoure owe lond,
" Of þrettene kỳnedoms, þat we abbeþ in vr hond.
" Vor þeỳ ȝe abbỳþ nou vỳf ȝer [4] of bataỳle vn vsed be,
" ȝut in ȝoure noble prowesse wel [5] durỳnde ỳch ȝou se,
" þat so gret folc of Romeỳns ȝe vewe mad fle
" In to þỳs toun her bỳuore, þat sone wolleþ out te.
" And ȝe ssolle hem mete & quelle, as so monye ssepe, vor nozt.
" Hii [6] wende wel her owe sleuþe on ȝou abbe y cazt,
" Wanne hii wolde of ȝoure lond so vỳllỳche abbe truage
" And noble men, as ȝe beþ, brỳnge in so vyle seruage.
" Nuteþ hii nozt þe chỳualerỳe, þat ȝe abbeþ in France ỳdo,
" In Norþweỳe, & in Denemarch, & in oþer londes al so,
" Of her stỳnkỳnge seruỳse þat ȝe abbỳþ out ỳbrozt?
" þỳs alue men ȝe ssolle wỳnne wel lyztloker & vor nozt.

[1] *Domestici mei, qui Brittanniam terdenorum regnorum fecistis dominam, vestræ congratulor probitati, quam nullatenus deficere, immo magis vigere, considero &c.* Galfr. Mon. [2] Preuede *Ar.* [3] Ye haueth wonne to Brutayne, that is our kynde lond, Thritty grete kỳngdomes, and beth nogh in oure hond *Ar.* [4] Out of bataille be, *Ar.* [5] Duryng *Ar.* [6] *Sane orientalium gentium segnitiam in vobis esse existimabant, dum patriam vestram facere tributariam, & vosmetipsos subjugare affectarent* Galfr. Mon.

" [1] Wuch

" [1] Wuch onouers wolde ȝou come, ȝyf ȝe hem ouercome?
" Vor we wolde anon þer after vorþ and wynne Rome.
" Of þe tresour, þat ȝou þanne [2] worþ," ne of tounes, ne of tours,
" Ne of londes, non ende ne worþ, ne of oþere honours.
þet folc bẏ hete hẏm þo echon, prest vor to be
To deẏe raþer in [3] feld, þan þe bataẏle fle.
Lucye þe cenatour al so in ys dede
Ordeẏned and radde ẏs ost, and þes wordes seẏde:
" Mẏne noble kẏnȝtẏs, to was poer and heste
" Alle londẏs ssole abouẏe [4] to' by Weste and bẏ Este,
" þencheþ on ȝoure elderne, þat were of so noble mẏȝte,
" [5] Ne dradde nogt to ssede her blod, vorto wynne her rẏȝt,
" Ac euere fogte, [6] as hem nere deþ ẏssape none,
" An so hii wonne her seẏgnerye, & ouercome her fon,
" And adde seruage of al þe world, were ẏt nou wel bẏgonne.
" þat we lore þe nobleye, þat hii so noblẏche wonne?
An ern, in stede of ẏs baner, he sette vp of golde,
And wende toward þẏs bataẏle, abẏde woso wolde.
Hii made her crẏ in eẏþer half, & to gader esmẏte,
Wo nuste neuere of slaȝt, þere he mẏȝte ẏwẏte.
[7] þat folc vel doun to grounde aslawe, as leues doþ of tre,
þe Brutons adde þe worse [8] vorste, vor hem was loþ to fle.

---

[1] Gret honour yogh wole byfalle, the Romeynes and ye ouercome, For we wole a non ther after wende to wynne Rome *Ar.* [2] Shul haue, *Ar.* [3] The feld, *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] That dradde *Ar.* [6] As thogh hem nere deth shape non, *Ar.* [7] The folk *Ar.* [8] Fight *pro* vorste *in Ar.*

þe kyng Bedwer was þere aslawe, vor þe kyng of Medes him slou

Wyd an lance þoru þe þrote, as he toward him drou.
Kaẏ ẏs felawe hym wolde awreke, kyng of Aungeo,
And to deþe was in þulke [1] verde ẏwounded al so.
And ȝut, as a noble kẏnȝt, hẏs felawe's bodẏ he nome,
And þer wyþ, ded as ẏt was, to þe kẏnge's dragon come.
Ou! louerd! þe deol þat þer was of hem of Normandẏe,
þo hii seẏe her kẏng aslawe, flour of chyualerẏe!
þe deol ek of hem of Aungeo, þo hii her kẏng ẏseẏe
[2] Wẏþ wounden to raunced so, þat he moste nede deẏe!
Hẏrel, Bedwer's neueu, þo ẏs vncle aslawe he seẏ,
[3] He verde as a wytles mon, yt was to be hẏm neẏ.
Mẏd þre hondred hors ywrẏe in ys wod rage he wende
Vorto a wreke ys [4] vncle deþ, as ver ẏs herte tende.
He perced ost and oþer, vorto he ẏseẏ ẏnou
þe kẏngẏs baner of Medes, þat ẏs vncle slou.
So gret was ys herte, þat of deþ he ne roȝte noþẏng.
[5] To grounde he smot he & ẏs, & aslowe þen kẏng,
And þer, as ẏs vncle ded laẏ, ẏs foule caroẏne he broȝte,
And rẏȝt þer bẏ pece mele hakked ẏt al to noȝte.
þo gradde he to ẏs felawes, mẏd gode herte þere,
To legge on vaste þe luþer men, þe wule hii [6] versse were.

---

[1] Route wounded *Ar.* [2] With his woundes alto raced, that *Ar.* [3] He ferd, as he were wod, myght noman come hym negh *Ar.* [4] Uncle's deth, so his herte tende *Ar.* [5] But atte laste the kyng Mede to his eynde he broghte, And thuder, that his vncle laẏ, his caroigne broghte *Ar.* [6] Fresh *Ar.*

Vor

Vor þe prowesse þat he adde ydo, hii stured hem alle vaste,
[1] And foȝte in eyþer alf, and þet folc adoun caste.
In þe Romeyns alf to deþe þer were ydo
þe kyng of Babylone, & þe kyng of Spayne al so,
And þe kyng of Medes, & tueye gret scenatours, & folc wyþoute ende.
[2] In þys half þere were aslawe þe noble men and hende,
Syre Lyger duc of Babyloyne, & anoþer duc al so,
And þe erl of Salesbury, and of [3] Cycestre þerto;
And also þe erl of Baþe, so þat þoru þys cas
þe compaynye [4] aþes half muche aneþered was.
þo com þe kyng of Brutayne, & syre Waweyn þe hende,
Myd her nywe ost al [5] verss, & stured hem in ech ende;
So þat þer were among hem þere to deþe y do
A gret duc, and tuo þousend, and oþer myd al so.
[6] þe" kyng Howwel, & syre Waweyn, [7] þat" so gode bodyes were,
[8] Euere hii were ylych verss, & slowe here & þere.
Bote hii som mon broȝte adoun, newe duntes hii smyte.
Weþer of hem betere were, [9] strong yt was to wyte.
Syre Waweyn wylnede euere myd al ys myȝte
Myd Lucye þe scenatour in batayle to fyȝte.
[10] Lucye ne wylnede naþemo, noþyng so muche alonde,
As to fyȝte myd a such kynȝt, hym sulue vorto fonde.

---

[1] So that ther was in aither side much folc doun caste *Ar.* [2] In Brutones side *Ar.* [3] Chestre *Ar.* [4] Of Brutones half much a peired was *Ar.* [5] Fressh *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] *Omittit Ar.* [8] That place hii made whar hii come, and stored her and there *Ar.* [9] Wonder it *Ar.* [10] Lucie welnede also no thyng more in londe, Than forto fight with sire Wawayn hym self forto fonde *Ar.*

So

So þat hii mette hem þer, boþe hii were wel vawe.
[1] þer were duntes aryȝt, and suerdes wel ydrawe.
þe Romeyns come to her mayster sone, to helpe hem in such cas,
So þycke, þat syre Waweyn ney ybrogt to grounde was.
þe kyng Arture yt vnder ȝet, and come sone in astounde.
" Wat do [2] ȝe," he seyde, " syre kyngtys? Quelleþ on to grounde.
" Wy lete ȝe [3] þys alue men þus longe alyue go?
" þencheþ on þe batayles, þat ȝe abbyþ ar þys y do,
" On vr elderne, þat þys wrecches [4] worrede myd vnryȝte,
" On vre franchyse, þat hii wolde bynyme vs, ȝyf hii myȝte.
" Ne lateþ none alyue go, to grounde smyteþ ȝoure fon.
" Syre Calybourne ys suerd he bygan to ssake anon,
And slou to grounde her & þer, ac he ne smot nogt one,
þat he ne slou hym oþer ys hors, &, among hem echon,
þe kyng of Lybye & of Bytynie hym sulf he gan quelle
Myd Calybourne, & sende her heþene soulys to helle.
þe Brutons, as hii versse were, to grounde þo slowe,
And þe Romeyns in her alf vaste ek aȝen drowe.
Lucye, to hardy ys men, pryked her and þer,
And bygonne as anywe batayle ryȝt as hii versse were.
Morond, erl of Gloucestre, myd ys ost by syde
In an valeye houede, þe endynge vorto abyde.
Atte laste myd ys versse volc to hem he come þar,
And byclosede [5] þys Romeyns by hynde anonywar.

---

[1] Duntes þer were grete y smyte of sweordes that were drawe *Ar.* [2] Ye nogh my knyghtes alle? quelleth *Ar.* [3] Thes halue men *Ar.* [4] Werred *Ar.* [5] The *Ar.*

þo were þe Brutons al aboue, hii slowe þo to grounde
ȝe mony þousend of þe Romeyns in a lutel stounde.
þe [1] scenatour was wiþ a sper Lucye þoru ysmyte.
þo adde þe Brutons þe maystrye al biȝyte,
þe Romeyns, þat miȝte of scapye, flowe vaste sone,
And þe Brutons after, vorte hii were alle ouercome.
[2] Armes hii adde þere & hors, & alle rychesse y nou.
þe kyng, þo hal þys was ydo, toward reste drou,
And let þe bodyes of ys men, þat aslawe were,
Gaderȳ out and burye noblyche ynou þere.
Kyngys in to her owe londe he let lede al so,
As Bedwer in to Normandie, and Kay to Aungeo,
And anoþer in to Flandres, and oþere of þe route
Kyngtys he let burye in abbeyes þer aboute.
Men bysyde of þe lond he het to burye ys fon.
Vor he ne kepte vor reuþe, þat þer wer vnbured non.
Ac Lucye's body he sende [3] hym to Rome,
And bed hem, þat her maystre's body vor ys truage nome,
And þat he nolde neuere more oþer truage hem sende,
Ac he wolde hym sulf ȝut þuder come, & seche hem in ech ende.
Grettore batayle þan þys was, ych wene, nas neuere non,
Bote yt were þulke of Troye, vor þer nas vnneþe non
Prince in al þe world, þat ne moste be þer, oþer sende
Fram þe West side of þe world to þe Estmost ende.

---

[1] Chenenteyn *Ar.* [2] Armure the Brutones hadde & hors and rychesse y nogh *Ar.* [3] Hit *Ar.*

4475

Þo adde þe kyng Arture ỳ wonne fram þe Westmost see
[1] Anon to þe mouns al þat lond, ar he come aȝe,
He þoȝte [2] wynne al clene Rome, & al þe lond þer aboute.
And vorto [3] passỳ vorþ þe mouns, he ȝarkede vaste is route.
And as he was prest to do þulke noble dede,
A messager com fram þỳs lond, & nỳwe tỳdỳnge hym seyde,
þat Modred, ỳs neueu, [4] wan he bỳtoȝ þỳs lond,
Adde ỳnome ys kỳnedom clanlỳche in ỳs hond,
And ỳcrouned hym sulue kỳng, þoru þe quene rede,
And huld hỳre in [5] spousbruche in vỳl flesse's dede.
Alas! þe luþer tricherye! hou mỳȝte [6] be more?
Þo was þe kỳng Arture vol of sorwe and sore,
[7] In wuch alf turne he nuste þo, weþer Est þe West,
Ac to wreke hỳm [8] of ỳs luþer neueu, ys herte ber euere best.
Þe veage toward Rome he [9] bỳleuede vor þỳs cheance,
And þe kỳng Howel of Brutaine mỳd þe poer of France
He [10] bỳleuede þer, towardy ỳs londes bỳȝonde see,
And hopede to wỳnne Rome, wanne he come eft aȝe.
Mỳd þe poer of þys londe hỳderward he drou,
And mỳd [11] þe kynges here bỳsỳde hỳm þoȝte [12] er longe ỳnou.

---

[1] A non to the mountes to ward Rome non was hym a yee, *Ar.* [2] To wynne *Ar.* [3] Passe ouer the mountes, he grethed faste his route *Ar.* [4] Wham he bytoke *Ar.* [5] Spousbreche in vil lechores ded *Ar.* [6] Hit be *Ar.* [7] In whather half tourne he myghte he nuste Est or West, *Ar.* [8] Of Mordred, his herte *Ar.* [9] Lefte *Ar.* [10] Bilefte, to kepe his londes ther by yonde the see *Ar.* [11] — *dimisso Hoëlo, duce Armoricorum, cum exercitu Galliarum, ut partes illas pacificaret, confestim cum insulanis tantummodo regibus, eorumque exercitibus, Britanniam remeavit* Galfr. Mon. [12] Erst *Ar.*

Ac

Ac Modred, þe luþer suỳke, þer bỳuore bỳsozte
Chelrỳk kỳng of Saxons, þat [1] he hem help brozte,
And he byhet hym and ỳs al Kent ver and ner,
Al þat Hengỳst adde wule [2] wyþe kỳnge's daye Vortỳger:
He bỳhet hỳm and ys also al Norþomberlond,
[3] Al þat lond fram Homber anon into Scotlond.
[4] þo þat eỳzte hondred ssỳpes into þys lond he brozte
[5] Vol of Saracens ỳarmed, as he hỳm bỳsozte.
Gret poer of Yrlond Modred hỳm [6] wan al so
Of Pỳcars, and of ech maner men þer to,
þat he wuste þat no loue to þe kyng Arture bere.
So þat eỳzte score þousend of hors ỳwrỳe þer were
In [7] ỳs ost, þo hii were gadered in þỳs cas,
Wat of Cristỳne, wat of payns, & al to muche þat was.
þo Arture mỳd ys poer ariuede in þỳs londe,
Modred bỳgan mỳd ỳs ost azen vaste stonde.
Atte hauenc an batayle hii smỳte mỳd gret maỳn,
þer was aslawe [8] þen hende kỳngt þe noble syre Waweỳn,
And Aunsel þe kyng of Scotlond, and monỳ þousend also.
Ac luþer Modred atte laste, þo al þỳs was ỳ do,
Flen mỳd al ỳs poer to Wỳnchestre vaste,
So þat þe kyng Arture þe veld adde atte laste.
þo [9] Guanwaur, þe luþer quene, hurde of þys cas,
Fram Euerwyk to Carleon heo flen mỳd quyc pas,

[1] He som help hym broght, *Ar.* [2] By kynge's *Ar.* [3] And the lond toward Humber *Ar.* [4] So that vi. hundred shipes *Ar. at Galfridus Mon. plane ut Codex Harleyanus.* [5] Ful of mysbileued men, as he *Ar.* [6] Gat also *Ar.* [7] This ost, whan hii *Ar.* [8] The curteys knyght Walwayn *Ar.* [9] Gonoure, *Ar.*

And bỳ com nonne þer, to lỳbbe in chaste lỳue.
[1] Som wat heo was er adrad, ar heo hỳede so blỳue.
Heo ne hỳede nozt azen ỳre louerd, to wolcome hym to londe.
[2] zut ỳre was betere nonne be, þan come vnder ỳs honde.
Þo kỳng Arture adde ỳbured ỳs folc þat ded was,
He sywed after þe traỳtor mỳd wel quyc pas.
Þe ssrewe [3] zarked ỳs ost, and azen hỳm com,
And wyþout Wỳnchestre anoþer bataỳle he nom.
Þer hii dude sorwe ỳnou, and slowe to grounde vaste,
Ac þe traỳtor was [4] bỳneþe, and flen atte laste
To Cornwaỳle myd god eỳr, he ne dorste no ner abyde.
Þer he gadered hỳm nỳwe ost, aboute in eche sỳde,
So þat he adde [5] vnder al. mỳd þat hỳm bỳleued er,
Sỳxtỳ þousend hors [6] ỳ wrỳe, al to muche was þer.
Hys ost he [7] dỳzte suyþe wel, al hou ỳt ssolde be,
And suor he wolde raþer deỳe, þan euer eſt to flе.
Kỳng Arture was anguỳsous [8] in ỳs companỳe,
þat þe luþer traỳtor adde of scaped hỳm so tuỳe.
He sywed hym mỳd ỳs folc to Cornwaỳle vaste,
Bỳsyde þe water of Camble hii mete [9] hem" atte laste.
Þer hii smỳte an bataỳle deol uol ỳ nou,
þat deol ỳt was so muche folc in eyþer sỳde me slou.
Vor þer ne byleued in noþer sỳde none heỳ mon vnneþe,
Kỳng, ne duc, ne oþer, þat nas ỳbrozt to deþe.

[1] A gast heo was to religion, er heo highed so blyue. Heo ne yede a yenst hure lord, *Ar.* [2] Beter hure thoghte nonne to be, than to come, *Ar.* [3] Yut ordeỳned his ost, *Ar.* [4] Ouercome, and flegh, *Ar.* [5] Under hym, with that hym leuede er, *Ar.* [6] Heled, alto *Ar.* [7] Gan a maye faste, hugh hit sholde be, *Ar.* [8] And his *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.*

Ac

Ac Modred þe traỳtor adde more folc [1] of" ỳ nou.
þo þe kỳng Arture ỳseỳ, þat me ys folc so slou,
And þe kyng of Denemarch was aslawe, & þe kyng also
Of Norþweye, & of ys oþer men mony þousend þerto,
And he sey, þat ỳs fon stode euere aȝen vaste,
To þe lutel folc þat he adde he spec atte laste.
" [2] Sulle, he seyde, " vr lỳf dere ar we be ded,
" [3] And ỳchelle sulle mỳn dere ynou, wanne þer nỳs oþer red,
" Abbe ych slawe þe false suỳke, þe luþer traỳtor,
" Hyt worþ me þanne vorto deỳe gret joỳe & honour.
He drou Calyborne ys suerd, and in eỳther sỳde slou,
And vorte he to þe traỳtor com, made hym weỳ gode ỳnou.
He hente of verst ỳs helm, and suþþe mỳd wylle god
Anne stroc he ȝef hỳm, mỳd wel stourdỳ mod,
And þoru haubert and ys colèr, þat nere noþỳng souple,
He smot of ỳs heued as lỳȝtlỳche as ỳt were a lute stouple.
þat was ỳs laste chỳualerỳe, þa vaỳre ended ynou.
Vor þe folc so þỳcke com, þe wule he her louerd slou,
Aboute him in ech alf, þat among so monỳ fon
He aueng deþe's wounde, and wonder nas yt none.
Ac ouercome vas he noȝt, þeỳ ỳs wounden dedlỳch were.
þo [4] he adde ỳs laste chỳualerỳe þus noblỳche ydo þere,
He [4] ȝef þe croune of þỳs lond þe noble Constantyn,
(þe erl Cadore's sone of [5] of" Cornwaỳle,) þat was ỳs cosyn

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] "Selle we," he seyde *Ar.* [3] Myn shal be dere bought, ther is non othur red *Ar.* [4] *Sed & inclitus ille Arturus rex lethaliter vulneratus est, qui illinc ad sananda vulnera sua in insula Avallonis advectus, cognato suo Constantino, & filio Cadoris ducis Cornubiæ, diadema Britanniæ concessit anno ab incarnatione Domini* D.XLII. Galfr. Mon. [5] *Desunt hic bina folia in Ar. in quibus, præter alia,*

And let hym lede in to an yle, vorto hele ys wounde,
And deyde as þe beste kyngt, þat me wuste euere yfounde.
Ac naþeles þe Brutons and þe Cornewalysse of ys kunde
Wenyþ he be alyue gut, & abbeþ hym gut in mynde,
þat he be to comene gut, to wynne agen þys lond.
And nogt, vor þan at Glastynbury ys bones suþþe me wond,
And þer touore þe heye wened, amydde þe quer ywys,
As ys bones lyggeþ, ys tumbe wel vayr ys.
In vyf hondred ger of grace, and fourty and tuo,
In þys manere in Cornwale to deþe he was ydo.

CONSTANTYN was þo kyng, after þe kyng Arture.
[1] As þe Saxons sette agen hym, þe wule hii mygte dure;
And Modrede's tueye sones, þe wule hii dorste abyde,
Ac Constantyn [2] hem to drof, eyþer in ys syde,
þen anne in to Wynchestre, and þer wyþ sorwe y nou,
In chyrche to vore þe heye wened Constantyn hym slou.
þe oþer flen to Londone, and þoru Constantyn al so.
þer by uore þe heye wened to deþe he was y do.
Conan [3] slou suþþe Constantyn in þe þyrdde gere.
At Stonhenghe he was yburyd, as ys elderne werc.

---

oratione solutâ quædam concepta fuisse è fragmento quodam plane colligo. [6] *Dele.*

[1] The Saxones werred faste on hym, *Ar. omisso* as, *pro quo* ac *malim.* [2] Aboute hem drof ech on his side, And wente to Wynchestre, *Ar.* [3] *Exinde tertio anno interfectus est*] *Constantinus*] *à Conano, & juxta Utherpendragon infra lapidum structuram sepultus fuit, quæ haud longe à Salesbiria mira arte composita Anglorum lingua* Stanheng *nuncupatur* Galfr. Mon.

Seyn

Seỏn Dauỏd deỏde þer bỏuore, bỏssop of Walỏs,
And þer he was vaỏre ỏburỏd, in ys owe chỏrche ỏwỏs.
Constantyne's neueu Aurelỏ was kỏng þo,
And leuede in ỏs kenedom tuo ȝer and nanmo.

VORTỎPOR was þo kyng vour ȝere vnneþe.
þe Saxons he broghte al bỏneþe, & monỏ on to deþe.

MALGO com þo after hỏm, þat þe vaỏroste kỏng was,
þat me wuste euere in þỏs lond, & al so þer nas
Streȝgore mon non bỏ ỏs daỏ. vor he wan ek to þys londe
þe sỏx ỏles þat beþ aboute, and heldỏs adde an honde,
As Godlonde, and Orcadas, and al so Yrlonde,
Norþweỏe, and Denemarch, and al so Yslonde.

CARỎC was kỏng after hỏm, þat stalworde mon was,
Ac to prout he was & to fals, þat ssende þỏs londe alas!
Vor þe Saxons & þe Englỏsse men were euere in þỏs londe,
And adde aȝen þe Brutons euere worre an honde.
þo hii seỏe þe falshede of þe kỏng Carrỏc,
Hii wende after [a] Godmond, þat was kỏng of Affrỏc,
To helpe hem wynne þys londe, & bỏ hete hym vayre ynou.
þe kyng Godmond mỏd vaỏr ost hederward sone drou,
And mỏd hondred þousend men, & sỏxty þousend þer to,
He come here mỏd þe Saxons þe worre vor to do.

---

[1] Katerik *Ar.* [2] *Qui tunc in Hibernia erat, ut è* Galfrido Monumetensi *liquet.*

þe Saxons, and [1] þet grete folc, þat come so of Affryc,
Asaỳled vaste þe Brutons, and her kyng Carryc.
Monỳ batayle hii smỳte, & sỳwỳde vpe hỳm vaste,
And fram toune to toune hỳm drỳue, so þat atte laste
Hii drỳue hỳm to [2] Cỳrencestre, & bỳsỳged hỳm þer inne.
Þen toune hii barnde vpen hỳm, ar hii mỳgte [3] hym wynne.
Þer hii smỳte an batayle. suþþe hii drỳue ywỳs
Caryc ouer Seuerne Weste in to Walỳs.
Vor þe [4] kunde men of þỳs londe recetted were þer
Euere, wanne of strangemen ỳworred hii were,
Þet luþer heþene folc [5] varnde þo vaste,
And [6] desturde al þỳs londe, and tounes adoun caste.
Wat mỳd fure, wat mỳd suerd, hii destrude al þat hii founde.
Hii ne sparede prest, ne chyrche, þat hii ne brogte to grounde.
Hii, þat mygte of scapỳe, vaste flowe þere
To Walỳs, and to Cornwaỳle, and hudde hem vor fere.
Þe erche bỳssop of Londone, and of Euerwỳk al so,
Þo hỳi seye, þat Cristendom to grounde was al ỳdo,
And chỳrcben alle ỳcast ỳdoun, þe relỳkes hii nome ỳwỳs,
Þat hii adde of holỳ men, and flowe in to Walys.
Þe relỳkes nolde hii nogt bỳleue, ac bere wỳþ hem vor fere.
Vor raþer hii wolde ỳmartred be, þan hii [7] ỳperỳsed were.
And into þe lasse Brutayne men flowe al so þycke,
So þat here nas nogt bỳleued, bote heþene folc and wỳcke.

---

[1] This much folc, *Ar.*
[2] Circetre *Ar.* *cum* i. civitas passerum *supra lin. ab ead. manu.*
[3] Hit *Ar.*
[4] Kynde *Ar.*
[5] *Pro* barnde. *Nam* brende *in Ar. sed* u *pro* b *sæpissime in vett. libris.*
[6] Destruyde *Ar.*
[7] A peyred *Ar.*

So

So þat fram Norþ into þe Souþ no Cristendom nas,
Ne fram Seuerne to þe Souþ see, ac pure heþenesse was.
Alas! alas! þe god Arture, to [1] ver he was þo.
Hys deþ brozte to þys lond muche sorwe and wo.

[2]SAXONS & þe Englysse, & her compaynye,
Adde þo of þys londe al clene þe maystrye,
And made hem kynges of þys lond, as hii adde byuore,
Ac þe Brutons nadde so clene er neuere her poer uerlore.
þe Saxons and þe Englysse in pes hukde þo
Ech kyng ys kynedom, þat hii dude er in wo.
Syx kynges hii were some tyme, as of Kent, of Westsex,
Of Estangle, of Norþhomber, of þe Marche, of Estsex.
In bygynnynge of þys boc me may rede, and nozt lye,
Hou muche lond ech of hem adde to ys partye.
þe verste kyng þat of Saxons was, was verst kyng of Kent
Hengyst, þoru wan þys lond verst was yssend.
Hyt was [3] eyzte & fyfty zer after Hengyste's kynedom,
Ar eny kyng of Saxons in Westsex com.
Vor Hengyst was kyng fourty zer, & in þe eyzte zere
After ys deþ at zernemouþe aryued þer were
Vyf ssypuol of Saxons, y armed wel y nou,
Certyk het her cheuenteyn, þat to þys lond hem drou.
Wel sene zer þer after, a duc, (þat wyde was couþ,)
Y cluped Port, myd ys ost [4] atte hauene of Portesmoþ,

---

[1] Fer *Ar.* [2] The Saxones *Ar.* [3] xlviii. yer after *Ar.*
[4] Aryued at the hauene *Ar.*

And

And after Port, þat was ẏs namė, þe hauene me clupeþ so.
So þat her poer euere wax, þe Brutons ssame to do,
And monẏ a bataẏle hii smyte. So þat atten ende
þe Saxons wonne of þẏs lond al þe Souþ ende
Euere by Souþe Temese fram Est into West.
Certyk hii made þer kẏng, vor he was þerto best.
Westsex hii clupede ẏs kẏnedom, as ȝe abbyþ yhurd ẏlome.
þẏs was a lute byuore ar kyng Artur come.
þe verste kẏng of Norþhomber in þe ȝer of grace bẏgan
Vẏf hondred & seuene and fourtẏ, [1] as me telle can.
After kẏng Arture yt was, and þo was Kynryc
Noble kẏng of Westsex, after ẏs fadẏr Certyc.
Vor þo þe Englysse men adde in þys londe poer,
Hii worrede Norþward, and wonne ver and ner.
So þat hii wonne Homberlond, & a noble bachẏler,
þat het Yde, hii made kẏng, þer nas naur þo ẏs per.
He come of Woden þe olde louerd, as [2] in teþe kne,
þat þe [3] Saracens weneþ, þat he a gret God be.
Vor þulke Woden," þe grete louerd, sones adde þre,
Weldeg, and Wẏȝtleg, and Beldeg þat was so fre.
Of Weldeg come þe kẏng of Kent, & þe kẏng of þe March of
þe oþer.
þe kẏng of Westsex & of Homber of þe þrẏdde, þat was her
broþer.
þulke Woden adde a wẏf, þat ycluped was dame Frye,
[4] A Latyn dame Venus, as ẏchabbe ẏseẏd nou tueẏe.

---

[1] As y wel telle can *Ar.* [2] In the tethe gre, *Ar.* [3] Mysbileued poeple wende, a God he hadde be. This Woden *Ar.* [4] In Latyn *Ar.*

[1] þer

[1] þer uore þe Englỳsse clupede; after Woden, Wodnesday,
þat ỳs day in þe wouke, and, after Frỳe, Frỳdaỳ.
Vor þe heþene Englỳsse men, þat mys byleued were þo,
Byleuede, þat in heuene Godes hii were bo,
And þat to tueye sterren, þat me sucþ ylome
Venus and Mercurỳus, hii weneþ þat hii bỳcome.
þe Saxons and þe Englỳsse come in to þỳs londe,
As we seỳþ, at otỳme, as ỳch vnder stonde.
[2] Her londes suþþe, þo hii mỳzte, hii delde as hii couþe,
þe Englysse þe Norþalf, þe Saxons bỳ Souþe,
As Estsex and Mỳddelsex, and Souþ ward al Souþsex,
And al West bỳ [3] Norþe Temese, al clene Westsex.
þe Englysse Norþuolc & Souþuolc adde al in her hond,
And al West bỳ Norþe Temese, & al Norþ Homberlond.
And þe kỳnges of Westsex lengost gonne dure,
And alle þe oþere wonne to hem, as ȝe ssolle her after ỳhure.
þe Brutons, as ỳchabbe ỳtold," in West Walys were,
And worrede euere, as hii dorste, fram ȝere to ȝere.
Vor bỳ þe kynge's daye Chenlyng, þat was Kenrỳke's sone,
Hii dude hem verrore in þỳs londe, [4] þat hii were in wone,
And wonne þe myddel of þỳs lond to Bedeford anon,
And strengþede casteles and astorỳde monỳon.

---

[1] The olde Saxones, after Woden, cleped Wodenesday, And, after dame Frye, his wiff, me clepede the Friday *Ar.* [2] Hure lond sutthe by twixt hem hii delde as hii couthe, The Englissh in the Northhalf, & the Saxones by Southe. And nempned the contreỳs after hem, & lefte the names olde. As of Estsaxones Estsex, of Estenglissh Estangle, that is yit holde. The Brutons, as y haue told, *Ar.* [3] *F.* Souþe. [4] Than hit was hure wone, *Ar.*

So

So þat at Bedeforde come þe Saxons,
And smyte an batayle, and to dryue þe Brutons,
And nome þre of her gode castles, þat stronge were al so,
Eýnesham, and Bunsyntone, and Aýlesbur þerto.
So þat Cristýndom was al clene ver lore,
And heþenesse [1] in to al þýs lond, as ých seyde byuore,"
And yt laste aboute an fourty ger, forte Seynt Austyn com,
And þoru Seyn Gregory þe pope brogte Cristendom.

SEÝNT Austyn myd ys felawes to Engelond com
þoru þe pope Seýn Gregory to prechý Cristendom.
Maurýce was þo emperour, & þer adde ýbe býuore
Výfty emperours at Rome, [2] suþþe God was ybore.
In þe výf hondred ger of Grace Seýnt Austýn hýder com
And four score ger and tuo, to prechy Cristendom.
And aboute an hondred ger yt was, and fýftý al so,
Aſter þat Saxons & Englysse verst come þys lond to.
And after kyng Arture's deþe aboute an fourtý ger
þat so noble kyng was of þýs lond, as we abbeþ ýtold er.
þo Seynt Austýn & ys felawes þus come to þýs lond,
[3] Wýppe was kyng of þe Marche, & [4] Adelfred" of Homber-
lond;
Celrýc was kyng of Westsex, & of Kent kýng [5] Aylbrygt.
And of Estsex ys syster sone, þat me clupede kyng [6] Sebrygt,
Wel an fourty holý men, and monekes [7] echone,
Seýnt Austýn adde wyþ hým, & þo nas he nogt [8] one.

[1] In to al this lond bygan to catche more, *Ar.* [2] Ar God *Ar.* [3] With *Ar.* [4] *Deest in Ar.* [5] Etherbert [*l.* Ethelbert] *Ar.* [6] Sebert *Ar.* [7] Negh echone, *Ar.* [8] Al one *Ar.*

þa

þo hii come in to þýs lond, to kyng [1] Aylbrýȝt of Kent,
In was lond hii aryuede, hii sende her maundement,
þat hii were fram Rome ycome, in heý message ywýs,
þat so gret joye ssolde turne, to hym and alle hýs,
And to joye wyþouten ende, ȝýf he hem vnder stode.
" Suche býhestes," quaþ þe kyng, " me þencheþ beþ gode,
" Lateþ hem vynde mete ýnou, & þat hii abbeþ nede to,
" Forte ychabbe wyþ hem yspoke, [2] & wyte wat hii wolleþ do.
For þe kýng wel vnderstod of þe Cristýndom,
þat by uore hem was in þýs lond, & þoru hem to grounde com.
So þat atte laste, (wat halt yt to telle longe ?)
þe kyng býgan and ys folc Cristendom auonge.
And of Seýnte Peter & Seýn Poul an chýrche he let rere
[3] In Est ende of Kanterbury, þat þe [4] chef chýrche were.
Erchebýssop of Kanterburý Seynt Austýn was þer
þe verst þat euer was, vor at London þe se was er.
þo com Merlyne's word to soþe atte ende,
[5] þat þe dýgne se to Kanterburý of London ssolde wende.
At Roucestre, þat ys [6] toune in Kent of grete fame,
Seynt Austyn made a býssop, Seyn Juste was ys name,
þat was a monek ys felawe. So þat atte fyn
[7] Sýn Juste was þe vorste býssop, after Seynt Austýn.

---

[1] Ethelbert *Ar.* [2] To wite *Ar.* [3] In the Est *Ar.* [4] Hed churches were *Ar. sed alibi in eod. Codice (in quo sane multæ, minus necessariæ, repetitiones)* hed churche were. [5] That the se of London to Canterbury sholde wende *Ar.*, *sed alibi* the dignyte *pro* the se. [6] A toun *Ar.* [7] Seýnt Just was Erchebisshop made after Seynt Austyne. Seynt Mellyt *Ar.*

Seyn

SEYN Mellẏt þe holy mon in to Estsex wende
To prechẏ þer Cristẏndom, as Seynt Austyn hym sende.
Nou departeþ [1] euere" Temese Estsex fram Kent.
[2] Sebrẏȝt he vond þer kyng, þo he was þuder ywent.
He turnde hym to Cristyndom, and þe contreye al so.
Sebrẏȝt and þe kẏng of Kent, þo al þẏs was ẏ do,
At Londone of Seyn Poul an heued chẏrche gonne rere,
þat ȝut ys, and Seyn Mellyt [3] byssop made þere.
þus come, lo! Cristendom aȝen in to þẏs londe
Among þe heþene Saxons, as ych vnder stonde.
Ac among þe Brutons in Walẏs was euere Cristendom
Suþþe yt verst þoru þe kyng Lucie hẏder come.
And þat was bẏuore þulke tẏme four hondred ȝer,
An aboute an four & tuentẏ, as we abbeþ ẏwrẏte er.
þe pope Eleuþerẏ, þat sende verst hẏder Cristendom,
Was þe [4] þretteþe pope, þat after Seẏnte Peter com.
þe decẏples, þat he hẏder sende, Cristendom to brẏnge,
[5] Bẏleuede in a wẏldernesse, after her prechẏnge,
þat me clepuþ nou Glastẏnbury, þat desert was þo.
And þer hii bẏcome monekes, and nome to hem mo,
And þer mẏd her owe honde hii rerde hem verst [6] anchyrche
Of herdles, and of [7] ȝerden, as hii couþe wurche.

---

[1] Deest *Ar.* [2] Sebert *Ar.* [3] Hii made bishop there *Ar.* [4] xiii. *Ar.* [5] By lefte *Ar.* [6] *Cujus figuram cum alibi, tum etiam in libro præclaro (ab Antiquario pererudito contexto, &c.) non ita pridem à nobis edito, cui tit.* The History and Antiquities of Glastonbury, *videsis.* [7] Yerdes, *Ar.*

And

And þat was þe verste churche, þat in Engelond come,
And þe aldest hous al so, as in lawe of Cristendom.
þeruore me yt aþ euere ycluped, þe olde chýrche, ýwýs.
Moný ys þe [1] holy halwe, þat her ý bured ýs,
[2] Nour so moný in Engelonde, to soþe ych segge þys.
[3] And, as me aþ wule ýsed, grettore oþ non nýs,
þan by þe olde chýrche of Glastynburý, wo so dep oþ nome."
For þer was chýrche four hondred ȝer, ar Seynt Austyn hý-
der come,
And Seyn Patryc was þer monek, & abbeþ suþþe þer,
ȝe ar Seynt Austyn come mo þan an hondred ȝer.
And in ryȝt alf of þe wened ýbured he was þer al so.
Sýx score ȝer and on he was old, ar deþ hym come to.
[4] þus was at Glastýnburý verst ýholde vp Cristendom,
And suþþe nou, after þat þet folc of Englyss hýder come,
And þe Brutons were ýdrýue al in to West Walýs,
Hii helde vorþ þer Cristendom, and býssopes ýwys.
So þat, þo Seynt" Austyn com among hem, he vond
Byssopes and monekes moný on in þe lond.
In þe cýtý of Bangor a gret hous þer was,
þat were vnder [5] sene cellen, and þer of non nas

[1] Good seynt, *Ar.* [2] Nowhar *Ar.* [3] And, as me by olde daye seide, gretter oth was [*f.* nas] holde, Than by the olde church of Glastynbury ho so swery wolde *Ar.* [4] Thus alther furst at Glastynbury sprong vp Cristendom, That sutthe that Englissh men to this londe com, That hethene were, The Brutons dryue in to West Walis, And ther hii hulde hure Cristendom, that furst they toke ywis. So that whan Seynt *Ar.* [5] vii. celles, & ther of non ther nas, That ccc. monekes nere inne othur mo. And alle lyuede by hure swynch, loke whare they do now so. Dinoc het *Ar.*

þat þre hondred monekes [1] were inne, oþer mo.
And alle leuede by her suenche, loke ȝýf hem nas wo.
Dynok het her abbod, þat gret clerc was and god.
Seynt Austýn was wel ý paýd, þat her býlyue was so god.
And naþeles he hem en yoýnede [2] bocsomnesse do
To þe herchebýssop of Kanterburý, & to Englýsse men also,
[3] And among Englysse men vorþ mýd hým Cristendom to amende,
And wende aboute and prechý, as þe pope hem sende.
þe býssop hým ansuerede, and þe abbod Dýnok,
Al mýd grete resons and wyt of her boc,
þat wan hii adde hem sulue erchebýssop and kýng,
Hii ne ssolde to Englýsse men abue rýȝt noþýng.
For þe folc of Englýss & Saxons [4] her lond hem býnome,
And her kunde erýtage, mýd trayson & suyke dome.
War vor hii nolde for non man nanmore to hem wende,
þan to so mony houndes, bote yt were hem to ssende.
" ȝýf ȝe nolle," quaþ Seyn Austyn, " wyt ȝoure breþeren in peys be,
" þat beþ, as ȝe wýteþ wel, Crýstýne as wel as ȝe;
" And ȝýf ȝe nolle Englysse men Gode's lawe teche,
" And vorþ myd me among hem Cristendom preche,
" ȝoure fon ssolle her poer [5] amorýg ȝou wýde reche,
" And brýng ȝou to deþe monýon, & þat ssal be ȝoure wreche.

[1] *Malim*, nere, *ut in Ar.* [2] Obedience to do *Ar.* [3] And go with hym to Englissh men, Cristendom to mende, And helpe hym preche amonges hem, as the pope hem sende. The bisshopes hym answerede, *Ar.* [4] Hure lond hem hadde bynome With gile, and hure heritage with falsnesse and tresone. Wherfor hii wolde *Ar.* [5] Among *Ar.*

After

After Seynt Austỳne's daỳe to soþe com al þỳs,
Ac þe wule he was alỳue nozt, as ȝe nowe ỳhure ỳwỳs.

KỲNG [1] Aỳlbryȝt gret despỳt adde in ỳs þozt,
þat þe Brutons nolde Seynt Austỳn abue nozt.
[2] Edelfred, þat was kỳng of Norþhomberlond,
He entỳced and oþer kỳnges here of þỳs lond,
þat hii wende to Walys, and þe Brutons ssende.
þe kỳnges, þo hii preste were, myd poer þuder wende.
At þe cỳtỳ of Cayrleon þe Brutons ost þer was.
þe Englỳsse anon þuderward drowe mỳd god pas.
A gret bataỳle hii smỳte þer in a lute stounde.
Ac Brocmayl, duc of Brutons, was þer ỳbrozt to grounde.
Vor he flen and bỳleuede ys folc, þo he nuste oþer won,
Somme aslawe and somme ỳwounded, and bỳ neþe echon.
Nou were þer ỳ come fram Bangor monekes monỳon,
In vastyng and in orỳsons, to [3] bydde aȝen her fon.
And ermỳtes and monekes of oþer [4] studes bỳsyde
Bede God, þat þe Brutons þe maỳstrỳe moste bỳtỳde.
þo such folc of þys holymen kỳng Elfred ỳseỳ,
Sỳtte and [5] bỳdde vor her folc, and crỳe [6] on God an heỳ,
And me sede hỳm, þat hii [7] dede vor þe Brutons echon:
" ȝyf yt so ỳs," quaþ þe kỳng " þat hii [8] byddỳþ vor vr fon,
" þanne vỳȝteþ hii aȝen vs, as muche as ỳs her mỳȝte,
" Mỳd her armes to God, þeỳ hii mỳd [9] arme ne fỳȝte.

---

[1] Ethelbert *Ar.* [2] Elfrid, *Ar.* [3] Praye *Ar.* [4] Houses bisyde. And prayed to God the Brutones *Ar.* [5] Praye *Ar.* [6] To *Ar.* [7] Prayed for hure Brutones *Ar.* [8] Prayeth for oure fon *Ar.* [9] Armes *Ar. sed alibi* wepne *in eod. Codice.*

" Sleþ

" Sleþ hem [1] hastelyche anon, as oure pure fon.
þat folc was [2] prest þer to, & to grounde slowe anon.
So þat tuelf hondred holymen hii martrede þere,
And aboute an vyftỳ of scapede alyue vor fere.
þo was yt to hem ycome, þat Seynt Austyn hem seyde,
And nozt vor þan God dude wreche [3] of þe luþer dede.
Vor þe kyng Edelfred wende toward Bangor þo,
Vorto destrue þe Brutons [4] wat he founde mo.
þe [5] louerdynges, þat þer were, zarked hem anon,
And ordeynede her ost, to fyzte azen her fon.
Ac Bledder duc of Cornwayle, and Cadwan of Walys,
And Margad anoþer duc, and her poer al y wys,
And oþer Brutons þat þer were, smyte hem out anon,
And a batayle strong ynou smyte myd her fon.
So þat mo þan ten þousend were of Englyss ybrozt to deþe,
And þe kyng [6] Adelfred was wounded, þat of scapede alyue vnneþe.
Ac Bledder, duc of Cornwayle, aslawe was þo,
And mony of þe Brutons, [7] & of þe Englysse wel mo.
And þe Englysse flowe ouer Homber vaste.
A parlement þe Brutons made [8] þo atte laste,
To chese hem anywe kyng, & chose þe duc Cadwan,
þat was among hem alle þe stalwordoste man.

---

[1] Boldely a non, *Ar.* [2] Redy *Ar.* [3] Of thulke luther dede. Forth went kyng Elfrid of Northhumberlonde tho To Bangor, to destruye *Ar.* [4] That *Ar.* [5] Lordes of the Brutones raide hem anon, *Ar.* *Sed alibi* zarkede *pro* raide *in eod. Cod.* [6] Elfrid *Ar.* [7] Ac of *Ar.* [8] Att Chestre atte laste, *Ar.*

þe

þo þỳs kyng ỳcrouned was, hii [1] ȝarked hem anon,
And into Homberlond sỳwede [2] vp her fon.
þe kỳng [3] Edelfred & ỳs alf mỳd þe poer of ys londe
And of oþer londes [4] ȝare was aȝen hem vorto stonde.
þo hii were to þỳs bataỳle prest in eyþer sỳde,
Some [5] frend hỳm byþoȝte bet, & bỳtuene hem gonne rỳde,
And made acord bỳtuene hem, þat þe kỳng [6] adde al þat lond
[7] Eldelfred byȝonde Homber, alclene in ỳs hond,
And kỳng Cadwan bỳ Souþe Homber, & ỳs owe lond Walỳs.
þoru hard oþ & god ostage ỳconfermed was al þỳs.
Bỳtuene þys tueye kỳnges anon so gret loue þer was,
þat her noþer nadde no þỳng, þat to oþere's wỳlle nas.
Bỳtuene þe kyng [8] Edelfred, and þe quene ỳs wỳf,
þer after, þoru [9] luþer wỳlle, wax a gret strỳf,
þat þe kỳng hỳre drof aweỳ, mỳd chỳlde as heo was,
And nom hỳm anoþer wỳf, and þat was a deluol cas.
To þe kỳng Cadwan þe quene wende þo,
And crỳde on hỳm, þat he [10] ssolde helpe hỳre in ỳr wo.
þe kỳng Cadwan was þo aboute, bỳtuene hỳre & [11] kỳng
To make acord bỳ ỳs poer, and ne mỳȝte vor noþyng.
So þat he hulde vorþ þe quene in ỳs owe house,
Mỳd chỳlde helples as heo was, mỳd þe quene ys owe spouse,
þat mỳd chỳlde was as wel as heo, and of one tỳme neỳ.
And þo þe chyldren were ỳbore, þat of [12] kunne were so heỳ,

---

[1] Raide hem *Ar.* [2] Upon *Ar.* [3] Elfrid in his side with power of *Ar.* [4] Redy *Ar.* [5] Men *Ar.* [6] Shold haue *Ar.* [7] Elfrid *Ar.* [8] Elfrid, *Ar.* [9] Yuel will, *Ar.* [10] Wolde *Ar.* [11] The kynge *Ar.* [12] Kynne *Ar.*

Hii clupede Edwỳne þe þỳnge's sone of Norþhomberlond,
And Cadwal þe kỳnges sone here of þỳs Souþlond.
þỳs chỳldren were wel ȝonge ỳsend to Salomon, þe kyng
Of þe lasse Brutaỳne, to gode norỳsỳnge.
þe kyng hem norỳsede wel, & wyþ hỳm priue ỳnou,
And þo hii to elde come, to armes hem drou.
So þat stalward [1] kỳntes boþe hii bỳcome,
[2] And wel ỳfonded in armes, & in batayles ỳ lome.

EYLBRỲT kỳng of Kent, þat þoru Seynt Austyn nom,
As we abbỳþ ỳtol bỳuore, verst Cristendom,
Deỳde as in þe ȝer of grace sỳx hondred & sỳxtỳne,
And he was syxe and vỳfty ȝer kỳng, as ỳch wene.
ỳs sone was kyng after hỳm, Edbald was ys name,
þat spousede [3] suþþe ỳs fader wỳf, hỳm to grete ssame,
And ne tolde noȝt of ys Cristendom. And þe kyng Sebryȝt also,
Crỳstỳne kỳng of Essex, þo he was of lyue ỳdo,
Hỳs þre sones he bỳleuede eỳrs of ỳs kỳnedom,
þat were panỳs alle þre, and aȝen Cristyndom.
So þat hii come at one tỳme, in her luþer rede,
To seỳnt Mellỳt, bỳssop of þe lond, & at ỳs masse hym seyde,
" Syre bỳssop, [4] wy ne ȝỳfst us of þỳne wỳte brede,
" þat þou est þe sulf at þỳ masse, in þỳne vaỳre wede,

---

[1] Knightes *Ar.* [2] And a saied in armes ofte were and lome, Ethelbert kyng of Kent *Ar.* [3] His owene fader wif, *Ar.* [4] Whi nelt þou yiue vs of thulke white brede, That thou etyst ech day in thyne white wede, *Ar.*

" þat

" þat þou ȝeue our [1] fader wyle, & ȝut ȝyfst þat folc al so?
" ȝyf ȝe [2] wolde," quaþ þe byssop, " as [3] ȝoure fader dude, do,
" And be ẏuolled in holy water, & myd Cristendom monge,
" ȝe mowe sauflyche þet holy þyng, as he dude, auonge.
" We nolleþ noȝt," quaþ þys oþer, " þey þou vs bede,
" Wyþynne þulke water come, for we nabbeþ non nede,
" Ac in alle manere we wolleþ ete of þulke brede.
þe byssop yt nolde grante, ac [4] outlych yt wyþ seyde
To gyue hym þulke holy þyng, bote hii y uolled.
Hii suore anon in wraþþe, ȝyf he ensentan nere,
To ȝyue hym so lute þyng, & bote he yt hem ȝeue,
þat he ne ssolde in her lond in non manere byleue,
Hii dryue hym out of her lond, & ys men echon.
þys holy man, seyn Mellyt, to Kent wende anon,
To speke wyþ þe erchebyssop Laurence, and al so
Wyþ yuste, byssop of Rouchestre, wat were best to do.
[5] Seynt Austyn nou al by ys daye to erchybyssop nom
Laurence, & made after hym to susteyne Cristendom."
þys þre byssopes bytueyne hem nom hem þus to rede,
þat hii myȝte in her owe lond holyor lyf lede,
And wyþoute [6] peryl sykerore, þan to byleue þere
Among mys bylyuede men, bote þer eny bote were.
So þat seynt Juste & seynt Mellyt to France þo wende,
And lete þe luther men [7] yworþþe vorte God yt wolde amende.

[1] Faderes, & yit yiuest þe Aud peple also? *Ar.* [2] Wolleth, *Ar.* [3] Other haueth, do, Be fulled with colde water, and the feẏ a vonge, Then mowe ẏe partẏ of that bred take oþer amonge, *Ar.* [4] Otterly *Ar. Vide supra, pag.* 66. [5] *Bina hæc metra omittit Ar.* [6] Perile sikeror to be there Than a mong hethene men, fort hit a mended were *Ar.* [7] Worthe *Ar.*

[1] Ac nas noȝt long þer after, aþ God wreche of hem nome,
þat, after her fader deþe, worrede Cristendom.
For aȝen þat folc of Westsex hii nome an bataỳle,
And þere hii were ỳbroȝt to grounde, & [2] ỳssend wỳþoute fayle.
Vor her folc was muche aslawe, and ybroȝt to deþe,
And hii, vor [3] her luþerhede, of scapede alỳue vnneþe.
Laurence, þe erchebỳssop, al prest hỳm made also,
Vorto wende out of þỳs lond, as ỳs felawes adde ỳdo.
þe nỳȝt, þat he [4] adde in mud vort abbe ỳwend amorwe,
He laỳ muchedel of þe nỳȝt in wo and in sorwe,
To [5] bỳdde God vor holy chỳrche and vor Cristendom.
So þat aslep atte laste vor werỳnỳsse hỳm nome.
Seỳnt Peter to hỳm come, as þe slep hỳm toke,
And tormented hỳm sore ỳnou, þat [6] hech lym hỳm oke.
And [7] eþste of hỳm, wỳ he adde so vỳllỳche ỳs ssep vorsake,
Wỳþoute warde, among þe wolues, þat in warde hỳm were bỳtake?
And wỳ of God, ne of hỳm, ensample he ne nom,
þat deỳde boþe [8] in rode, to susteỳnỳ Cristendom?
þỳs erchebỳssop was adrad welsore, þo he awok:
[9] He hỳede to þe kỳng, vor ech lỳme hỳm ok,
And ssewed hỳm al þat cas, and ys wounden some,
And bed hỳm ỳs lỳf amende, oþer vp hỳm sulf ỳt ssolde come.

---

[1] But sone fel hit afterward, that God wreche nom. For theỳ after hure faderes dethes werrede Christendom *Ar.* [2] Shent *Ar.* [3] Hure luthernesse, skapede *Ar.* [4] Hadde mette to wende his wey a morwe, *Ar.* [5] Praye *Ar.* [6] Every lyme *Ar.* [7] Axede *Ar.* [8] On rode, to saue *Ar.* [9] And blyue he hyed *Ar.*

[1] þe

[1] þe kyng anon for drede ys false wyf vor soke,
þat he huld in such hordom, and Cristendom toke.
And after Seyn Just & Seynt [2] Mellyt þe tueye byssopes sende,
So þat agen to þys lond þys gode men boþe wende,
And hii of Rouchestre Seyn Just to her byssop [3] vayre toke,
Ac þe Londres Seyn Mellyt [4] ac clanlyche versoke,
[5] Ac huld hem to her heþenesse, & in þys manere com
Kyng Edbald, after ys fader, vorst to Cristendom.
After Laurence's deþe, as God gef þat cas,
Erchebyssop Seyn Mellyt of Kanterbury was.
Erchebyssop he was vyf ger, and after hym me nom
Seyn Just to erchebyssop, to sauy Crystendom.

CADWAL, [6] þe kynge's sone, þat was of þys lond,
As ych seyde er, & Edwyne of Norþhomberlond,
þat in Brutayne were, [7] hem hii gonne wende,
After her [8] fader deþe, [9] eyþer in ys ende,
And auonge her erytage, and [10] louede hem wel boþe
Atte bygynnynge wel ynou, & suþþe somdel wroþe.[11]
For þo hii adde antuo ger ybe lourdes in her [11] londes,
Edwyne sende to Cadwal, þat hym ssolde vnderstonde,

[1] The kyng of Kent Edbald his false wife tho forsoke, *Ar.* [2] Mellyt in to Fraunce he sende, *Ar.* [3] A yen toke, *Ar.* [4] Al *Ar. Vide Bedæ Hist. Eccl. lib. II. cap. VI.* [5] And *Ar.* [6] The kynge's sone Cadewan of this londe, And Edwyne kynge's sone of Northhumberlonde, *Ar.* [7] Homward gonne, *Ar.* [8] Fadres *Ar.* [9] Aither to his ende *Ar. & è regione, ab cad. manu,* i. contre. [10] Louede to gedere y nogh, And afterward, as ye shul hure, hure lone clene a drogh *Ar.* [11] Londe *Ar.*

And soffry hym in ys owe lond, þat he ycrouned were
As ueruorþ as he in ys, and as ryzt was croune bere.
[1] Kyng Cadwal nom ys conseyl, & sende hym word so,
þat ys conseyl ne gef hym nozt, ne ensentede þerto,
þat in one kynedom, þat of one croune were,
þat yt were departed, & þat me tueye crounen bere.
Edwyne was wroþ vor þys, and suor ys more oþ,
To be ycrouned wyþoute hym, [2] nere hym no so loþ.
Cadwal suor ys oþ azen, zyf he croune bere,
Vorto smyte of ys heued vnder ys croune þere.
þus wax stryf bytuene hem, hii greyþed her host vaste,
And by Norþe Homber [3] mette hem atte laste.
Mony þousend þer were ybrozt of Cadwale's men to deþe,
And he hym sulf wyþ vewe men of scapede alyne vnneþe,
And flen hym vorþ in to þe see, al þoru Scotlond,
And so vorþ euere in to þe see, vorte he com to yrlond.
Edwyne wende þo anon out of ys owe lond,
And destrude wyde aboute þat Cadwal adde an honde,
Alle ys stedes, ver and ner, and to grounde caste.
Cadwal in yrlonde is ost zarkede vaste,
And vorþ toward þys lond þe veage nome.
Ac euere wanne he myd ys ost to eny hauene com,

---

[1] And when þat Cadewall hurde þis, he send word þo To Edewyne, þat he nolde assente þer to, And þat in on londe, o kyngdom þat were, Any partyng so were mad, þat me two crounes bere. And seide, hit was a yenst the wone of his faderes olde. For thi assente ther to, he seide that he nolde. Edwyne was tho wroth y nogh, and swor his more oth *Ar.* [2] Were hym neuere so loth *Ar.* [3] They mette atte laste *Ar.*

Ed-

Edwỳne was aȝen hỳm, and drof hym aȝe.
So þat he ne mỳȝte arỳue, ac huld hỳm in þe see.
Ac anchanteor Edwỳne adde of Spaỳne wỳþ hym þo,
þat couþe hỳm segge of ỳs dedes al hou ỳt ssolde go
þoru ỳs chantement, so þat Cadwal
Ne dude noþỳng, þat Edwỳne þoru hỳm yt nuste al.
Cadwal nuste þo oþer rede, bote mỳd al ys maỳne
Wende to porchacỳ hỳm help to þe lasse Brutaỳne.
[1] Tempest hỳm drof in þe see here and þer vaste.
So þat in þe ỳle of Gerneseỳe hii arỳued atte laste.
þo Cadwal com to reste, þer so gret deol he nome,
þat he adde so ỳs folc vorlore, and ỳs kỳnedom,
þat he laỳ sỳke in ỳs bed vor deol and vor sore,
þat he ne ete non mete [2]þre dawes þer vore.
þe [3] verþe daỳ to veneson hỳm þoȝte ỳs herte drou,
Brỳan, [4] ỳs owe priue man, was þerof glad ỳnou.
Hỳs bowe he nom, & soȝte a best aboute mony a mỳle,
[5] And he ne mỳȝte, ssolde he deỳe, vỳnde non in al þe ỳle.
Sorỳ was þỳs Brỳan þo, [6] þat he non grace nadde,
For he hopede ỳt were ỳs louerde's hele, vor þe wỳlle þat he adde.
He ne vnderstod of non oþer flesse, þat þe kỳng ỳknowe ne couþ
þat ỳt nere non veneson, wanne ỳt were in ỳs mouþe.

---

[1] A tempest *Ar.* [2] iiii. *Ar.* [3] v. *Ar.* [4] That priue with hym was, therof was glad ynogh *Ar.* [5] But *Ar.* [6] For he no grace hadde. For he hopede his lorde's hele, yf he eny hadde. He vnderstod of non other flessh, that he knowe couthe, That hit nere veneson, whan hit were in his mouthe *Ar.*

He

He bẏþozte hẏm of harde ẏnou, to abbe ys louende's lẏf.
A gret pece of ẏs owe þẏ he [1] kerf out wẏþ a kaẏf,
And helde þe [2] wounde, he mẏzte loke zẏf he nas trewe.
þe kẏng he brozte ẏt wel ẏrested vor veneson newe.
Newe and verss ẏt was ẏnou, þe kẏng ete þerof anon.
Hẏm þozte, þat so suete mete he ne ete neuere non,
Ne so sauerẏ in ẏs mouþ, so þat he turnde to hele,
And hol was þe þrẏdde daẏ, vor þulke suete mele.
Hẏm longede after veneson þer after longe sore,
Ac ner gode of þulke beste ne com in ẏs mouþ nanmore.
To þe lasse Brutaẏne wẏþ ẏs folc þo he drou,
And of þe kẏng Salomon was [3] vnderuonge vaẏre ẏnou.
And byleuede wẏþ hẏm alle wẏnter, vorte after þe zere's ende,
[4] And greẏþede her poer hẏder vorto wende.

KẎNG Edwẏne adde ẏwonne er alout the Brutons lond,
More þan enẏ Englẏss kẏng euere er adde an hond,
Al byzonde Seẏn Dauid, & al Walys al out.
Bẏ uore hẏm nas non Englẏss kẏng so rẏche ne so prout,
Heþen man he was ẏwẏs, and to Cristendom
þoru erchebẏssop of Euerwẏk Seyn [5] Paulym he com.

---

[1] Kutt of *Ar.* [2] Wounde, whan he myghte loke wher he nere trewe. To the kyng *Ar.* [3] Undernom *Ar.* [4] And than homward a yen he cast hym to wende *Ar.* [5] *Sic.*

CADWAL kyng þat ȝte be of Brutons londe,
Myd poer, þat kyng Salomon hym adde ytake an honde,
(þat was ten þousend kyngtes,) & myd ys owe poer,
Aryuede bysyde Toteneys, and come somdel ner.
In þe toun of Exestre mony Brutons were,
And a luþer kyng of þe Marche byseged hem þer,
Penda, þat heþene was, vnder Edwyne þe kyng.
Cadwal, þo he wuste þys, ne made no targyng,
Ac smot to hym myd ys ost, & þer wyþoute fayle
At Eccestre strong ynou hii smyte an batayle.
Penda þys heþene kyng was sone ouercome,
And ys folc muche aslawe, & he hym sulf ynome.
þo he in prison was ydo, [1] and oþer couþe ne yse,
He byhet Cadwal myd hym myd al ys poer be,
And þat he ssolde vor hym þe bet kyng Edwyne ouercome.
Of þys was sykernesse [2] ydo, and ostages y nome.
Penta ȝarked ys poer, and Cadwal ek ys route
Of Brutons, þat vor defaute of help to sprad were wyde aboute.
þo þys ost al ȝare was, vorþward vaste hii drowe,
And in Norþhomberlond þat folc vaste hii slowe.
Kyng Edwyne adde also in ys half gret poer
Igadered of Englysse kynges, & of ys owe ver & ner.

---

[1] And other ne couthe by se, He by het Cadewalle with hym for to be, And helpe that Edwyne kyng sholde be ouercome *Ar.* [2] Made *Ar.*

In

In to þe veld of [1] Haduele ech of hem drow
Mẏd her ost, & smẏte þer an bataẏle strong ẏ nou.
Kẏng Edwẏne was þer aslawe, and [2] Osfrẏd ẏs sone also,
And Godbold kẏng of Orcadas, & her folc neẏ þerto.
And Cadwal was al aboue, þe wule ẏt wolde ẏlaste.
þe Englẏsse and þe Saxons he slou þo wel vaste.
He ne sparede olde ne ȝong, ne [3] womman, ne chyld,
þat he ne slou, [4] wanne he vond. he nas noþẏng myld.
Anoþer bataẏle suþþe he smot [4] aȝen Osryc strong ynou,
þat kẏng was after Edwẏne, & þer [6] he hẏm slou,
And ẏs tueye neueus, þat after hẏm kẏnges ssolde be,
And Cadan kẏng of Scotlond, ẏslawe hii were alle þre.
[7] Eufrẏd, Edwẏne's broþer, þo he seẏ [8] þẏs wo aboute,
To Cadwal he wende, & mercẏ crẏde vor doute.
Cadwal hẏm, & tuelf þousend þat mẏd hẏm com, slou.
þẏs ȝer was among hem of feble grace ẏ nou.
And þat was of hem lute harm. vor after her Cristendom
And to heþenesse hii turnde aȝen. & þus such wreche hem nome.
Kẏng Cadwal and þe Brutons her wẏlle adde also,
And stured hem among her fon, þat hem adde er ssame ẏdo.

---

[1] Hedefeld *Ar.* [2] Ostryd *Ar.* [3] Wommen with childe, *Ar.* [4] Whan he hem fonde, & was no thyng mylde *Ar.* [5] With *Ar.* [6] He tho hym *Ar.* [7] Confrid *Ar. & in ora Codicis, è regione hujus carminis,* Confrid kyng of Berewẏciens, *idque equidem ab eadem manu. Infra autem in hoc Codice* Emfryde *scribitur.* [8] This wogh, Forto haue mercy to Cadwal he drogh. And he of hym no mercy haue wolde tho, But hym xii. þousend men he let to dethe so. Lẏtel force hit was of hem. for after hure Cristendom To hethenesse hii tournde a ye. for thy God wrech nom *Ar.*

Seyn

SEYN Oswald, Eufrýdýs broþer, kýnȝ was ýmad þo
Of al Norþhomberlond, among al þýs wo,
þat holyman was & god, þe betere ýs grace was.
And kýng Cadwal to hým to sturne vorst was.
þýs was in þe ȝer of grace sýx hondred ȝer ýwýs,
And aboute an foure & þrýttý, þat ýdo was al þýs.

SEYN Býrýn þe byssop an holy man was,
þat in to þys lond þoru þe pope Honorý ýsend was.
To turne kýng of Westsex Kýngýls to Cristendom,
And þat lond of Westsex, in to þys lond he com.
Seýn Býrýn hým to Cristendom turnde þoru Gode's grace,
And, as God wolde, Seýn Oswald was in þulke place,
And of holý vantston þýs grete kýng nome,
And ýs godfader was in ýs Cristendom.
Seýn Oswald and þýs oþer kýng, þoru vr Louerde's grace,
Porueýde Seýn Býrýn to ýs wýlle an place,
[1] þat Dorchester ýs ýcluped, þat býsyde Oxenford ýs,
As in þe Est Souþ, an sene mýle ý wýs.
þer Seyn Býrýn býssop was, þe vorste þat was ýwýs.
Vor þe sce was þer of býssop þo, þat at Lyncolne nou ýs.
þer he deýde, & þer he laý vorte suþþe þerafter long
þat he was to Wynchester ýlad, as [2] ys ȝut vayre auong.

---

[1] That Dorchestre me clepeth by side Oxenford, That is Southward by the water of Themese vi. myle thenne y wis. Seynt Beryn bisshop ther was the furste that there come, And after othur bishopes hure se at Lyncoln nome. Berin deide at Dorchestre, & lay ther ful longe. To Wynchestre were his bones lad sutthe, & faire a vonge *Ar.* [2] *Id est*, being honourably received in that place

Penda askede þe kyng anon, wy kyng Oswy nere þer?
þe kyng seyde, he vnderstod, þat he syk were.
" Syre," quaþ þe oþer, " to soþe, yt nys noþyng so,
" Ac he gadereþ vaste ys poer, vs ssame to do,
" And he aþ ysend bygoude see after Saxons mo,
" And wole awreke ys broþer deþ, he suerþ, on vs tuo.
" [1] þeruore gyf me myd poer leue þuder wende,
" And bryng hym to ssame & byneþe, er þan he vs ssende.
To breke ys trewe couenant, þe kyng was loþ þerto,
And naþeles ys conseyl hym gef, þat he moste yt nede do.
þo Penda þys leue adde, he nome poer y nou,
And toward þis kyng Oswy ouer Homber drou,
An barnde vaste and robbede, and to grounde slou.
þe kyng Oswy hym let esse, wy he dude hym so wou,
And bed hym, vor Gode's loue, habbe of hym reuþe,
And of ys lond, & þenche bet on vorewarde & on treuþe.
þo Penda nolde oþer, þe oþer agen hym sette,
And dude hym al in Gode's grace, & myd ys ost hym mette,
And an batayle smyte strong ynou, & þoru Gode's grace
[a] Kyng Oswy [2] þe Cristyn men byleuede þe place.
Vor Penda, þe heþene duc, aslawe was þere
And þrytty oþer dukus, þat myd hym also were.

---

[1] For thy let me haue leue thuder forto wende, And lette him of his purpos er he vs alle a shende *Ar.* [2] Kyng Osewy and his Cristene men that day hadde the place *Ar.* [3] *F.* þe hethen med, *ut sensus sit*, the heathen men left the place to king Oswy, *nisi forsitan* and the Cristyn men *malis ex Ar. ut* byleuede *passive sumatur, sc.* to king Oswy and the Christian men the place was left. *Possem & alia notare, sed non est tanti.*

Syx

Syx hondred ȝer of grace ẏt was, & in þe [1] vẏftẏþe ȝere,
þer [2] bẏȝet Penda lute Cristynmen vorto afere.
þo Cadwal, kẏng of Brutons, noblẏche adde ẏnou
ẏbe kẏng eyȝte and fourty ȝer, and to elde drou,
He deẏde after Martẏnmasse [3] rẏȝt þen sẏxte daẏ.
þe Brutons made deol ẏ nou, þo he ded laẏ,
[4] And made kẏnge's fourme of bras al holu wẏþinne,
Vpe an hors rẏde of bras, & þat bodẏ dude þerẏnne,
And vpe" þe West ȝate of Londone sette hẏt [5] wel heẏe
In sẏgne of ẏs nobleẏe, þat men wel wẏde ẏseẏe.
An þe syȝte þer of þe Saxons aferde.
An chẏrche of Seyn Martẏn þer bẏ neþe hii rerde,"
War ẏnne me ssolde Gode's seruẏse do,
And synge vor ẏs soule, and vor alle Cristẏne al so.

[6] CADWÀLLAD ẏs sone was [7] þeraſter ẏmad kẏng,
ȝong [8] bacheler and stalward atte [9] bẏ gynnẏg,
And þoru out wel wuste ẏs lond, & sauede þe Brutons
Stẏflẏche [10] al an tuelf ȝer aȝen [11] Saxons.
Ac þo vel he in sẏkness and sorwe vpen oþer,
þe Brutons foȝte her & þer ech aȝen oþer,

---

[1] xv. yere, *Ar.* [2] By gate *Ar.* [3] Euene the sixte day *Ar.* [4] Hii made a kynge's fourme, and hym al hol with ynne Upon a hors rydyng of bras putte al with gynne, And vpon *Ar.* [5] Ful hegh In tokne of his noblesse, that me hitt fer segh. And that the sight ther of the Saxones sholde a fere, A church of Seynt Martyn by nethe hii lete rere, *Ar.* [6] Cadwalladre *Ar.* *& sic infra.* [7] After hym mad *Ar.* [8] Staleworth bacheler & noble in alle thyng, And *&c. Ar.* [9] *L.* bẏgẏnnẏng. [10] Fully xii. *Ar.* [11] The Saxones *Ar.*

And lore, as wo seyþ, grace of God, & þat he gan hem ssewe.
Vor he sende hem so muche honger & luþer ȝeres arewe,
[1] þat þys folc was ney meteles, bote wo so couþe myd gynne,
Oþer myd bow and arwen, eny wylde best wynne.
So gret qualm com ek among men, þat hii, þat were alyue,
Ne myȝte nozt al buryе þat folc, þat deyde so ryue.
Vol of syknesse, and of qualm, and sorwe þys lond was þo,
Of honger, and of vnele ȝeres, hou myȝte be more wo?
[2] þet folc gret compayne & oþer myd wop & sorwe y nou,
Wanne hii myȝte ssyppes abbe, in to oþer londes drou.
Þe kyng [3] hym" let ek in sorwe and in sykenesse lede
Toward þe lasse Brutayne, & þys deoluol playnte seyde:
" [4] Awey! awey! we synuol men, alas! oure wrecchede,
" þat we abbyþ þus God agult myd mony synuol dede
" We and oure elderne ek, þe wreche ych vnderstonde
" þat þus wrecchedlyche nou vus dryfþ out of oure kunde londe,
" þat Romeyns" ne myȝte myd batayle neuere do,
" Ne Scottes, ne [5] Pycars, ne þe Saxons þerto.
" Nou we beþ, þoru wreche of God, vor oure synuol dede,
" Idryue out al clene, wyþ out hope, wyþ sorwe & [6] wreche.

[1] That the peple hadde no mete, but they with any gynne Wilde bestes, or fowell, or fissh myght wynne. Such pestilence cam also, that hii, that were a lyue, The dede myghte vnnethe burye, they deide so blyue *Ar.* [2] The folc with grete companye in care and sorwe y nogh, *Ar.* [3] Hym self *Ar.* [4] A las! he seyde, and welawey! whi couthe we noght blynne, While that we tyme hadde, our lyff to lede in synne, Thurgh which we shal nogh al clene be dryue out of londe, And al hit is þorgh wreche of Gode's owene honde? That the Romaynes *Ar.* [5] Pictes, *Ar.* [6] *L.* wrechede.

[1] Vor

" [1] Vor vaȝt we abbeþ so ofte vp hem ẏwonne þat lond,
" Wanne God nel noȝt, þat ẏt be lengore in oure hond.
" Vor þe soþuast God, þo he ẏse, þat we nolde, vor noþyng,
" Fram oure sẏnne vs wẏþ drawe, ne þat non prince, [2] ne,
" Ne myȝte brẏnge vs out of þe lond, he, þat myȝtuol ẏs,
" [3] Deþe after oure deserte, and [4] pulte vus out ẏwẏs.
" Comeþ nou aȝen ȝe Romeẏns, and ȝe Scottes al so,
" [5] Pẏcars, and Saxons, and Englẏsse þer to,"
" þat so muche abbeþ desẏred [6] þat lond, ȝe mowe ẏt fynde nouþe
" Al bar wẏþ out defense, bẏnorþe and eke bẏsouþe,
" [7] And al þat þoru wreche of God, & noȝt ȝoure poer noȝt ẏ do,
" (Vor al þe poer, þat ȝe alle adde, ne mẏȝte ẏt bringe þerto,)
" Ac þoru þe mẏȝte of Jhesu Crist we beþ ẏbroȝt to grounde,
" þat we wraþþed euere mo, and nou we abbeþ ẏfounde.
" Alas! þat by mẏne daye such wreche ssolde come,
" þat ẏ nadde ẏbe ded bore, bote God adde þe soule ẏ nome.
þe deol ne maẏ non tonge telle, þat þe kẏng to hym nome,
So þat to þe lasse Brutayne mẏd þẏs serwe he com,
To, þe kynge's neueu Salomon, Aleyn, þat kyng was þo,
And vaẏre of hẏm was vndervonge in ẏs machele wo."

---

[1] An ydel we haue so ofte recouered of hem oure lond, When God nele, that we lengor haue hit in our hond *Ar.* [2] *Adds* kyng *cum Ar.* [3] Doth *Ar.* [4] Putteth *Ar.* [5] Pictes, and Englissh, and Danes also. *Ar.* [6] This *Ar.* [7] And when ye haueth hit, seye ye ne may, ye haueth vs out pylt Thurgh your strengthe, but hit is thurgh oure owene gylt. Deol he made gret y nogh, so that his wey he nom Toward the lasse Brutayne, and thuder some he com To kyng Salomone's sone Aleyn, that tho was, And faire of hym was vndervonge, as fol in this cas *Ar.*

þo þe Brutons þerafter were al as out of munde,
After folc þe Saxons sende of her kunde,
To come & wonẏe in þẏs lond, þat noman aȝen hem nas,
And þat þet lond to her wẏlle al bar aȝen hem was.
þo þys strangemen hurde þẏs, ẏnou of folc hii nome,
Of men and of wẏmmen ek, and to þẏs lond come.
Anon from Cornwaẏle to Norþhomberlond,
[1] Hote ẏt were of poueral, al bar hii founde þat lond.
þe poueral ouer Seuerne flen þat þer was þo,
And byleuede vorþ in Walẏs in sorwe and in wo.
[2] We longe her afterward þo ẏt com to amendement,
And bote of honger & of qualm vr Louerd adde ẏsend,
Som help of þe kẏng Aleẏn kẏng Cadwallad bẏsoȝte,
And þat he in to ẏs kunde londe þoru ẏs help hẏm broȝte."
þe kẏng hẏm grantede anon, and as hii were aboute,
Eẏþer in ẏs half, to gaderẏ gret ost and gret route,
To kẏng Cadwallad an angel [3] auẏsyon broȝte
Fram heuene, and bad hẏm wẏþdrawe of þat he þoȝte.
Vor ẏt nas Gode's wẏlle, þat of þe Brutons [4] kunne
Regnede more in Engelond, and al uor her sunne.
And namelẏche ar þulke tẏme þat ẏs in prophecẏe
Merlẏn seẏde to Arture, þat nolde noþẏng lẏe.

[1] *L.* bote. *Nam* bute *in Ar.*
[2] Afterwardes whan hit fel, as God yaf the grace, That alle these meschenes gonne ouerpace, And the peple in Walys strengthed sumwhat were, Cadewaldre hym by thoght in this ilke manere, That the synne of his peple wassh was clene. To Aleyn kyng of Brutayne he gan his mone mene, And in alle manere wise his help hym by soght, That thurgh hym in to his Reaume he myght be broght *Ar.* [3] Tydyng *Ar.* [4] Kẏnne *Ar.*

Vor

Vor he seyde, þat þe Brutons me ssolde ȝut ẏseẏ
Wẏnne heȝ rẏȝte kẏnedom, ac ẏt ssolde arst long be.
Wannc ẏe relykes of halewen ẏfounde were & ẏkud,
þat vor drede of Saxons wẏde were ẏhud.
To Sergẏ þe pope, þat þo was, to Rome he bed hẏm wende,
And do þer ẏs penance, þat God hẏm wolde sende,
And bẏleue al erþlẏch þoȝt, þen deuel vorto ssende,
And he ssolde among holẏmen [1] to heuene" atten ende.
þe kẏng þẏs auẏsyon, þat þe angel hẏm seẏde,
þe oþer tolde priuelẏche, hẏm þerof to rede.
þe kẏng Aleẏn let þo anon in ẏs bokes aspẏe,
Boþe of Sẏbẏle þe sage, and of Merlẏne's prophecẏe;
Were hii to ys auẏsẏon acorded in ech þẏnge?
And þo he vond, þat bẏtuene hem was non dẏscordẏng,
He radde þe kẏng Cadwallad, to þenche nanmore
Of [2] Engelond, ac do al out þe angele's lore,
And wende to Rome, [3] holẏ lẏf to lede.
þe kẏng Cadwallad dude al out, þat þe angel he hẏm bede,
And at Rome was of þe pope vaẏre [4] vnder vonge,
And in penance and holy lẏf lyucde þere longe,
[5] And in etteþe daẏ of Auerẏl out of þys worl he wende
To þe joẏe of Heuene, as God after hẏm sende.
[6] Hyt was sene hondred ȝer bote on ȝer lasse vnneþe,
After þat God anerþe com, þat þẏs kẏng com þus to deþe.

---

[1] Be nombred *Ar.* [2] Brutayne, but do after the *Ar.* [3] Ther holy *Ar.* [4] A fonge, *Ar.* [5] The xix. day of April *Ar.* [6] Six hundred yer and foure skor, and ther to eyghtetene, Hit was þat our Lord bore was y wene. The Englissh *Ar.*

þe Englysse" and þe Saxons, þat alone þo were,
Grete tounes and castles bygonne bulde and rere,
þat hii adde er ycast adoun, & louerdes were al þo,
And þe Brutons clene al out myd sorwe & myd wo,
And lore þo boþe al clene, name and eke lond.
Vor þat was Brutayne ycluped er, me cluped nou Engelond.
þo vewe were of hem blyeued, as in Cornwayle & Walys.
Brutons nere nanmore ycluped, ac Waleys ywys.
After [1] Walon, þat was her [2] duc, hii adde vorst þe name,
And ne myzte neuer efter þys lond keuere, at lyþeþ myd alle ssame,
[3] Bote hii þus myd scolkynge vp þe Englysse wende,
And doþ eny skec feble ynou, and abbeþ þe worse ende.
Ac, (as þe angel seyde er, and Merlyn ek by uore,)
Hii ssolleþ keuery muche lond, þat hii abbeþ ylore;
Al Walys and al þe March, and al myddel lond ywys,
þat ys, al þat bytuene Temese and Homber ys,
Al Est toward Londone, & þat me ssal zut yseý.
At vpe Gode's wylle yt ys, wanne yt ssal be.
Here we Englysse men mowe yse sone,
Myd wuche ryzte we beþ to þys londe ycome.
Ac þe wrecche Englysse men beþ of þe olde [4] more;
In wuche manere, ze abbeþ y hurd, hou hii yt abbeþ y lore.
Ac þe feble ys euere bynebe. vor hii, þat abbeþ myzte,
Myd strengþe bryngeþ ofte þat wowe to þe ryzte.

---

[1] Gwalo, *Ar.* [2] Prince, *Ar.* [3] And ofte tyme in skolkyng on Engelond gon they wende, And made contek and strif, and hadde the worse ende *Ar.* [4] *Subtel-lige*, Britain.

þo

ÞO Brutayne was þus ylore, and þe londe's name
To þe name of Engelond yturnd, to gret ssame,
Sene kynges hii adde longe, as þe kyng of Estsex,
Of Kent, of Homberlond, of Est Angle, of Souþsex,
Of þe March, of Westsex, [1] of alle þes echon
Wule þes were kynges, þat nouþ ys bote one.
Vor ech bygan to worry vp oþer, and oþeres londes bynome,
And hii of Denemarch among hem, vorte alle to one come.
þe kynges of Westsex adde þe ouer hond,
So þat attelaste hii wonne alle þe oþeres lond.
Ac Souþsex ne last noȝt longe, ne Estsex [2] naþe mo.
þe kyng of Westsex sone hem wan, bote vyue þer nere þo.
þe kynedom of þe March ylaste long and wel ynou,
Vorte þe kunde kyng seyn Kenelm in marterdom me sloȝ.
Kyng Kenulf ys fader godman was, þat þe hous of Wynche-
cumbe
Rerde vorst, and þer lyþ hym sulf in a tombe.
þo Seyn Kenelm ymartred was, ys vncle [3] Seowulf
Kyng was after hym ymaked, þe kynge's broþer Kenulf.
He nas kyng bote on ȝer, ar on Bernulf com,
And þoru strengþ hym caste out of ys kenedom.

EGBRYGT [4] was kyng y mad, as oþer byuore hym were,
Of Westsex in þe ȝer of grace eyȝte hondred ȝer.

---

[1] Alle thes echon While were of kynges *Ar.* [2] Ne the mo *Ar.* [3] *Sive*, Ceolulph. [4] *Perplura hic occurrunt in Cod. Ar. oratione soluta concepta, In quo tamen Codice desunt cuncta metra usque ad Edwardi, Ælfredi Magni filii, regnum.*

Bẏ ẏs daye Seyn Kenelm to deþe ybroȝt was,
þe kynedom was þerafter lute, vor wreche of þat cas.
Vor Bernulf, of wan we tolde, noȝt þre ȝer kẏng nas
Ar Egbrẏȝt, kẏng of Westsex, made hẏm seke pas.
Vor an bataẏle at Elendone hii smẏte mẏd her ost,
þe kẏng Bernulf was þere bẏneþe, & bẏnome al ẏs bost,
And ẏs folc muche aslawe, & he flen wẏþ muche wo.
In kẏng Egbrẏȝte's poer ẏs kẏnedom was þo.
Eyȝte hondred ȝer & tuentẏ, & sẏxte þer to,
As in þe ȝer of grace þẏs bataẏle was ẏdo.
þe kyng of Westsex her after adde al þe kẏnedom
Of þe March, oþer eche ȝer truage of hem nom.
In Egbrẏȝte's kẏnedom four and tuentẏ þe ȝer
Hẏt was, ar þẏs bataẏle at Elendone were.
Bernulf suþþe in Est Angle þoru men of lond,
And þoru Egbrẏȝte's poer, was aslawe, ẏch vnderstonde.
And þat folc of Est Angle vnderuonge þere
Kẏng Egbrẏȝt to her souerẏn, & seruage hẏm bere.
Kẏng Egbrẏȝt was þo prout vor ẏs segnorẏe.
Adelwolf, ẏs sone, he sende mẏd vaẏre bacheleryẏe
To wẏnne Kent, & Estsex, & Soþereẏe, mẏd maẏstrẏe.
To þe lond of Kent hii wende vorst mẏd her chẏualerẏe.
Kent hii wonde tẏmelẏche, and Balred þe kẏng
Flen ouer Temese, and bẏleuede ẏs owe þẏng.
Estsex and Souþsex, and Soþereẏe al so
Hii wonne, ar hii come aȝen; & þo al þẏs was ẏdo,
Egbrẏȝt, kẏng of Westsex, al þẏs to hẏm nom,
Al to be vnder hẏm, and vnder ẏs kẏnedom.

Al þat lond býsouþe clene he adde al so
Under hým, oþer in ýs hond. wýnne he þozte mo.
Azen hem of Norþhomberlond mýd ost he com at [1] Doýre,
Hii dude hým a non her manhede, & ne conteked namore.
þe kýng Egbryzt adde ýbe kýng þre and þryttý zer,
þet folc of Denemarch hýder com, as yt adde ý do er.
Ssepeýe hii robbede vorst, and suþþe oþer mo.
Ac þe kýng Egbrýzt hem drof azen, ar hii dude to muche wo.
þo kýng Egbrýzt adde kýng ýbe seuene & þrýttý zer,
He deýde as a noble man, ac ýs londes he delde er.
Adelwolf, ýs eldeste sone, he zef þo al Westsex,
þat was as ýs erýtage. and suþþe al Souþsex
Hýs zongore sone Aþelston he zef, and þe kýnedom
Of Kent and of Estsex, þat of ýs porchas com.
Hýt was eýzte hondred zer, and nyne þrýttý þerto,
As in þe zer of grace, þat he deýde so.

---

[1] *Meminerunt etiam Annales Saxonici, sub anno* DCCCXXVII. Anđ ꝼe Ecȝbꞃẏht læđđe ꝼẏꞃđe to Doꞃe ꝩiđ Noꞃđanhẏmbꞃe. ⁊ hẏ hẏm þæꞃ eaþmeđo buđon. ⁊ ȝeþꝩæꞃneꞅꞅe. *Ejusdem quoque mentionem habemus apud Florentium Wigorniensem. Id quod item monuit doctissimus Gibsonus, qui porro innuit, locum hunc in agro fuisse Eboracensi, licet plane incertum sit quonam hodierno vocetur nomine. Quidni autem quis censeat, ipsum fuisse* Durham? *Quo minus ita putemus, nihil quidem obstat in Annalibus Saxonicis, è quibus discimus, Ecgbryhtum primùm subjugasse Merciorum regnum, & totum quod fuit ab Australi parte Humbri, deinde movisse ultra Humbri flumen, in ipsum, ut videtur, Deirorum agrum. Et tamen fateor, hanc sententian minime convenire cum Florentio, locum longe minoris notæ quam Dunelmum fuisse aperte indicante, suoque itidem tempore* Dore *nomine venisse significante. Quomodocunque sit, in partibus ultra Humbrum fuisse sane existimarim.*

Of

Of þe batayles of Denemarch, þat hii dude in þys londe
þat worst were of alle oþere, we mote abbe an honde.
Worst hii were. vor oþere adde somwanne ydo,
As Romeyns & Saxons, & wel wuste þat lond þerto.
Ac hii ne kepte yt holde nogt, bote robbý, and ssende,
And destrue, & berne, & sle, & ne couþe abbe non ende.
And bote lute yt nas worþ, þey hii were ouercome ylome.
Vor mýd ssýpes and gret poer as prest efsone hii come.
Kýng Adelwolf of þis lond kýng was tuentý ger.
þe Deneys come bý hým rýuor þan hii dude er.
Vor in þe al our vorst ger of ys kýnedom
Mýd þre & þrýttý ssýpuol men her prince hýder come.
And at Souþhampton arýuede, an hauene bý Souþe.
Anoþer gret ost þulke týme arýuede at Portesmouþe.
þe kýng nuste weþer kepe, at delde ys ost atuo.
þe Denes adde þe maystre. þo al was ydo,
And bý Estangle & Lýndeseye hii wende vorþ atte laste,
And so hamward al bý Kent, & slowe & barnde vaste.
Agen wýnter hii wende hem. anoþer ger eft hii come,
And destrude Kent al out, and Londone nome.
þus al an ten ger þat lond hii brogte þer doune,
So þat in þe teþe ger of þe kýnge's croune,
Al býsouþe hii come alond, and þet folc of Somersete
þoru þe býssop Alcston and þet folc of Dorsete
Hii come & smýte an bataýle, & þere, þoru Gode's grace,
þe Deneys were al býneþe, & þe lond folc adde þe place,
And more prowesse dude þo, þan þe kýng myzte býuore,
þeruore gode lond men ne beþ nogt al verlore.

þe

Þe kyng was þe boldore þo, & agen hem þe more drou,
And ys foure godes sones woxe vaste y nou,
Edelbold and Adelbryȝt, Edelred and Alfred.
Þys was a stalwarde tem, & of gret wysdom & red,
And kynge's were al foure, & defendede wel þys lond,
An Deneys dude ssame ynou, þat me volwel vond.
In syxteþe ȝere of þe kynge's kynedom
Is eldeste sone Adelbold gret ost to hym nome,
And ys fader also god, and oþere heye men al so,
And wende agen þys Deneys, þat muche wo adde y do.
Vor myd tuo hondred sсypes & an alf at Temse mouþ hii come,
And Londone, and Kanterbury, and oþer tounes nome,
And so vorþ in to Soþereye, & slowe & barnde vaste,
þere þe kyng and ys sone hem mette atte laste.
þere was bataýle strong ynou ysmyte in an þrowe.
þe godes kynȝtes leye adoun as gras, wan medep mowe.
Hcueden, (þat were of ysmyte,) & oþer lymes also,
Flete in blode al fram þe grounde, ar þe bataýle were ydo.
Wanne þat blod stod al abrod, vas þer gret wo y nou.
Nys yt reuþe vorto hure, þat me so volc slou?
Ac our suete Louerd atte laste ssewede ys suete grace,
And sende þe Cristyne Englysse men þe maystrye in þe place,
And þe heþene men of Denemareh bynebe were echon.
Nou nas þer ȝut in Denemarch Cristendom non;
þe kyng her after to holy chyrche ys herte þe more drou,
And teþegede wel & al ys lond, as hii aȝte, wel y nou.
Seyn Swythyn at Wynchestre byssop þo was,
And Alcston at Syrebourne, þat amendede muche þys cas.

þe

þe kyng was wel þe betere man þoru her beyre red,
Tuenty wynter he was kyng, ar he were ded.
At Wynchestre he was ybured, as he zut lyþ þere.
Hys tueye sones he gef ys lond, as he byzet ham erc.
Adelbold, þe eldore, þe kynedom of Estsex,
And suþþe Adelbryzt, Kent and Westsex.
Eyzte hondred zer yt was and seuene and fyfty al so,
After þat God anerþe com, þat þys dede was ydo.
Boþe hii wuste by her tyme wel her kynedom,
At þe vyfte zer Adelbold out of þys lyue nome.
At Ssyrebourne he was ybured, & ys broþer Adelbryzt
His kynedom adde after hym, as lawe was and ryzt.
By ys daye þe verde com of þe heþene men wel prout,
[1] And Hamtessyre and destrude Wynchestre al out.
And þat lond folc of Hamtessyre her red þo nome
And of Barcssyre, and fozte and þe ssrewen ouercome.
Adelbryzt was kyng of Kent zeres folle tene,
And of Westsex bote vyue, þo he deyde ych wene.

ADELRED was after hym kyng y mad in þe place,
Eyzte hondred & seuene & sixty as in þe zer of grace.
þe vorste zer of ys kynedom þe Deneys þycke com,
And robbede and destrude, and cytes vaste nome.
Maystres hii adde of her ost, as yt were dukes, tueye,
Hynguar and Hubba, þat ssrewen were beye.
In Est Angle hii byleuede, to reste hem as yt were,
Myd her ost al þe wynter, of þe vorst zere.

---

[1] *F.* an *sive* on; *nisi mox malis*, and Wynchestre destrude *&c.*

þe

þe oþer ȝer hii dude hem vorþ, & ouer Homber come,
And slowe to grounde & barnde, & Euerwỳk nome.
þer was bataỳle strong ỳ nou, vor ỳslawe was þere
Osryc kỳng of Homberlond, & monỳe þat with hỳm were.
þo Homberlond was þus ỳssend, hii wende & tounes nome.
So þat atte laste to Estangle aȝen hỳm come.
þer hii barnde & robbede, & þat folc to grounde slowe,
And, as wolues among ssep, reulỳch hem to drowe.
Seỳnt Edmond was þo her kỳng, & þo he seỳ þat deluol cas
þat me morþrede so þat folc, & non amendement nas,
He ches leuere to deỳe hymsulf, þat such sorwe to ỳseỳ.
He dude hỳm vorþ among ỳs fon, nolde he [1] noþỳg fle.
Hii nome hỳm & scourged hỳm, & suþþe naked hỳm bounde
To a tre, & to hỳm ssote, & made hỳm monỳ a wounde,
þat þe arewe were on hỳm þo þỳcce, þat no stede nas bỳleuede.
Atte laste hii martred hỳm, & smỳte of ỳs heued.
þe sỳxte ȝer of þe crounement of Aldered þe kỳng
A nỳwe ost com into þỳs lond, gret þoru alle þỳng,
And anon to Redỳnge robbede and slowe.
þe kỳng and Alfred ỳs broþer nome men ỳnowe,
Mette hem, and a bataỳle smỳte vp Assesdoune.
þer was monỳ moder chỳld, þat sone laỳ þer doune,
þe bataỳle ỳlaste vorte nỳȝt, and þer were aslawe
Vỳf dukes of Denemarch, ar hii wolde wyþ drawe,
And mony þousend of oþer men, & þo gonne hii to fle;
Ac hii adde alle ỳbe assend, [2] ȝỳs þe nỳȝt nadde ỳ be.
Tueye bataỳles her after in þe sulf ȝere
Hii smyte, and at boþe þe heþene maỳstres were.

[1] *L.* noþỳng. [2] *Sic.*

þe

þe kyng Aldered sone þo þen wey of deþ nome,
As yt vel, þe vyftȳ ger of ys kynedom.
At Wymbourne he was ybured, as God gef þat cas,
þe gode Alfred, ys broþer, after hym kyng was.

ALFRED, þys noble man, as in þe ger of grace he nom
Eyghte hondred & sixtȳ & tuelue þe kynedom.
Arst he adde at Rome ybe, &, vor ys grete wysdom,
þe pope Leon hym blessede, þo he þuder com,
And þe kynge's croune of þys lond, þat in þys lond gut ys
And [1] he led hym to be kyng, ar he kyng were ywys.
And he was kyng of Engelond, of alle þat þer come,
þat vorst þus [2] ylad was of þe pope of Rome,
And suþþe oþer after hym of þe erchebyssopes echon.
So þat byuor hym pore kyng nas þer non.
In þe Souþ syde of Temese nyne batayles he nome
Ayen þe Deneys þe vorst ger of ys kynedom.
Nye ger he was þus in þys lond in batayle & in wo,
An ofte syþe aboue was, and byneþe oftor mo;
So longe, þat hym nere by leuede bote þre ssyren in ys hond,
Hamtessyre, and Wyltessyre, and Somersete, of al ys lond.
A day as he wery was, and asuoddrynge hym nome
And ys men were ywend auysseþ, Seyn Cutbert to hym com,
"Ich [3] am," he seyde, "Cutbert, to þe ycham ywend
"To brynge þe gode tytynges. Fram God ycham ysend.

[1] *Id est*, heled *sive* consecrated, *vel* anointed. *Vide notas nostras ad Vitam Ælfredi Magni Spelmannianam*, p. 17.
[2] *Pro* oyled, *sive* anointed. *Nisi forsitan tam hic, quam & jam supra, idem quod Anglo-Saxanicum* gehalgod *esse existimes.*
[3] *Vide Willielmi Malmesbur. de gestis regum Angl. lib. II. c. IV.*

"Vor

" Vor þat folc of þýs lond to sýnne her wýlle al ȝeue,
" And ȝut nolle herto her sýnnes býleue
" þoru me & other halewen, þat in þýs lond were ýbore;
" þan vor ȝou býddeþ God, wanne we beþ hým býnore,
" Hour Louerd mýd ýs eýen of milce on þe lokeþ þeruore,
" And þý poer þe wole ȝýue aȝen, þat þou ast neý verlore.
" And þat þou þer of soþ ýse, þou ssalt abbe tokýnýnge.
" Vor [1] þým men, þat beþ ago to daý auýssynge,
" In lepes & in coufles so muche vyss hii ssolde hým brynge,
" þat ech man wondrý ssal of so gret cacchýnge.
" And þe mor vor þe harde vorste, þat þe water ýfrore hýs,
" þat þe more aȝen þe kunde of vyssýnge ýt ýs.
" Of serue ýt wel aȝen God, and ýlef me ys messager,
" And þou ssal þý wýlle abýde, as ýcham ýtold her.
As þýs kýng hereof awoc, and of þýs sýȝte þoȝte,
Hys výssares come to hým, & so gret won of fyss hym broȝte,
þat wonder ýt was, & namelýche vor þe weder was so colde;
þo lýuede þe god man wel, þat Seyn Cutbert adde ýtold.
In Deuenýssyre þer after þer arýuede of Deneýs
þre and tuentý ssýpuol men, al aȝén þe peýs,
þe kýnge's broþer of Denemarch duc of ost was.
Oure kynge's men of Engelond mette hem bý cas,
And smýte þer an bataýle, and her gret duc slowe,
And eyȝte hondred & fourtý men, & her caronýes to drowe.
þo kyng Alfred hurde þýs, ýs herte gladede þo,
þat lond folc to hým come so þýcke so ýt mýȝte go,
Of Somersete, of Wýltessýre, of Hamtessýre þerto,
Euere as he wende, and of ýs owe folc al so.

[1] *Pro*, þýn.

So

So þat he adde poer ynou, and atte laste hii come,
And a batayle at Edendone agen þe Deneys nome,
And slowe to grounde, & wonne þe maystre of þe velde.
þe kyng & ys grete duke bygonne hem to gelde
To þe kyng Alfred to ys wylle, and ostages toke,
Vorto wende out of ys lond, gyf he yt wolde loke;
And gut þerto, vor ys loue, to auonge Cristendom.
Kyng Gurmund, þe hexte kyng, vorst þer to come.
Kyng Alfred ys godfader was. & ybaptysed ek þer were
þrettý of her hexte dukes. and muche of þat folc þere
Kyng Alfred hem huld wyþ hym tuelf dawes as he hende,
And suþþe he gef hem large gyftes, and let hym wende.
Hii, þat nolde Cristyn be, of lond flowe þo,
And bygonde see in France dude wel muche wo.
gut þe ssrewen come agen, and muche wo here wrogte.
Ac þe kyng Alfred atte laste to ssame hem euere brogte.
Kyng Alfred was þe wysost kyng, þat long was byuore.
Vor þey me segge þe lawes beþ in worre tyme vorlore,
Nas yt nogt so hiis daye. vor þey he in worre were,
Lawes he made rygtuollore, and strengore þan er were.
Clerc he was god ynou, and gut, as me telleþ me,
He was more þan ten ger old, ar he couþe ys abece.
Ac ys gode moder ofte smale gyftes hym tok,
Vor to byleue oþer ple, and loký on ys boke.
So þat by por clergye ys rygt lawes he wonde,
þat neuere er nere y mad, to gouerny ys lond.
And vor þe worre was so muche of þe luþer Deneys,
þe men of þys sulue lond were of þe worse peys,

And robbede and slowe oþere, þeruor he bỳuonde,
þat þer were hondredes in eche contreỳe of ỳs lond,
And in ech toune of þe hondred a teþỳnge were also,
And þat ech man wyþoute gret lond in teþỳnge were ỳdo,
And þat ech man knewe oþer þat in teþỳnge were,
And wuste somdel of her stat, ȝỳf me [1] þu vp hem bere.
So streỳt he was, þat þeỳ me ledde amỳdde weỳes heỳe
Seluer, þat non man ne dorste ỳt nỳme, þey he ỳt seỳe.
Abbeỳs he rerde monỳ on, and monỳ studes ỳwỳs.
Ac Wynchestrye he rerde on, þat nỳwe munstre ỳcluped ỳs.
Hỳs lỳf eỳȝte and tuentỳ ȝer in ỳs kỳnedom ỳlaste.
After ỳs deþ he was ỳbured at Wỳnchestre atte laste.

[2] EDWARD, ỳs gode sone, kỳng was ỳmad þo
In þe ȝer of grace nỳne hondred ȝer & on & nanmo.
[3] Foure & tuentỳ ȝer he was kỳnȝ, & to more poer come
þan euere ỳs fader dude, ac boȝt to so gret wỳsdom.
He wan" þe kỳnedom of þe March mỳd ỳs dedes bolde,
So þat of hỳm ỳt was afterward ỳholde.
And þat lond of Estangle, and Norþhomberlond,
And Walỳs he wan þoru bataỳle, al vnder ys hond.
And he nas neuere in bataỳle bỳneþe in þỳs lond.
He bỳuond vorst an queintỳse aȝen þe Deneỳs to anstond.

---

[1] *Sic, cum spatio, in Codice nostro* Harleyano. *At* þef þe (*i. e.* ðeoꝛðe *sive* theft) *in Codice* Cottoniano, *sicut me docuit amicus. Adeo ut* þuf þe *in Codice nostro* Harleyano *sit legendum.* [2] Edward the veil, his sone, *Ar.* [3] Logher was he þenne his fader of clergie and wisdom, But more glorious thenne he in power that hỳm come. He wanne *Ar.*

Vor þe heye tounes in þe lond and þe castles þerto
Mýd gode kýngtes he let astorý, & mýd sustýnance þerto.
So þat ware þe kýng were, and þer come her fon,
In eche contreye prest hii were mýd þe lond volc anon,
And smýte moný bataýle, þat þe kýng ýt nuste,
So þat mýd strengþe of heye tounes ech contreye hým sulf wuste.
Hýs soster he let spousý, þat ýhote was Elfled,
To þe kýng, þat huld þe March of hým, þat ýhote was Eþelred.
[1] So þat heo mýd chýlde was, and þogte hýre so sor,
Ar þat chýld were ýbore, þat heo ne wýllede ýt nanmor.
Com more to þulke stoupe vor me ne mýgte ýre bringe,
þat heo wolde euer eft in manne's bedde come vor non þýng,
Ac euere seýde, wanne heo was of suche þýnge býsogt,
" þat kýnge's dogter, as he was, ýt býcom nogt,
" Such fol delýt vorto do, ne such dede naþemo,
" þat were encheson afterward of such pýne and wo.
" Ac gýf þe [2] býgýnnýge were gut as strong, as ýs þe ende,
" Ich wene gut moný womman þulke weý wolde wende.
þe luþer Edwolf was þe kýnge's broþer Edward,
And, vor pur hate agen ýs broþer, held as assreward.

[1] Tho that heo with childe was, and hadde hit i bore, And hadde i felte the woo ther of, she saide therfore, That come woulde sheo neuere in manne's bedde more, For sheo hadde had so mýche sorow & sore; And seide, sheo nulde neuer efte suche dede do, That shuld be encheson of suche sorow and wo. On Athelwolde, Eme's son of this kyng Edwarde, For hate ganne to werrý hym as a shereward. The Danes *Ar. Ethelwoldum etiam filium patrui regis appellat Will. Malmesb. f.* 25. *b.* [2] *Sic.*

þe

þe Deneýs were in Homberlond, to hem he gan drawe.
Hii auonge hým vayre ýnou, & were wýþ him wel vawe,
And made hým her kýng anon, ýs broþer vorto ssende.
Sone hii greýþed her ost þo, Souþward vorto wonde,
And asaýle Estsex, and nome þat lond anon.
Vor þe maýstres of þe lond ȝolde to hem echon.
þo wende hii in to þe March, & muche sorwe made,
And robbede and destrude vaste anon to [1] Creskelade.
So hii passede Temese, and dude wo ý nou,
Kýng Edward sone mýd ýs ost after hem drou,
And drof hem in to Homberlond mýd wel quýc pas.
Ac kýng Edwolf þer after sone aslawe was.
Vor þo kýng Edward & ýs men hamward ywend were,
[2] þat folc of Kent, aȝen ýs wýlle, [3] býleuede bý hýnde þere.
þo Edwolf and þe Deneýs wuste hem so býleue,
[4] To hem hii smýte anon, and bataýle hem ȝeue.
þe Kent ers stode vaste aȝen, & þe kýng Edwolf slowe.
Heýe & lowe þer were aslawe, in eýþer alf ýnowe.
Kýng Edward þe nýþe ȝer of ýs kýnedom
þe castel made of Hereford, and to gode ende com.
þe ȝer þerafter þe Deneýs [5] wende fram Leýcestre to Norþhamtone
Toward Oxenford faste, and at [6] Hogenorte

---

[1] *Vulgo*, Crekelade. *Male autem* Brekkelade *in Ar.* [2] The folke *Ar.* [3] Be hynde lafte there *Ar.* [4] Towarde hem they turned a ȝe, and bataille them ȝeve. The men of Kente stode a ýe, and this Edwolf slowe *Ar.* [5] Wente fro Northamptone Toward *Ar.* [6] *Lege*, Hogenortone, (*sive, ut in Ar.*) Hoggenortonne.

Slowe muche folc [1] ỳ nou, and" in þe contreỳe aboute.
Atte laste þe contreỳe folc com mỳd gret route,
And to drỳue hem al to nogte, & her preỳe hem bỳnom.
[2] Suþþe, in þe endleſte ȝer of þe kỳnge's kỳnedom,
þe Deneỳs come and robbede Norþ Walỳs vaste.
So þat to ỳrchenefeld hii come atte laste.
[3] Out of castel of Hereforde þat folc vaste þo com,
And of þe contreỳe al aboute, & bataỳle wỳþ hem nom,
And slou of hem her hexte duc, & oþere men monỳ on.
Hii, þat mỳȝte of scapỳe alỳue, of londe flowe echon.
[4] Alfled, quene of þe March, strong [5] womwan was and
[6] quenỳte
[7] In bataỳle, and ỳholde as quene in eche ponỳte.

[1] *Desunt Ar.* [2] Sithen in the xi. yere *Ar.* [3] Oute of Herford the folke a yenst heme sone com, *Ar.* [4] Elflede, *Ar.* [5] *Pro*, wommen *sive* women. [6] *L.* queỳnte, *cum Ar. uti etiam mox infra* poỳnte. [7] Ind in bataile as a kyng i holde in eche poỳnte. Al Wales sheo ouercome, and Yorke was hure also. Atte Camelworthe sheo deỳde sethe, and buried atte Gloucestre thoo *Ar. Deinde desiderantur reliqua metra, ad Eadwardum hunc spectantia, multaque eorundem loco oratione soluta inseruntur, in quibus & indicatur, cum Wigorniæ, non Ferenduni (nunc* Faringdon, *in agro Bercheriensi) obiise. Nam sic auctor:* This Edwarde veil deỳde atte Worcetre, and buried was at Wỳnchestre, bỳ side his fader. (*minus recte. Nam & alii Ferenduni hoc contigisse asserunt.) qui & hæc retulit de morte atque sepulturæ Ælfledæ, Elfledæ, sive Ethelfledæ:* Ethelflede, lady of Merchenericke, a boue saide deide to fore hure brother Edwarde veil. v. yere, and was burỳed in Seynt Petre's churche atte Gloucestre, whiche heo, with hure husbonde [Ethelred] with grete diligence had i maked, be cause they hadde translated Seynt Oswalde's bonus fram Bardenaỳ thuder, but þat bỳ Danes destroyed, a nother abbey now in . . . . . by Eldre erchbischop of York.

Al

Al Walys heo ouercom, and þe March þerto.
Stafford heo wan, and Leycestre, and Warewyk þerto,
And Bruges & Euerwyk, & þe contreye [1] &" al so
Of Euerwyk to hyre com, hyre wylle vorto do.
At Tamewur þe heo deyde suþþe, & ybured he was y wys
In Seynt Petre's porche at Gloucestre, as þe abbey zut ys.
þe kynedom þo of þe March kyng Edward to hym nome,
As in þe syxe & tuentye zer of ys kyncdom.
Kyng Edward adde þre sones: þe eldoste Aþelston,
And Edmond and Eldred, þat kynges were echon.
And suþþe he deyde at Farndone, as God zef þat cas,
And in mustre at Wynchestre by ys fader ybured was.

AþELSTON was þo kyng, þat was Edwarde's sone,
And þoru þe heye men of þe lond ycrouned at Kyngestone.
Nyne hondred zer of grace & foure & tuentý y crouned he was,
[2] And aboute an fourtyne zer kyng þer after he was.
Holy chyrche he louede wel, and rerde mony on.
þe vorste zer of ys kynedom ybore was Seyn Dunstone.
Nywe abbeyes he made [3] vaste þys gode Aþelston,
And þer nas of olde house in þe lond non,
þat he ne amendede myd som lond, oþer myd byldynge,
Oþer myd boc, oþer ryche cloþ, oþer oþer ryche þynge.

---

[1] *Abesse malim.* [2] And but an xvi. yere after kyng he nas *Ar.* [3] Many ich vnderstande, Ne olde Abbey was ther none thourgh oute al his londe, That he ne amended with summe lond, other with summe buildyng, Other with bokes other clothe, or summe riche thyng *Ar.*

Norþhomberlond he wan, and Walys and Scotlond,
And þe kynges & her lond held al in ys hond.
Hym þozte yt was more nobleye, þo he adde an hond al þys,
Vorto make kynges, þan to be kyng y wys.
Azen he made kynges, þat kynges er were,
Bote þat hii were vnder hym, and truage hym bere.
þo hii adde her lond azen, þe kyng of Scotlond
Constantyn, and Analaf kyn of Homberlond,
Up þys kyng Aþelston gaderede men y nowe,
And here bysouþe Homber myd her ost drowe.
Analaf was gode [1] kynzt, & stalward & queynte.
Menestral he was gode ynou, & harpare in eche poynte.
To Aþelston pauylon myd ys harpe he wende,
And so wel wyþoute harpede, þat me after hym sende.
þer he harpede so wel, þat he payde al þe route,
Ac euere were ys eyen in eche hurne aboute.
After mete, þo hii nolde nanmore of ys pley,
[2] Hii zeue hym seluer vor ys gle, & let hym go ys wey.
[3] Of þe seluer he adde hoker, vor he ne com þuder vor non,
Ac ys wylle he adde þo he sey þe stat of ys fon.
On, þat adde y be wyþ hym, þe kyng tolde þere.
þe kyng hym blamede þo, þat he nadde ytold hym er.
" Syre he seyde, " ych was ysuore to hym ar to þe,
" And zyf ych adde hym [4] bysuyke, þe wors þou wost [5] leue me.

---

[1] Knyght *Ar.* [2] Me yaf hym yiftes for *Ar.* [3] Of his yftes he tolde scorne, *Ar.* [4] Be trayed, *Ar.* [5] Truste to me. Ac remewe to a nother stede thyne tentes Ich the rede, *Ar.*

Ac

" Ac remewe in to anoþer stude þý pauylon bý myn rede,
" Oþer þou mýȝt ȝut to nýȝt of som treson drede.
[1] þe pauylon was remeued þo, and þe kýng and alle ýs,
Ac a býssop and ýs men þer uorþ com ýwýs,
And pýȝte þer her pauylon, & býleuede al nýȝt þere.
And þýs luþer men com anýȝt, & wende þe kýng ýt were,
And slou þe býssop and alle ýs men, þat gult nadde non.
And suþþe hii wende vorþore mo, and sogte Aþelston.
Of hem nas he nogt [2] ýwar [3] ar þo atte laste.
Ac sone he and ýs men armede hem wel vaste,
And Edmond ýs broþer mýd hým, [4] & þo hii preste were echon,
And wende to þýs batayle, and mette mýd her fon,
þe kýng to ýs suerde drou, and þo ne vond he non.
Hýt was mýd treson hým býnome, hard cas was þat on.
On God" almýȝtý & Scýn Aldelm þe kýng cride vaste þo,
And hii sende hým bý vayr mýracle bote in ýs wo.
To hýs scaubert he pulte ys hond, al preste asuerd he vond
þer inne, þoru God ý sond, no betere in lond.

[1] Thenne to a nother stede the kyng remew gan. To that place the same nyght [a bischop] cam than, And wende to haue founde the kýng ther, so that he logged ther, But the Enmýs cam a nýght, and wende the kýng hit were, *Ar.* [2] *Tum ultra progrediens* [*Analaus*] *regem ipsum imparatum offendit, quippe qui nihil tale hostem ausurum timens, largæ quieti indulserat* Will. Malmesb. fol. 26. b. [3] Fort atte *Ar.* [4] And dighte hem echechon Faste to the bataille, to mete with hure fone. The kyng trawe wolde his swerde, when he týme I seýe, And thenne founde he there non. for hit was a waý Per aunter bý fallýng a waý or bý summe other cas. The kýng was ther of sore abassh-ed, as no wonder was. On God *Ar.*

In þe kyng tresorye þat suerd [1] ẏwust ys,
As vor [2] noble relẏke, ȝut to þys daye ẏwys.
[3] I egged ẏt ẏs in on alf, and in þe oþer noȝt.
þere ne mẏȝte neuere gold ne seluer þeron be ẏbroȝt.
þys noble kẏng Aþelston, þo þys gode suerd hym com,
Nobẏlẏche & wel he faȝt, & so god ernest to hym nom,
þat fram þat þe sonne aros, vorte hẏt derc nyȝt was,
þe bataẏle ẏlaste, and neuere werẏ he nas.
Wat þoru ẏs stalwarhede, wat þoru Gode's grace,
Mony was [4] gode bodẏ, þat he slou in þe place.
þe bataẏle was at [5] Brẏmesburẏ, & þere were of Deneys
An of Scottes aslawe, and also of ẏreys,
Vẏf ȝonge [6] kẏnges, prout þoru al þẏng,
And prout Constantẏn, þat of Scotlond was kẏng.
And of oþere, þat were aslawe, me ne mẏȝte non ende ẏse.
Hii, þat of scapede alẏue, bẏgonne vaste to fle.
þus [7] þe kẏng Aþelston agaste þo ẏs fon.
[8] Vor hii ne ssolde in þẏs lond abbe [9] recet non,
[10] þe castel of Euerwyk to grounde he let caste.
(Vor ẏs fon were ofte þer inne, þe wule [11] he ẏlaste)

[1] ẏut i kepte is, *Ar.* [2] A noble *Ar.* [3] Egged in the on half, *Ar.* [4] The strong bodẏ, *Ar.* [5] Brunnesbury *Ar. Vide cl. Gibsoni nominum locorum Explicationem in Chronico Sax. uti etiam Additiones ad ejusd. Gibsoni Camdeni Britanniæ Versionem Anglicam, p. 873. in comitatu Northumbr.* [6] Knẏghtes *Ar. non adeo recte.* [7] This *Ar.* [8] And for *Ar.* [9] Resceẏte *Ar.* [10] A castell *Ar. Inde certe & in additionibus orationi soluta in eodem codice scriptum legimus,* In the mene while Athelston lette throw downe, *York* an olde Castell at Ebraẏwik, that the Danes bẏ olde tẏme hadde i maked, and that hit shulde

þat hii nadde non recet, vorto greuy ys lond.
[1] Al so of ech maner porchas, þat com in ys hond,
Oþer þat ȝyf eny of ys as in porchas nome,
He verbed, þat neuere non among ys spence ne come,
Ac to hous of relygyon þat me yt al clene bere,
And to poueremen aboute, [2] þat meseyse were.
Alle þe kynges of Walys he brozte wel to lawe
To Hereford al vnder hym, to ys [3] wille vawe,
þat tuenty pound of golde ech of hem hym bere,
An [4] þretty pound of seluer fram zere to zere,
And [5] tuenty þousend [6] oxen ek to þys golde,
An hauekes and hondes, as mony as he wolde.
To certeyn wonynge he hem brozte boþe lowe & heye,
So þat [7] her wonynge were al by weste Weye,
And noþyng in þe Est alf. So þat Weye y wys
ȝut to þys [8] daye to delþ Engelond and Walys,
And þoru kyng Aþelston þat was vorst ydo.
Men [9] of Cornwayle he brozte to certeyn stude also.

---

shulde be no more refute to Enmys, and myche good, ther inne I founde, he parted a monge his men *Ar. Sed videsis* Will. Malmesb. *fol.* 27. *b.* 11. Hit dude i laste) *Ar.*

[1] Also of eche purchas, that he gat to his honde, Othur that any of his men that any purchas nome, He for bede that neuere mo a mong his purchas come, *Ar.* [2] That seke and mysaised were *Ar.* [3] Wille wel fawe, *Ar.* [4] *Trecentas* Will. Malmesbur. [5] 25. *millia* Will. M. [6] Oxen a yere to this golde, *Ar.* [7] The Walesshmen he putte beyonde Weigh, *Ar.* [8] Day deleth *Ar.* [9] *Inde digressus in Occidentales Britones se convertit, qui Cornewallenses vocantur, quod in Occidente Brittanniæ siti, cornu Galliæ ex obliquo respiciunt. Illos quoque impigrè adorsus, ab Excestra, quam ad id temporis æquo cum Anglis jure inhabitarant, cedere com-

Vor bẏȝonde þe water of Tamer he adde hem alle ẏbroȝt.
To wonẏe þer, as in her owe, and a þẏs alf noȝt.
Vor hii wonede þer bẏ uore anon to Excestre ryȝt,
And Welsse were in Engelond vorte [1] he ẏt adde dẏȝt.
Kẏng Aþelston louede muche Malmesburẏ ẏ wẏs.
He ȝef hem of þe holẏ croẏs som, þat þere ȝut ẏs.
And he was at ẏs ende [2] daẏ vaẏre ẏbured þere.
Kẏng he adde arst ẏbe aboute an vẏftene ȝer.

EDMOND, Aþelstone's broþer, after hẏm was kẏng,
Gode man & doutede God þoru alle þẏng.
In þe ȝer of grace nẏne hondred ẏt was & [3] forutẏ ȝer,
þat he was kẏng ẏ mad, and old he was er
Eẏȝtene ȝer, and he was kẏng sẏx ȝer [4] and daẏ.
Foure & tuentẏ ȝer he was old, þo he aslawe laẏ.
Saracens þer were, þe ȝut bẏleuede in Engelond,
In Lẏncolne & in Leycestre, & in Derby ẏch vnderstonde,
In Stafford & in Nothyngham. he drof hem al to noȝt,
And Cristẏnemen aboute in her stude broȝt.
þet hous of Glastẏnburẏ he louede wel ẏnou,
And made Seyn Dunston abbed þere, & to ẏs conseẏl hẏm drou,
And þoru ẏs conseẏl chyrchẏn wẏde he let rere,
And abbeẏs and prioryes aboute here and þere.
In to hous of Glastẏnburẏ gret þẏng he ȝef þo,
And grete franchẏses hem grantede, þat lasteþ euermo.

---

compulit, terminum prouinciæ suæ citra Tàmbram fluvium statuens, sicut Aquilonaribus Brittannis amnem Waiam limitem posuerat Will. Malmesb. *f.* 27. b.

[1] Athelstone hit right *Ar.* [2] At Gloucestre he deyde *Ar. in marg.* [3] *Sic.* [4] And vii. monethes *in Ar.*

[5] þat

[1] þat hý adde her franchýses as veruoþ as þe kýng,
And mýd gode chartre, þat ȝut is þer, made confermýng.
Edwýne ýs sone was þat luþer was ýnou,
And Edgar þe ȝongore þat to alle godnesse drou.
Kýng Edmond atte laste mýd luþer deþe's wonde
Pýtoslyche was aslawe, alas! þulke stounde!
Vor a traýtor of [2] ýs lond, Lof was ýs name,
[3] ýflou was out of Engelond mýd wretchede & ssame."
Suþþe adaý as þe kýng sat at ýs mete
At Pokelchyrche býsyde Brýstowe, & somdel adde ýȝete,
Lof, þýs luþer traytor, mýd ýs cloþes ýchanged þere,
Com in, & býuore hým et, anoþer man as ýt were.
A Seýn Austýne's daý ýt was, as it valþ in Maý,
þe kýng býhuld aboute, and þýs traýtor ý saý,
And auýsed hým suýþe wel, wat man yt were.
And þo he sey þat þýs Lof, þýs traýtor sat þere,
He hupte hým vp fram þe bord, in gret wraþþe ýnou,
And hente þýs Lof býþe top, [4] fram þe borde hým drou,
An defouled hým vnder hým mýd honde & myd fote.
þe þef, þat laý býneþe hým, þozte on luþer bote,
And smot þe kýng wýþ a knýf in þe breste depe ynou,
And, to gret harm to al þýs lond, þe gode kýng he slou.

---

[1] So that hii habbeth Fraunchise as hit were a kyng, As afterward me may I see, thourgh his confermýng. Edwýne his furste sone lithere was i nowe, But Edgar the ýonger to all godenesse drowe *Ar.* [2] This londe, Leof *Ar. in quo &* Leof *etiam infra.* [3] I flemed was oute of Engelond, where of cam ther grame *Ar.* [4] And a doune hym drowe, *Ar.*

þet folc to drou þen traýtor ech lýme pecemele.
þe kýng býgan [1] bý al ýs lyf ýs gode wel wýde dele,
And þe toun of Pokelchýrche, and oþer þat ýs were
He ȝef in to Glastýnburý, & let hým burýe þere.
And þere he lýþ ȝut to þus daý, ac y not þoru [2] wuch doun
þe toun suþþe of Pokelchýrche fram Glastýnbury com.
Seýn Dunston was at Glastynburý þo þe kýng ýwounded was,
And [3] ȝut þoru joýe of Deuel he wuste of þat cas.
Vor þe Deuel com by uore hým, [4] & hoppede & lou,
And saýlede and pleýde, & made joýe ý nou.
þýs holý man wuste anon, wu ýs joýe was,
And þat vor som mescheance of þe kýng he made [5] so glad pas.
Toward Pokelchýrche he wende hastelýche and blýue,
An me tolde hým bý þe weý, þat he was out of lýue.

EDRED was þo kýng anon after Edmond ýs broþer,
Vor ýs tueye sones so ȝonge were, þat me ne mýȝte abbe non oþer.
God man Edred was y nou, & to godnesse drou anon,
And muche louede holý chýrche, & þe godman Seýn Dunston.
Men of Norþhomberlond were aȝen hým vaste,
And of Scotlond also, ac her poer lute ýlaste.

[1] All bý his lyf his gode a þoute dele. At Pukelechurche was do this dede. for thý to Glastenburý He hit ýaf, and þade me shulde at Glastenburý him burý *Ar.* [2] What *Ar.* [3] ýut in the same stounde he wiste of this cas *Ar.* [4] Dauncyng and lowgh, And as hit were pleýing made game i nogh *Ar.* [5] Suche solas. Dunston toward Pukelchurche dight him self bliue, So that me tolde him bý the waý, the kyng was out of lýue *Ar.*

Vor

Vor wat wyþ loue, wat wyþ eye, he brogte hem al to ys wylle,
And her olde seruage made hem holde al stylle.
[1] Vourtene ger he was kyng, and at ys ende day,
Me tolde Seyn Dunston [2] vore," þat he syk lay.
To hym he wende hastelyche, and by þe wey ywys
He hurde angles synge an hey by the [3] lyste þys:
" þe kyng Edred nou aslepe in oure Louerd ys.
þo wuste Seyn Dunston, þat he was ywend to Heuene blys.
[4] Suche gode kynges me ssolde [5] nou vynde among,
þat angeles of her endynge myzte made song.

EDWYNE, Edmonde's sone, after Edred kyng was
Fals & luþer, vor non worse in ys kunde nas.
As a nywe Herodes in such poer he com,
[6] And vp ys poer destrude and apeyrede Cristendom.
A fol womman in spousbreche he huld vnder ys wyf.
Seyn Dunston hym seyde wel, þat yt was a luþer lyf.
And, as Seyn Jon Baptyst, kalangede her mys dede.
Wroþ was þe kyng and ys hore, þat he her folye [7] wyþ,

---

[1] The Latyn seiþ ix. yere and a half *Ar. in margine.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *Idem quod Angl. Sax.* luyc *sive* desiderium *vel* fervor. *Sed hic loci* hilaritatem *signabit. perinde ac si dicas,* he heard angels sing on high with mirth this *sive* thus. *Inde in Cod. Ar.* And as he wende to him warde, he hurde by the way A mery song of angeles thus seggyng heye *&c.* [4] Suche dede kynges now fewe bene vs amonge, That angelus atte hure endyng maketh of eny songe *Ar.* [5] *Potius,* nou, *i. e.* few, *ut ex Ar. constat, nisi cum eod: Cod.* few *adjicias, retento* nou. [6] And with his vnell lyuyng apeyred Cristendom *Ar.* [7] *F.* wyþ sede.

And

And þe womman fondede, hym to deþe brynge.
So þat Seyn Dunston was, þoru hyre and þe kyng,
I flou out of Engelond, and to Flaundres wende.
[1] þe gode man ne toc neuere gome, þat me hym so foule ssende.
Abbeys þys luþer man brogte ek in alle wo.
And þat hous of Malmesbury, þat an old hous was þo,
[2] Of" tuo hondred ger and seuenty yrerd þer bynore,
He made yt stable to ys hors, as yt were alle vorlore.
So luþer man was þe kyng, þat þe heymen of þe londe
Bygonne, as hii nede moste, agen hym vaste at stonde,
And bynome hym muche of ys lond, [3] & bytoke Edgar ys broþer.
Vor he drou to alle godenesse, and [4] betere was þan oþer.
þys Edwyne was þus kyng þre ger, and somdel more,
And þat lond vor ys deþe ne wep nogt ouersore.
And gut vor al ys ssrewede, as yt ywryte ys,
þoru byddynge of Seyn Dunston, ys soule com to blys.

EDGAR Edwyne's broþer, & Edmonde's sone þe kyng,
Kyng was after Edwyne, gode man þoru alle þyng.
Non lyckore ys broþer hym nas, þan an wolf ys a lombe,
Of manere ne of dede, þey hii were in one wombe.
Vor þulke tyme þat Edgar of ys moder was ybore,
Seyn Dunston was at Glastynbury, & þerafter & bynore,
þo hurde he þulke tyme angles synge ywys
Up in þe lufte a murye song, & þat song was þys:

---

[1] The gode man was wel a paide of þat God hym sende *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] And toke hit Edgar his brother *Ar.* [4] Heigher *Ar.*

"To

" To holy chyrche & to þe lond peys ys ybore and blys
" By þulke chylde's tyme, þat nou ybore ys.
[1] Suþþe þo Seyn Dunston wuste, þat þe chyld was ybore ryzt þo
He wuste, þat al Engelond he ssolde bringe of wo.
And so he dude. vor þo he was, after ys broþer, kyng
He brozte al þat lond in pes, þat er was in stryuyng.
He vndude alle luþer lawes, þat me huld byuore,
And gode lawes brozte vorþ, þat er were as uorlore.
Scotlond and Norþhomberlond and Walys al so
Wyþ out heste to hym come, ys wylle vorto do.
þe erþe zeld bet, & þe weder was [2] mergore by ys daye,
And lasse tempest in þe see þan me er ysaye.
Me tolde hym of Seyn Dunston, þat ys broþer drof of londe.
After hym he sende anon, & he com þoru ys sonde,
And ys abbeye auong in pes, fram wan he was so longe,
And was þe kynge's conseyler, & vayre was vnder vonge.
Erchebyssop of Kanterbury þoru þys gode kynge
Syen Dunston was suþþe ymad, þe more godnesse to bringe.
[3] þys kyng al so at Glastynbury, as he þeruorþ com,
Seynt Aþelwold, þat was þer monek, out of ys house he nome,
And zef hym [4] an place in Barcssyre, þat muche ys in mone,
Vyf myle by Souþe Oxenford, þat me clupeþ Abendone.
þys holy man Seyn Aþelwold bulde þere vaste,
And a uayre abbey þer bygan, [5] þat euereſt aþ ylaste.

[1] There by knewe Seynt Dunston, that he, that bore was tho, Shulde kepe Engelond in his tyme fro woo *Ar.* [2] Meryer *Ar.* [3] This kyng also fro Glastenbury as he therforth come Seynt Ethelwolde, that was ther monek, oute of the house nome, *Ar.* [4] A *Ar.* [5] That hider to doth last *Ar.*

Vorst

Vorst abbod he was þere hỳmsulf, & monekes to hỳm nome.
In þỳs manere Abendone vorst to abbeye com.
[1] It byuelle, þat þe bỳssop of Wỳnchester was ded,
þe kỳng hỳm made bỳssop þere, þoru Seỳn Dunstone's red,
Atte heye chỳrche of Wỳnchester, þer ỳs se was ỳdo,
þat me clupede chỳrche cathedral, & ȝut me deþ also.
Canons þer were Seculers, þo he vorst þuder come,
Ferce men and prout, þat muche were in herdom,
þe kỳng and Seyn Aþelwold aȝen hem sette vaste,
[2] And out of þe hous & of her rentes ech after oþer caste,
And made an hous of monekes, to holde her ordre bet.
þe monekes out of Abendone vorst were þuder ỳuet.
Of Seỳn Swỳþỳn þat hous was, as ỳt ỳs ȝut also,
So þat out of Abendone ỳ was vorst ỳdo.
In secunde ȝer þat he vorst bỳssop was
þỳs gode kỳng and he dude þỳs gode cas,
And ek in þe vỳfte ȝer of þe kỳnge's kỳnedom
Seyn Aþelwold vorst bỳssop was, & þe byssopryche nome.
þỳs gode kỳng Edgar [3] & he" Seỳn Swỳþỳn atte fỳne,
þat longe adde vnder erþe ỳleye, vorst brozte into ssrỳne.
Issrỳned he was nỳne hondred ȝer, & on & seuentỳþe ȝer,
After þat our Louerd alỳȝte in ỳs moder anerþe here.
Kỳng [4] Edgar & Seỳnt Aþelwold in Wynchester arerde also
Anoþer hous of monekes, þat ȝut stondeþ boþe tuo,

---

[1] The kyng made him bysshop after thorgh Seỳnt Dunstoun's rede In the churche of Wynchestre, & ther suthe he was dede. Thor were Chanons Seculers tho he thuder come, That lỳued in pruỳte and lỳther lỳf, and mỳche in hordom *Ar.* [2] And of hure houses and hure rentes eche after caste *Ar.* [3] *Desunt Ar.* [4] *Reliqua pene omnia carmina,*

ad

And ȝut þe þrýdde hii rerde al so þere of Seýnte Marýe
Of wýnmen of relýgýon, and made a nonnerýe.
þe priorýe of Helý, þere a býssoprýche ýs,
And þe abbeý of Petresboru, hii arerde also ýwýs,
And þorneý and Rameseýe, and oþere moný on.
Vor eýȝte & fourtý abbeýes hii rerde in þýs lond echon.
As þýs kýng Edgar an honteþ ýwend was
Alone he com fram ýs man, as God ȝef þat cas,
So þat he alýȝte adoun, and aslepe laý.
þo þoȝte hým in ýs slepe, þat an heý tre he saý
Stonde þere býsýdes hým, as he býhuld an heý.
Upe þe hexte bowe tueýe applen he seý,
And þe bowes of þe on appel smýte oþer vaste
So harde, þat he vel adoun in þe water atte laste.
A uoýs seýde, as hým þoȝte, þes wordes þoru soun,
" Wel ýs þe, wel ýs þe," as he vel adoun.
þo he awok, hým þoȝte wonder of þýs cas,
Hýs gode moder Alfýfe he tolde al hou ýt was.
" ȝe leue sone," quaþ moder, " þe toknýng herof ýs,
" þe heýe tre, þat þou ýseýe, býtokneþ þe ýwýs.
" þe tueýe applen býtokneþ, ȝýf þou yt wolt ýwýte,
" Tueye heýe sones of þe, þat þou ssalt býȝýte,
" þat þe one's bowe smýte þen oþer to grounde,
" þat ýs, þat þe oþere's frende ssolle þe oþer sle mýd wounde.
" þe voýs, þat seýde, " wel ýs þe," to tokný þat ýs,
" þat hým worþ wel ýnou, vor to heuene he wende ýwýs.

---

ad Edgarum spectantia, desiderantur in Ar. in quo tamen plura, ad eundem pertinentia, oratione prosaica concepta, habentur.

Al þys bỳuel afterward. vor sones he adde tueye,
Seyn Edward and Aeldred. þat kỳnges were beye,
And one's kunrede þen oþer suþþe slou,
And he wende to heuene, and was wel ỳ nou.
He adde Edward by ys vorste wỳf, as ych abbe y sed,
And bỳ Alfrede, ys oþer wỳf, he adde Aeldred.
And Alfyfe, ys god moder, let rere ỳwys
Vorst þat hous of Ssafteburỳ, as Seyn Edwarde's bodỳ ys.
Kỳng Edgar adde vnder hỳm alle þe kỳnges hereaboute.
Vor þer nas non ỳwys, þat nadde of hỳm [1] dounte.
þeruor þe kỳng of Walys, as in gret seygnorye,
He het, þat he hỳm sende eche ȝer bỳ maystrye
þre [2] þousend of wolues, in name of truage.
þe Welysse kỳnȝ, vp ys power, dude hỳm þe seruage,
And sende hỳm þys wolues fram ȝere to ȝere.
þre þousend at certeyn terme vor þat lond delỳuered were.
þre ȝer he huld ys rente, ac þe verþe was bỳ hỳnde.
Vor he sende þe kỳng word, þat he ne mỳȝte nanmo ỳfỳnde.
And þat was lute wonder, vor to vale þer were bỳ vỳue.
Vor al þat lond were þe wors, adde hii bỳleued alỳue.
Boþe Walys and Engelond þe betere ys þeruore ȝut,
And þeruore þe gode man ỳt dude more þan vor prute.
þys gode kỳng Edgar, þat so stalworde kỳng was,
And wys & hardỳ þoru out al, bote lute of bodỳ nas.
þeruore þe kỳng of Scotlond enuye adde þerto.
And [3] as he sat at mete, & monỳ oþer kỳnȝt al so,

---

[1] *L.* doute. [2] Hundred *alii. Et sic etiam scriptor prosaicus in Cod. Ar.* [3] And so bỳ fel atte a fest, where many wordes communliche ben spoke, Kynad, kyng of Scottes,

He seyde a wel hey word among ys kyngtys echon,
þat he adde gret hoker, (& wonder nas yt non)
Of a so lute halue man, as kyng Edgar was,
þat þer nas lond ne prince non, þat of hym adrad nas.
þys word com to þe kyng Edgar, þeruor he þogte hym teche,
Wuch were þe halue man, tyf he mygte hym of reche.
He com and mette hym in a wode, and bed hym abyde,
And he adde vor þe nones tueye suerdes by ys syde.
He drou out boþe tuo, and bed hym nyme an honde,
And chese weþer he wolde. and þen halue man vonde,
And loke wer þe halue man hym mygte out at stonde.
Vor dereyny hii wolde hem sulue tuo, & take Gode's sonde.
þe oþer vel adoun akne anon ryght vor drede,
And cryde hym mercy vor Gode's loue of þat he mys seyde.
Kyng Edgar adde reuþe of hym, so reulych he gan crie.
" Syre kyng," he seyde, " ech god man yt ys vyleynye
" To be of bold word atte mete, & coward in þe velde.
" Understonde þe bet efsone, and hold me þyn helde
þe godenesse al of kyng Edgar none tonge telle ne may.
Mony was þe god abbey þat he rerde by ys day.
Seynt Edward þe marter, as ych seyde er, was ys sone
By ys raþere wyf, and Seynt [1] Edyþe of Wyltone.

---

tes, in his borde seide thus: "Me " wondreth," quath he, " that " suche an halfe man as Ed- " gar shulde wynne so many " prouinces *Auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar.*

[1] *Atqui cave sis, ne pro filia legitima habeas. Spuria etenim erat è Wlfritha sive Wlfrida ab Edgaro suscepta, Inde* Will. Malmesb. *(f. 33. b.)* " *Nam de Egelfleda, cogno-* " *mento candida filia* Ordmeri " *ducis potentissimi* Edwardum " *genuit, & sanctam* Editham " *de* Wlfritha, [*al.* Wlfrida] " *quam certum est non tunc*

" *sanctimonialem fuisse, sed ti-*
" *more Regis puellam laicam se*
" *velavisse, moxque eandem ar-*
" *repto velo lecto imperiali sub-*
" *actam: Unde offensum bea-*
" *tum* Dunstanum, *quòd illam*
" *concupisset, quæ vel umbra-*
" *ticè sanctimonialis fuisset,*
" *vigorem Pontificalem in eum*
" *egisse.*" *Quæ verba & ipsum etiam auctorem prosaicum in Codice Ar. ob oculos habuisse compertum habeo, quamvis Sanctam Editham non nominet. Sic nempe ille:* To this Ensample of cruwelte *(jam antea locutus fuerat de Ethelwoldo, ab Edgaro occiso, eo quod minus honeste sese gessisset in negotio ad filiam ducis Devoniæ, Venere quasi ipsa formosiorem, pertinente)* er dude, his foos putteth a nother, that is to saye, that Wulfride monechỳn i sacred he toke out of hure abbey, & delt with her holdỳng his lemman. Which Poỳnt whenne Seỳnt Dunstone hurde, he blamed and vnder-name the kyng hugeliche, so that he sette vii. ỳeres penaunce vpon him, the which he toke on hỳm, that is to say of, and that vii. yere he bare no crowne. But summe saith, that this Wulfride was nat vereliche a nonne, bote that for drede of the kỳng a Seculer woman i veỳled, and a none the veile so i doo a way, & take to the kỳnge's bedde. but nat for than Dunstone dude the lawe a ỳenst the kyng as for a nonne, suth that the kyng wolde coueỳte anỳ, whether she were verreliche veiled or noo. But how so euer thes this [*sic*] thỳnges were, certeỳne hit is, that fro the xvi. ỳere of his age, whiche ỳer he was ordeyned kỳng, a nou to the xxx. ỳere him lakked his coronỳng. And thenne was he crowned atte Bathe, and lỳued after but iii. ỳere. *Neque hac in re magni æstimandam esse censeo auctoritatem rotulæ cujusdam membraneæ, sermone Gallico, penes Richardum Gravesium, amicum illum eruditissimum, de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, in qua rotula tanquam filia legitima commemoratur Editha, contra fidem scriptorum optimorum. Hæc enim verba rotulæ:* Iceti Edgar auoit. ii. femmes, le vne apres lautre. De la primer il engendra Edward, ke puis fu martỳr, e Seint Edith. de la secunde Eamun e Ethelred. *Quam tamen rotulam idcirco plurimi faciendam esse duco, quod plerisque, quas vidi, sit antiquior, picturasque regum ac principum exhibeat, minus equidem elegantes, sed quæ antiquariis multis in rebus usui esse possint. Sed (quod dolendum) imperfecta est*

He deyde & wende to heuene nyn hondred zer ych wene
As in [1] þe of grace, and syxty and fyftene.

SEYNT Edward þe marter, ys eldore sone,
After hym was kyng ymad, as lawe was & wone.
þe godenesse of þys zonge kyng ne may no tonge telle.
Vor he was mek & mylde ynou, & vayr of flesse & felle,
Debonere to speke wyþ, & wyþ pouere men mest.
Chast and wys of conseyl, and prute he louede lest.
Wylde men ne louede he nozt, þat rechyles were of þozte,
Ac wyse men he drou to hym, & after hem he wrozte.
Ech gret dede þat he dude, þe messtedel ssolde go
After þe erchebyssop Seyn Dunston, þat was þo.
Gode pes þer was in Engelond, & loue & joye ynou,
And rychesse by ys daye, vor elles yt were wyþ wou.
To þe godnesse of þys holymon þe deuel adde enuye,
And þe luþer quene ys stepmoder, þat vol was of tricherye.
Vor heo þozte nyzt & day, zyf heo myzte poru eny þyng.
þat Seynt Edward were aslawe, & yre sone ymad kyng.
þe zer þat he ymartred was þe hexte men of þe lond
In þe toun of Calne were, as ych vnderstonde.

est rotula, quippe quæ incipit ab Athelstano rege, desinitque cum Edwardo post conquæstum primo, priori parte, pariter atque posteriori, abscissa, & forsitan funditus deperdita. in cujus sane Athelstani regis pictura illud plane observatu dignissimum esse video, quod sceptrum sive insigne regium in manu teneat sinistra, veterum ad amussim referens βακτηρίας. minime absurde, quum princeps esset bellicosissimus, clavaque Herculea usum fuisse censerent hostes. cujusmodi tamen βακτηρίας neutiquam, quod sciam, videas in nummis Athelstanianis.

[1] *Adde*, zer.

As hii sete in an chambre an heý in conseýl of speche
þe flor to brac vnder hem, as ýt were vor wreche,
And hii velle and debrusede somme anon to deþe,
And somme ýmaýmed, & somme ýhurt, so þat ený vnneþe,
Wýþoute gret harm, of scapede, bote Seýn Dunston by cas,
þat hente hým bý a bem, and ýsauéd was.
Wat bý toknede þýs, þat þe heýme men velle so,
Bote þat hii and al þat lond býneþe ssolde be ýdo,
þoru folc of strange lond, and þat me ssolde ýse,
Vor hii soffrede her kýng so výllýche ý morþred be?
Vor a daý as Seýn Edward an hontey wende bý cas
In an wode in Dorsete, þat býsýde [1] Warham was,
þat vaýr wode was þulke týme, a gret wýlle hým com to,
Vor to ýse ýs ȝonge broþer, (vor anon he þoȝte ýt do.)
Vor he was a lute þer býsyde, as ýs stepmoder was,
In an toun, þat me cluped Corf, þat bote þre mýle þanne nas,
A strong castel þer ýs nou, ac þo nas non þere.
Longe þoȝte Seynt Edward at ýs broþer ar he were.
An vewe men mýd hým he nom, & þuder ward gan ryde.
Hýs men pleýde bý þe weý, & spradde aboute wýde.
So þat þýs holý kýng alone was sone,
And alone wende vorþ, as he þoȝte to done.
þo hys luþer stepmoder alone ýseý hým come,
Heo þoȝte do ýre wýlle of hým, as heo adde ýr red ý nome.
þo þýs holý man was neý ýcome, þe quene aȝen hým eode
Wyþ noble maýne ýnou, & gret loue hým gan bede.
þe feste þat heo wýþ hym made non tonge telle ne maý.
Heo suor, þat he ssolde alýȝte, & býleue mýd ýre al day.

[1] Wharham *Ar.*

" Certes,

" Certes, madame," quaþ þys oþer, " so ne may yt nozt be.
" Ac lat me speke myd my broþer, vor me longeþ hym to se.
" Vor ar ych hym abbe yseye, y ne worþe nozt blyþe ywys,
" Myn herte ys so muche on hym, & non wonder hyt nys.
" A, syre," quaþ þys luþer quene, " wanne yt ne may oþer be,
" Vorst ych wolle to þe drynke, & suþþe þou ssalt hym yse.
" As me hym drynke toc, on was prest ynou,
" And þoru ys wombe smot a knyf, and ys gottes to droz.
A long knyf yt was & smal y nou, as me may zut yse
Atte chyrche of Kauersham, as he aþ zare ybe.
þys holyman sat vp ryzt, & ysey ys deþe's wounde.
He ne rod bote lute wey, ar he vel to grounde,
And let þer ys suete lyf, and to heuene wende.
Awey! lute wel þozte he, þo me ys wombe rende.
þo þys holy man ymartred was, hii, þat hym þer brozte to,
Byþozte hou hii myzte best myd þe holy body do.
Hii porueyde an derne stude, & þer inne yt caste
Vyllyche & stylleliche, & bured yt þer vaste.
þo þys dede was ydo, þe quene adde al hyre wylle,
(Vor me [1] hal euere myd þe quyke,) þe dede was sone stylle.
Seynt Edward þe [2] vyfte zer of ys kynedom
Azen eue aday aslawe was in such marterdom.

[3] AELDRED, þe quene sone, þat kyng was ymad þo,
Nas bote of ten zer old, þo ys moder dude þys wo.
Ne of þys dede nuste he nozt, bote as God zef þat cas.
In þe [4] luft he hurde anhey, as he alone was,

[1] Holt *Ar.* [2] Ferst *Ar. minus recte.* [3] Ethelred *Ar. tam hic, quam & in seqq.* [4] Welkne he hurde *Ar.*

Hys broþer, þat was aslawe, pytoslyche grede.
Þet chyld cryde & sore wep, & ys moder þat cas sede
Welle, þat þys luþer quene anguyssous was þo.
[1] þat chyld heo hente vaste anon, þat he ne moste on vot go.
Zerd ne vond heo prest non, þat chyld vorto bete,
An honduol heo hente of [2] candlen longe and grete.
[3] þat chyld heo bete [4] so stronge myd þe condlen long & towe,
Heo ne byleuede nozt ar he lay at hyre vet yswowe.
[5] Warþoru þys chyld afterward, such hey man as he was,
Was þe worse wan he sey condlen vor þys cas.
Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys chyld me made kyng,
Ac Seyn Dunston [6] wel// vnneþe wolde do þe sacring.
[7] Vor god man spek ek þerof wel longe by uore,
þo he baptysed þys Aeldred, sone so he was y bore.
Vor þe chyld fuled in hys hond þe water & þe vanston,
Byuore byssopes þat þer were, and heye men mony on,
And dude hys kunde fulþ hede. Seyn Dunston seyde anon,
þat he ssolde of sunne encheson be, & of wrechhede mony on.
And þo he ssolde [8] kyng be, þys god man Seyn Dunston
Hatede muche to crouny hym, gyf he yt myzte ver gon.
[9] Ac þo he moste nede yt do, þoru pur londe's lawe,
" Syre kyng," he seyde, " vor þou art myd vnryzt herto
ydrawe,

---

[1] The childe *Ar.* [2] Wexchandellen *Ar.* [3] The *Ar.* [4] So sore bette with *Ar.* [5] Wherfor euer afterward, for this ilke cas, Whenne he suche candelen seigh, the worse him thoght he was *Ar.* [6] *Deest Ar.* [7] Of him prophecied Dunston long by fore, Tho that he christened him whenne he was ibore *Ar.* [8] I crouned be, the godeman Dunston Wel loth he was to crouue *Ar.* [9] But whenne he most nedes hit doo, by the londe's lawe, *Ar.*

" Up

" Up þý nowe heued ýt ssal come þý moder luþer plawe
" þoru ssedýnge of þý broþer blod, þat þus ýs brozt of dawe.
" And vor Englýsse men were wel ýpaýd
" In ssedýnge of þý broþer blod, þat so was býtraýd,
" þer vor her poer ssal al clene hem be býnome,
" [1] And þou al so. Vor strange folc of strange londe ssal come,
" And þý lond vor þýn seruage & to grounde ýbrozt.
" And al þat ssal come bý þýne daý, & bý mýne nozt.
" Atte laste our Louerd wolle of hem vnderstonde.
And al þýs word to soþe com suþþe to Engelond.
zut Elfred, þe luþer quene, þat Seýnt Edward slou,
Of ýr trepas býuore ýre deþ repentant was ýnou,
And rerde tuo nonneryes, Worwel þat one was,
And Ambresbury þet oþer, to bete ýre trespas,
An adde grace, zýf God wolle, ýre sýnne vor to bete,
And come to gode amendement, ar heo þat lýf lete.
þe þrýdde zer, as ýt wolde be, of Aýldrede's kýnedom,
þe býgýnnýnge of þis sorwe to Engelond vorst come.
Vor of þe volc of Denemarch þer ariuede þo,
Atte hauene of Souþ hamtone, sene ssýp vol & [2] nanmon,
An robbede þe toun vaste, at her poer noþýng nas.
þýs was as a tokne þat to comýng was,
As bý Seýnt Dunstone's daý nanmore þer ne com.
Vor he deýde þe teþe zer of þe kýnge's kýnedom,

[1] On the also strange folke of other londe shall come. This londe worth in seruage, and be to grounde i brought *Ar. Igitur pro* vor þýn *reponerem* worþ ýn, *i. e.* shall be to.

[2] Nomo, And gonne to robbe faste a boute, but lite here power nas. This was the furst tokene of woo to come that was, But by Dunstone's *Ar.*

And

And nyne hondred zer & eyzte & eyztetỳ after þat God was ybore.
And þe bỳssop Seỳnt Athelwold was ded þer bỳuore,
And Seỳnt Oswald þe bỳssop after þre zer,
As in þe [1] þretteþe zer þat þe kỳng croune ber.
[2] þer betere peỳs ỳt was vor hem þe wule hii were alỳue.
[3] Ac after her daỳe sone, þe sorwes spronge blỳue.

[1] xiii. yere *Ar.* [2] The better *Ar.* [3] But after her daỳes sone sorwes sprong rỳue. This kyng, er he hadde a wỳf, he gat ane sone Bi a symple woman, that worth euer in mone, That, for his strength, called was Edmunde Irenside. For so orped knỳght me ne knewe wide *Ar. minus quidem recte, & contra fidem eximii probique nostri historici Roberti, qui plane docuit, Edmundi matrem uxorem re vera fuisse Ethelredi. id quod etiam fecerunt alii optimæ notæ scriptores, (inter quos jure optimo censendus eruditissimus Bradius) secus atque illi, qui, partibus addicti, nothum Edmundum (è concubina nimirum genitum) fuisse produnt, in quibus & ipse erat Jacobus Tyrrellus, qui tamen, paullo antequam fatis concessisset, me monente in Lelando nostro, (Coll. Vol. VI. p. 75.) sententiam mutavit, ut è nota quadam liquet in Bibliotheca Bodleiana ab ipso Jacobo propria manu in Historia sua Angliæ generali scripta, quam simul atque commodum fuerit consulas velim. Ceterum & illud notandum est, per* symple woman *in Cod. Ar. non aliud quam* ignobilem feminam *esse intelligendum, de qua re nos etiam breviter egimus in Lelando. id quod etiam viderat auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar. ubi de Edmundo sic scribit:* This kynge's [Ethelred] sone was not of Emme quene, but of a nother woman unknow to the commune peple. Natheles he was a faire, jolyf ỳong man, a strong man and hardỳ, and for thi of Englỳsshmen was he cleped Edmunde Irenside. He muche a leide þe cowardỳse of his fader, and þe loughnesse of his moder in him self thorgh his vertue noblelich. *Atque hæc chartis mandaveram priusquam rotulam (cujus supra, p. 286. mentionem feci) Gravesianam vidissem, quæ tamen nec ipsa illis favet, qui Ed-*

þe kyng adde by hys vorste wyf one stalwarde sone,
þat, vor hys stalwardhed, longe worþ in mone.
Vor me ne vond non so gode kyngt ware so he wende wyde.
Me cleped hym, vor hys strengþe, Edmond yrensyde."
þe sorwes, as ych chabbe ytold, spronge aboute ylome.
Vor þat folc of Denemarch sone to londe come,

Edmundum nothum fuisse velint. Contra, picturæ tanquam primogenitum heredemque Ethelredi exhibent, verbaque ipsa filium ex uxore non è concubina fuisse innuunt. hæc nempe, pro interpunctione rotulæ. Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun yreneside de vne femme aliene ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie. si engendra alured ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de kent. E Edward le confessour ke gist a Westmoster. *E quibus verbis non est quod colligas, Edmundi matrem fuisse ducis Normanniæ sororem, quæ tamen (utpote Ethelredi uxor secunda) Aluredi atque Edwardi mater re vera erat. Id quod satis erit manifestum, si hoc modo verba rotulæ distinguantur.* Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun Yreneside. De une femme aliene, ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie, si engendra Alured, ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de Kent, e Edward le Confessour, ke gist a Westmoster. *Hæc distinctio si probetur, id utique liquebit, rotulæ auctorem Edmundi matrem ignobilem itidem fuisse censuisse, nihilque proinde de eadem à seipso fuisse dicendum. Ceterum non diffiteor, alibi etiam de* Irenside *matre locutum fuisse scriptorem prosaicum in codice Ar. eamque pro concubina habuisse.* After the deth (*inquit ille*) of Knut, Harolde & Hardeknut, kynges of Engelonde, regned Seynt Edwarde Confessour, Edmunde Irenside's brother in his fader's half, that is to seye of Ethelred kyng, but nat in the moder. for this Edmunde Irenside was gete of vnlawfulle bedde, thoughe he were noble and stronge in batayle. *Atque hæc sub Henrico II°. tradit, ubi de Henrici II^di^. stemmate agit, verba dicta interim innuens è Chronicis Gallicis se produxisse.*

And

And anour alf þys lond þe hauenes hii adde ysozt.
So þat Norþhomberlond was al to grounde ybrozt.
Kent hii destrude also god, & þe Est contreye wyde.
[1] Exetre hii barnde al adoun, & in þe West syde.
Vr kyng worrede ofte azen, as he myzte do.
Ac wreche of ys broþer deþ wel harde hym com to.
Vor hys poer was lute worþ. vor he zef hem atten ende
Four þousend pound of sterlynges, hem azen to wende.
So þat hys quene deyde, and of sorwe and sore
Hym com in eche half, euere þe leng þe more.
Vor þe Deneys come azen, and in euerych ende
Hym worrede her & þer, þat he nuste wuder wende.
He bybozte hym wel narwe, zyf þer myzte be eny red
Þoru wyuynge, oþer þoru eny þyng, [2] vor hys wyf was ded,
He vnder stod, þat Rychard, duc of Normandye,
Was man of gret poer, and of gret seygnorye,
Vor Emme, hys [3] gode dozter," he sende ofte ys sonde,
To spouse hyre and to make hyr quene of Engelond,

---

[1] The West contre also they wonne Deuenshire, And the Toune of Excestre sette thay a fuyr. Our kyng wered *Ar.* [2] *Tam hic quam & alibi mire omnia permutantur in Ar. ita scilicet, ut hæc verba plane omittat, ne Edmundi* Irenside *matrem Ethelredi uxorem fuisse agnosceret.* [3] Good suster, *Ar.* [4] *Sed discrepantia inde orta, quia Richardus & Emma filii erant Richardi primi, ducis Normanniæ. Hinc certe scriptor prosaicus in eod. Codice Ar.* Thes [Emme] was Richarde's doughter, duc of Normandie, which. L. wynter after William his fader gouerned thulke Duchie, which the xviii. yere this kyng deyde. And after him came Richarde the II. whas suster was thees Emme.

þat

þat he myȝte, þoru alyance, eny help vndergo,
To wyte hym fram hem of Denemarch, þat dude þys lond so wo.
So þat þo hii were aton, þe spousynge was ydo,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and tuo,
And of þe kynge's crounynge in four & tuenty þe ȝere.
[1] þo þoȝte þe kyng, þat he adde of ys fon þe lasse fere.
[2] And here sprong, lo! þe vorste more as of hem of Normandie,
Ware þoru hii come in to þys lond, & [3] abbeþ þe maystre.
Vor þe kyng adde by [4] þys. M. tueye sones ywys,
Alfred, & Seynt Edward þat at Westymustre yssryned ys.
And of þulke blode suþþe Wyllam bastard com,
As ȝe ssolle her after yhure, and wan þys kynedom.
þat poer muche of Denemarch in pes wytoute stryf
Was hem ywend to Denemarch, ar þe kyng weddede wyf.
þe kyng, vor ys grete poer, as of ys [5] wynnyge,
Alle þe Deneys, þat were byleued, he let to deþe bringe
In a Seynt Bryce day, and in one day echon,
þat non nere of oþere ywar, ne þat þer ne of scapede non.
Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, þo he hurde of þys cas,
Made hym wroþ & wod ynou, & eche þat wyþ hym was.
Hii greyþed hem myd gret poer, and to Engelond come
As in þe uyue & tuentyþe ȝer of þe kynge's kynedome,
[6] Hud in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and þre.
Hii slowe & sorwe dude ynou, nomore ne myȝte be.

---

[1] Thenne *pro* þo *in Ar.* [2] Ther sprong vppe tho the ferst more of hem of Normandye, *Ar.* [3] Hadde the seignourie *Ar.* [4] This que. ii. sones I wys *Ar. rectius. nisi forsitan* M. *pro* Mistress *vel* Maistress *sive* domina *accipias.* [5] *L.* wynninge. [6] *L.* and *cum Ar.*

So

þo wende hii vorþ of Denemarch, & robbed al Estsex,
And [1] gute bruggessyre & Estangle, & also Myddel sex.
Bokynghamssyre & Oxenfordssyre, & Hertfordssyre al so,
Bedeuordssyre and haluendel Hontyndonessyre þerto.
Norþhamtessyre, and by Souþe Temese Barcssyre,
And Soþereye and Souþsex, and Souþhamtessyre.
An mucheldel of Wyltessyre, and þo al þys was ydo,
Hii drowe hem toward Canterbury, to robby þere al so.
In þe þousend ger of grace, and endleuene þerto,
þys folc com to Kanterbury, robberye to do.
By tuene hour leuede day þe latere, & Myclmasse day,
þys folc bysette Kanterbury, and vaste bylay,
And gret raymson of hem wiþinne esste to be out of wo.
Ac þe erchebyssop of þe toun, Seynt [2] Alfe þat was þo,
Was vaste þer agen to gyue eny raymson.
þe Deneys vor wraþþe þo asaylede vast þe toun,
And wonne hym, & vaste slowe, & þo hii wyþ inne com,
Hey men, þat þer inne were, and Seynt Alfe hii nome,
And monekes, & þe toun barnde & adoun caste.
þe erchebyssop Seynt Alfe hii heolde & bounde vaste,
And ladde hym bysyde Londō to þe toun of Greneswych,
And helde hym þer in prison, þat he nas nan man ylyche,
Half ger and somdel more, and suþþe in þe ger of grace
A þousend and tuelf ger, hii ladde hym [3] in an place
Wyþoute þe toun Greneswyke, & stenede hym wyþ stones
As me stenede Seynt Steuene, [4] & debrusede ys bones.

---

[1] *L.* Grantebruggesyre. [2] *I. e.* Elphege. [3] To a place *Ar.*
[4] And all to bruysed his bones *Ar.*

Atte

Atte laste myd a denchax me smot hym to grounde
In þe heuede, þat he lay, and deyde in astounde.
[1] þe Saterday, in þe Ester wouke, þys holy man hii slowe.
Ac vewe þat were atte dede þe beuerege bylowe.
Vor somme by come cancrefrete, & somme blynde oþer wode,
And somme deyde verlych as hii vp rygt stode.
So þat vor drede of þys wreche þe Deneys were agaste,
And wyþdrou hem of her luþer hede þe wule yt wolde y laste,
[2] And þer was þe betere pes ager, and vnneþe.
Vor in þe ger of grace a þousend and þretteþe
Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, by gan to turne ys hond.
And after þat he adde destrud þe Souþ alf of þys lond,
He wende and robbede al þys lond al þe Norþ syde,
Norþhomber and Lyndeseye, and destrude wyde
Euere fram Watelyngestret, and so by Oxenford.
Hii come and nome Wynchestre, and so Walynford.
Fram Walyngford hii wende, & þe toun of Baþe nome.
So þat Suan was kyng yholde, ware so he euer come.
Ac þe kyng of Engelond, in such sor & mournynge,
Carede of ys gonge sones mest of alle þynge,
Laste hii were defoulde ogt. vor hii ne couþe of fygtenge.
þer vor into Normandye he let hem sone brynge,

---

[1] This was doo the Efter [*l.* Ester] wouke in the Saterday, As more plenner in his lyf se ther of me may. Many, that was atte his deth, by com blynde & wode, And summe deide sodeynlich vp ryght as they stode *Ar.*

[2] *Desunt omnia metra sequentia in Cod. Ar. usque ad hoc signum marginale (☞) in historia Edmundi* Yrenesyde, *quorum tamen loco perquam multa occurrunt, oratione soluta scripta.*

Boþe Alfred & Seÿnt Edward, & þe quene her moder also,
Wÿþ þe duc Rÿchard, þe quene broþer, vorte such wo were ÿdo.
Ac hÿs eldoste sone Edmond ÿrenesÿde,
Vor he was hardÿ, & gode knÿgt, atome he let abÿde.
þat luþer folc of Denemarch robbede and slowe vaste,
And chÿrchÿn and abbeÿs barnde and adoun caste.
Men leÿ vn bured to drawe, þat reuþe ÿt was ÿnou.
þat feble folc to wÿldernesse and to wodes vaste drou.
Aÿldred kÿng of Engelond, þo he seÿ al þÿs wo,
Hou me destruÿde ÿs lond, and ÿs folc slou,
To mÿdewÿnter he wende anon, þo he ne seÿ oþer red,
To Normandÿe, & huld hÿm þere vorte þe duc Suan was ded.
Suan deÿde in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and fourteþe.
Hÿs folc made euere vaste worre ȝut after ÿs deþe,
And made hÿs sone kÿng after hÿm, Knout was hÿs name,
þat dude, aswel as hÿs fader, Engelond gret seame.
An false knÿgtes of Engelond huld mÿd hÿm vaste,
Ac hii, þat trewe & gode were, aȝen hÿm her herte caste,
And sende after kÿng Aÿldred into Normandÿe stÿlle,
And he come sone to Engelond, and wende abbe ÿs wÿlle,
Ac þe kÿng Knout ÿt vnder ȝet, he was fol of rage.
[1] He wende anon to Sandwÿch, & men þere in ostage,

[1]——but sodeyneliche he turned his saÿles to ward Sandewÿche, and wente a londe. And puttÿng a way bothe Godde's drede and mane's, the hostages, whiche he adde faire children of gret noblete, he let take and kutte of hure noses and eres and somme a blende. And whenne he had so I doo, he tolde hit as for a grete joye, and glorie, that he hadde so defouled the Englysh hostages *inquit auctor prouaicus in Cod. Ar.*

þat

þat were bỳtake hỳs fader, vor heỳe men of þe londe,
He nom and let hỳm smỳte of boþe vet and honde.
Nou adde heỳe men of þe lond ỳtake þere bỳuore
Hỳs fader ostage god ỳnou, and dep oþ ỳsuore,
Wỳþ hỳm to holde trewelỳche, and breke þo her oþ.
Þeruore þe kỳng Knout wỳþ hem was þo so wod wroþ,
And vor wraþþe let bỳlỳme her ostages þat were.
Suþþe he wende into Westsex, and robbede þere,
And in Dorsete dude & Wỳltessỳre & Somerssete gret wo.
Kỳng Aỳldred laỳ sỳk in þe toun of Cosham þo,
In Westende of Wỳltessỳre, vor he was feble and old,
And wỳþ care and sorwe ouercome, as me aþ ỳtold.
An fram Cosham to Londone he of scapede vnneþe,
Vorto wỳte hỳm fram ỳs fon, þat hii ne brozte hỳm to deþe,
þere he huld hỳm in þe toun mỳd muche sorwe and sore,
þat of al hỳs lond of Engelond he nadde an fot more.
þe zates he made vaste, and wuste hỳm wyþ inne.
His fon asaỳlede þen toun wỳþoute mỳd al her gỳnne.
Atte laste þỳs kỳng Aỳldred, as in al þỳs strỳue,
In an Seỳn Gregorỳe's daỳ, wende out of þỳs lỳue,
As in þe zer of grace a þousend & sỳxteþe.
Feblỳche he lỳuede al hỳs lỳue, & deỳde in feble deþe.
In suche sorwe he was kỳng seuene & þrỳttỳ zer.
He adde monỳ an sorỳ daỳ, & muchel anguỳsse er,
An, vor wreche of hỳs broþer deþ, al such sorwe to hỳm come,
þat lute joye he adde al ỳs lỳf of ỳs kenedom.

EDMOND ỳrenesyde, kỳng Aỳldrede's sone,
So gode knỳȝt of bodỳ was, þat longe worþ in mone.
Me nuste so gode in̄ none londe, an atte bỳgỳnnynge,
After hỳs fader deþe, me ches hỳm to kỳnge,
þe heỳe men of þe lond, þat fals ne luþer nere.
Ac monỳe hulde mỳd kỳng Knout, þat false an trỳsthors were.
Edmond, vor ỳs strengc, was ỳcluped Yrenesỳde.
Dreduol he was to ỳs fon, þat hym durste vewe abyde.
Debonere and mylde he was to alle þat gode were.
Queynte & suỳþe hardỳ mon, as man wyþoute fere.
Vorst he wende to Westsex, and þere ech contreỳe
Aboute al to ỳs wille boþe vor loue and eỳe.
As leon hardỳ ỳnou he wende aboute wỳde,
An wan contreỳe and oþer aboute in eche sỳde.
þat Knout nadde poer non aȝen hỳm vor to stonde,
ȝỳf false traỳtors nadde ỳbe here of Engelonde,
þat hulde mỳd þe kỳng Knout, traỳtors as hii were.
So þat noþer of þỳs kỳnges abouỳnde to oþere nere,
Ac eỳþer gaderede gret ost, and of oþere's men slowe.
Atte laste mỳd her ost to gadere ward hii drowe,
And mette hem after mỳdsomer, þe feste of Seỳn Jou,
And a gret bataỳle smỳte bỳsỳde þe toun of Sserton,
And slowe to grounde muche folc, & þo al was ỳdo
þe kỳnges & muche of her folc alỳue partede atuo.
þo wende kỳng Edmond to Londone myd ỳs route,
And al þat folc of Denemarch destrude þer aboute,
And drof hem out of þỳs lond, & ȝut nolde he noȝt blỳnne,
Ac wende in to Westsex þulke contreỳe to wỳnne.

þo

þo he was fram bẏ Este ẏwend, þe Deneẏs myd al here gẏnne
Bẏsegede Londone, ac hii ne mẏȝte noȝt come wẏþẏnne.
So wel he was wẏþynne ẏwust, þoru men þat þer were,
þe Deneẏs hem wẏþ drowe, þo hem ne spedde noȝt þere,
And wende Estward in to Kent, & robbede þere vaste,
And her preẏe at Medeweẏe in to ssẏppes caste.
Kẏng Edmond hem sẏwede, þo he hurde þẏs,
And passede Temese and Breẏnford ẏwẏs,
And slou aboute vaste ẏnou monẏe þat he vond,
And monẏe flowe her and þere aboute in þe lond.
Bataẏles hii smẏte monẏ one, as we bẏgonne to telle er.
Vor eẏȝte bataẏles hii dude neẏ wat wẏþinne half ȝer.
As at Sserston and ellesware, and þe sẏxte bataẏle was
Uppe þe hulle of Assesdonne, ẏchẏlle telle þat cas.
þẏs tueẏe noble kẏnges mẏd her poer hem mette,
And smẏte þere a bataẏle, and vaste to gadere sette.
ẏordeẏned hii adde her ost wel in eẏþer sẏde,
And Edmond ẏdẏȝt hẏs standard, were he ssolde hẏm sulf abẏde,
And hẏs dragon vp ẏset, and þẏs bataẏle ysmẏte.
Hii slowe to grounde in eẏþer alf, þat deol it was to wẏte.
In ys standard Edmond was, as rẏȝt was vor to abẏde.
He seẏ, þat me slou ẏs folc aboute in eche sẏde.
Hys herte hẏm nolde soffrẏ noȝt abẏde vorte tẏme were,
Ac to þe bataẏle smot anon, as man wẏþoute fere,
And bẏleuede dragon & standard, & stured vaste ys honde,
And slou to grounde, as noþẏng hym ne ssolde at stonde.
Sone adde ẏs gode bodẏ ẏperced þe ost þoru out.
He made ẏs weẏ roume ẏnou, vorte he come to kyng Knout.

þere were duntes aryȝt ysmyte bytuene hem tueye
Of þe helmes, þat fur sprong out, vor hii were strong beye.
A duc, þat was myd kyng Edmond, Edryc was ys name,
þat was traytor and louerd suyke, our Louerd ȝyue hym ssame.
Vor he fondede hym bytraye, vor kyng Knoute's loue,
þo he dradde þat Edmond was, as he sey, al aboue,
And kyng Knout ney ouercome, vp an hul an hey
He wende wyþ ys suerde adrawe, þat þet folc hym al yseȳ.
He adrou ys blody suerd, and loude bygan to grede:
" Englysse men, Englysse men, fleþ anon, ych rede.
" Vor Edmond, vre kyng, to deþe he ys ydo.
Hym sulf he gan vorst to fle. vor oþere ssolde al so.
Englysse men hym leuede wel, & flowe after blyue,
And al yt was to bytraye ys louerd, þat was alyue.
þo kyng Edmond þys yseȳ, þat ys folc vnder stod,
þat he was to deþe ybroȝt, and þeruor flowe vor wod,
He arnde vp a lute hul, and gradde in þe place
Hys folc, and dude of ys helm, and ssewede hys face,
And seyde, " turneþ vaste aȝen, ycham alyue ywys.
Hys folc turnede anon aȝen, þo hii hurde þys,
And smyte vorþ þys batayle, gretter ne myȝte non be,
And foȝte vorte yt was nyȝt, þat hii myȝte noleng ȳse.
Ac ye Englisse adde ybe above, ȝyf yt nadde ybe vor nyȝt.
Ac hii departede, as hii nede moste, vor defaute of syȝte.
Hii greyþed hem þerafter, anoþer batayle to do,
And ef sone come to gadere vp Assesdoune al so,
And batayle smyte strong ynou, ac Knoute's poer vaste
Wexynge was, þat he wan þe maystrie atte laste.

Sorȳ

Sorỳ was Edmond þo, to Gloucestrye he wende,
To porueye hỳm more help, ȝỳf God hỳm grace sende.
[1] Kỳng Knout sỳwed after mỳd an long taỳle.
So þat aboute Gloucestrỳe þe eỳȝteþe bataỳle
[2] Up Seuerne hii smỳte, and astede, & so vaste me slou
þe gode bodỳes in eyþer alf, þat ỳt was deol ỳnou.
Mỳd blod þe erþe was ỳheled, þat pyte ỳt was to wỳte.
Ac noþer partỳe ne mỳȝte þe maỳstrỳe.
Ne hii ne myȝte ỳse vor þe nỳȝte þe bataỳle to do non ende.
Hii departede mỳd sorw ỳnou amorwe aȝen to wende.
And kỳng Edmond ouer Seuerne was in West sỳde,
And kỳng Knout bỳgan mỳd ỳs ost in Estalf abỳde.
And Seuerne was bytuene hem, & Knoute's poer
Of volc of bỳȝonde see wax euere ver & ner.
As Edmond sat mỳd ỳs ost anyȝt in [3] such solas,
As folc mỳȝte, þat ver wounded & sor & werỳ was,
And speke of þỳs bataỳle, hou ỳt myȝte þe god:
An old kỳngt þer ros vp, & bỳuore þys folc stode.
" Icham," he seỳde, " mest fol. þeruore, as foles wolle,
" Mỳ fole red, ȝyf ȝe wolle ỳhure, vorst ssewe ichỳlle.

---

[1] Knut suỳd euer after hym euer atte taille *Ar.* [2] Upon Seuerne in a place they smyte stronge i now. Manỳ was the goode body in eyther half me slow. But yutte neyther partie the mastrỳe haue mỳght, By cause that theỳ were lette bỳ comỳng of the nỳght. Kyng Edmunde was of Seuerne in the West syde, And Knut in the Est half a ỳenst him ganne bide, So that the water was bỳ twene her bothes power, And the folke of Denemarch wax euer fer and ner *Ar.* [3] This cas, Wher manỳ a woud-n edman and werỳ ifouȝt was, *Ar.*

" Muche þyng we abbeþ yseye, & vre elderne vs ek seyde.
" Angusse & sorwe we abbeþ ynou, of wel more we mowe drede.
" We fyȝteþ & beþ ouercome, & non maystrie we ne yeeþ.
" Hou myȝte we bote be ouercome, þat þus defoulede beþ?
" [1] Despoyled & verwounded, & vre strengþe le seþ vaste,
" Vre felawes & vre owe lyf we dredeþ ek atte laste.
" Wanne ssal vre reste come, & endynge of vre wo,
" And among vus sykerness & pays? ych drede neuere mo.
" Edmond ne may be ouercome vor hys strengþe ywys,
" Ne þe kyng Knout oure fo, vor he so queynte ys.
" Wat may þanne oure ende be, bote, wanne þys knyȝtes echon
" In eyþer syde beþ aslawe, & oure maystres byleued one,
" Oþer hii mote þanne acordy, oþer fyȝte hem sulue tuo?
" [2] Wat reson ys, þat hii ne mowe as wel nouþe so,
" þe wole hii abbeþ eny alyue, þat hem mowe serue & drede?
" Nere hem nozt boþe vayror so? wu wat ys gydy hede?
" þere were wule in Engelond at otyme kynges fyue,
" And alle hii were ryche ynou, & of noble lyue.
" And nou to lute to hem tueye al Engelond ys.
" And ofte wo so coueyteþ al, al leseþ ywys.
" gyf eyþer kyng so muche wylneþ to be louerd her,
" þat her noþer nele abbe felawe, [3] ne pere,

---

[1] Dispoiled & foiled buth oure frendes, oure strenthes leseth we faste, And also of our awne lyf we dredeth atte laste *Ar.* [2] What reson is hit, that hii ne mowe aswell do now soo, While any knyghtes buth lefte a lyue, that hem mowe serue & drede? Nere hem nought fairer so, where is hure Gidehede? *Ar.* [3] Ne non pere, *Ar.*

" Fyȝt

" Fyȝte hem sulue tueye, þat [1] louerd wolde be one.
" Wu nere hem noȝt betere nou so, þat wanne her knyȝtes echone,
" And her folc were al aslawe, & hii byleued al bare,
" And ne founde who hem seruede in anguysse ne in care,
" Ne who myd hem in neode þat lond defendy myȝte?
" [2] Her of þat soþe seggeȝe, as by ȝoure in syȝte.
Nadde þys knyȝt fulleche hys reson ysed,
þat ys felawes nadde sone ynome her red,
And seyde alle myd one mouþe, " we [3] ensenteþ þerto,
" þat þys tueye kynges acordy, oþer bataýle hem sulue do.
Kyng Edmond, þo he hurde þys, vol was of joye & blys.
þe batayle, he seyde, he wolde [4] nyme myd god herte ywys.
þat worde he sende amorwe to Knout among ys fon,
And grantede ys owe body, þe batayle to do anon.
[5] Hii lete hem army beye, in to an yle myd gode pas
Al mydde Seuerne hii wende, þat Olenege y cluped was.
þer inne hii were hem sulue tuo, & þe water al aboute.
Her ost was eyþer in ys syde alonde byleued by þoute.
[6] Myd god ernest & god ynou her suerdes adrowe boþe,
þys kynges to gadere come, & made hem boþe wroþe.

[1] Woll be lordes all on. And so were hem fairer now, that whan hure knygtes echon, And al hure folke buth a slawe, and hii by lafte all bare, *Ar.* [2] Her of seggeth youre avise, as by youre insyght *Ar.* [3] Assenteth *Ar.* [4] Take *Ar.* [5] They armed hem self beithe, and dight hem with goude pas Into an Ile in Seuerne, that Olneye cluped was *Ar.* [6] The kynges thenne in ernest grete her swerdus drough bothe, And smyte to gedre fast y now a men that were wrothe. Kyng Edmunde assailled kyng Knut so fast, that he was Negh oner come, and sore he was

To grounde hii smyte & harde myd stalwarde honde,
þat wonder was, hou oþer myȝte oþere's dunt at stonde.
þo kyng Edmond ywraþþed was, & wyþinne hot,
He ssoc ys suerde & grunte, & myd such ernest smot,
þat þe sprong out myd ech dunt of helme so þere,
þat yt þoȝte myd ech dunt, as þat heued afure were.
As þondre þat soun was, þe lyȝt as lyȝtynge,
So þat ech dunt þoȝte leyȝt as yt were & þondrynge.
Me specþ of monỳ stalward knyȝt, ac me vond on þere.
yblessed be þe moder wombe þat hym to monne bere.
þe kyng Knout was so debrused, þat he stod vnneþe.
He dradde wanne he lore þat lyf, & were ybroȝt to deþe.
He adde leuer þan enỳ þyng, þat hii acorded were.
Ac he ne dorste ys feblesse telle Edmond, vor fere
Laste, ȝyf he vnder ȝete, þat he were so ouercome,
þat he nolde fyne ar he adde ys lyf hym by nome.
þo he adde a wule yrest, ys armes he gan to caste,
And wyþ gret ernest step ver, & asayled Edmond vaste,
Myd al þe strengþe þat he myȝte, & ssewe more þerto
Al vor he ne ssolde wene, þat he were ouercome so.
þys Knout bygan to reste, þo ys assaut was ydo,
And bet Edmond, as in pes, aword hure oþer tuo.
Kyng Edmond hym grantede, & somdel hym wyþ drou,
And lende vp hys sseld, & herkned hym ynou.

---

was a gast. He hadde lyuer thanne enỳ thyng accorded hane be there. But he nulde his feblenesse yut telle in no maner, Lest Edmunde hit vnderȝete that he were ouercome, And that he nolde fyny til his lyf were by nome *Ar.*

" Ich

"Ich abbe, quaþ Knout, " ẏwẏlned þẏ kynedom ar þẏs,
" And nou, wel more þan þẏ lond, þẏ sulf ẏch wẏlnẏ ẏwẏs.
" Vor þou nart nogt worþ one be of Engelond kẏng her,
" Ac [1] to prince of al þe vorld. vor in þe world nẏs þẏ per.
" Ich abbe al [2] þat lond of Norþweye & of Denemarch an honde.
" I ne wende nogt þat enẏ man mẏ dunt ssolde atstonde.
" Ac þou ne at stonst ẏt nogt one, ac art al clene aboue.
" War vore ẏch desẏrẏ mest þẏn grace & þẏn loue,
" [3] þat þou of alle myn londes me be felawe & per,
" An ẏch mot ek of Engelond be þẏ partẏner.
" Vor ȝẏf we to gadere beþ, & al clene of one rede,
" France & ech oþer lond, & ech prince vs wole drede.
" þer vor ẏch byseche þe, haue half mẏ lond myd me,
" An [4] ẏch, as þẏ partẏner, half Engelond mẏd þe.
Edmond, þo he hurde þẏs, ẏs grete herte wẏþ drou,
And [5] ensentede to ẏs rede, & bẏcom [6] mylde ynou,
And [7] bẏude to ys mẏlde word, þat myd suerd was aboue.
Hii caste awey sseld & suerd, & turnde al to loue,
An bẏclupte hem & custe, & her folc in eẏþer sẏde,
þo hii seye hem acorded, vor joẏe loude hii crẏde,
An songe, *te Deum laudamus*, eẏþer in ẏs route,
And to gadere wende, & custe hem ech oþer aboute.
Bytuene þys tueye kynges was a certeyn fourme ẏdo,
An forewarde [8] among al her folc, ar hii [9] departed atuo,

[1] To be kẏng of *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] And that thow of all mẏ londes mẏ felawe be and peer, And that ich of Engelond be thẏ partiner *Ar.* [4] Ich wole, as *Ar.* [5] Assented *Ar.* [6] Meok *Ar.* [7] A bowede *Ar.* [8] Bẏ twene *Ar.* [9] Parted a two, That eẏther hadde his dele of lond and

Wat eyþer adde to ys del of lond & oþer þynges,
And departede wyþ loue atuo, & byleuede boþe kynges.
An zyf hii adde in gode loue longe ylyued beye,
Me adde þoru al Cristendom yspoke of hem tueye,
An eche prince & eche londe douted hem tuo.
Ac Edmond was al to raþe, alas! to deþe y do,
Vor þe luþer duc Edryc þozte euere to bytraye
Kyng Edmond, ys owe louerd, Knout vor to paye.
A luþer gadelyng was ys sone, boþe at one rede.
Hii fondede myd alle gyle to do þys luþer dede.
þo hii ne myzte in oþer wyse þys dede bringe to ende,
In to a chambre forene þe gadelyng gan wende,
þat kyng Edmond com ofte to, & in þe dunge þar
Hudde hym þere longe, þat none man nas y war.
An þo þe kyng þerto com, ys nede vor to do,
þe luþer þef zare was myd ys arme þerto,
And smot [1] im þoru þe foundement, & þoru þe gottes ryzt,
Edmond þe noble kyng, þat was so noble knyzt.
Wyþ a long yponyted knyf, yegged in eyþer syde,
þus [2] ssenduollyche he hym slou, aboute Seynt Andreu tyde.
[3] An Oxenford he was aslawe, þoru þys luþer lore,
Myd treson & gyle ynou, ynot hou myzte be more.
þe beste body & noblest, þat in eny lond þo was,
yslawe was þoru a gadelyng, so vyllyche, alas!

---

and other thynges, And parted with loue a two, and bylafte bothe kynges *Ar.*

[1] Him into the foundement into the guttes ryght, There thourgh he deyde that hastelich, þat was so noble a knyght *Ar.* [2] Shenfullyche *Ar.* [3] Atte Oxenford *Ar.*

Ar

Ar men mẏȝte aboute come, þen þef to seche þare,
Of scaped he was & ẏflowe, non man nuste ware.
Me greẏþede þẏs gode kẏng, [1] wanne non oþer nas,
An broȝte hẏm vayre anerþe, as he wel [2] wurþe was,
In þe abbeye of Glastẏnburẏ, byuore [3] þe heẏ wened anheẏ.
Vor he wyllnede vor to lẏgge ys gransyre neẏ .
þe kyng Edgar þe gode kẏng, þat þere ẏbured ẏs.
þere hii lyggeþ vayre ynou boþe ȝut ẏwẏs.
Ac þys luþer gadelyng, þat þẏs gode kyng so slou,
To kẏng Knout wende anon glad ynou.
He grette hẏm anon," & seẏde, " hayl [4] þou be kẏng one.
" So nẏs ẏt noȝt," quaþ þe kẏng, " vor mẏ kẏnedom ẏs ẏmone.
" Vor an felawe ẏch abbe þerto, þat ẏch loue ynou.
" [5] Ver, gode syre kẏng," quaþ þys þef, " vor þy loue ych hẏm slou.
" Here ẏs þat knẏf al blodẏ, þat ych broȝte hẏm wyþ of dawe,
" An smot hẏm þoru þe foundement, & so vp to þe mawe.
" þy loue ych abbe wel dere aboȝt, & mẏ lyue anaunter ẏ do.
" þer nys non alyue nou, þat þe abbe yserued so.
" þeruore vnderstond þe wel, & ȝeld mẏ mede blẏue.
" Vor ych abbe ẏdo þe more gode, þan alle þe men alẏue.
" þou seẏst soþ," quaþ þe kyng, " þou ast muche ydo vor me,
" An ẏchylle wel þy mede ȝelde by þe treuþe ych on to þe.

---

[1] Tho other bote nas, *Ar.*
[2] Worthẏ *Ar.*
[3] The heigh auter. For he wilned to lẏgge neigh his graunt sire there *Ar.*
[4] Be thow kyng al on. So is hit not, quod he a ȝe, hit is mẏne but in mone *Ar.*
[5] For, *Ar.*

" ẏchẏlle

" ẏchẏlle make þe heyaon, [1] bẏ tẏme ẏchabbe ẏþogte,
" þat þou ne ssalt vor þẏ lẏflode neuere carẏe nogt.
Edrẏc, þe luþer suẏke, ẏs fader, com al so:
" Syre," he seẏde, " ẏch abbe muche lone þe ẏdo,
" [2] Versake Edmond [3] mẏ nowe louerd, & bẏtraẏd vor þe,
" An let hẏm sle vor þẏ loue, hou wolton ẏt gelde me?
" þo seẏde kẏng Knout aze, traẏtor þou art ẏwẏs,
" An muche aze God & azen me þou ast ẏdo amys,
" Wanne þou ast [4] þẏ nowe louerd, as þou [5] tellest vore,
" To so vẏle deþe ẏbrot, þat was mẏ broþer ẏ suore.
" Hẏs blod, þat þou madest ssede, ssal arde com on þe.
" Vor [6] þẏ nowe mouþ þe aþ ẏdemed bẏ þat þou seẏst [7] me.
He let caste þẏs traẏtor in þe cuenẏnge late
At fenestre in Temese, nouse vor to abate.
An let hẏm stẏllelẏche adrenche, vor manne speche þere.
And þat was, lo! ẏs noble mede, to lute þeẏ ẏt were.
þe luþer traytor hẏs sone auanced was gut bet,
[8] Vor hẏs robe & hẏs dẏgnẏte was al wel bẏset.
He gef hẏm such auancement, as he wolde, he suor ẏs oþ,
þat he ne dorste neueref carẏe [9] of mete ne [10] of" cloþ.

---

[1] Right some ich haue I thought *Ar.* [2] For sake ich haue mẏne awne lorde, and him by trayed for the. For thi, sir kyng, a benefeat ich aske in help to me *Ar.* [3] *Pro*, myn owe. [4] *L.* þẏn owe. *Nam* thẏne awne *in Ar.* [5] Me tellest fore *Ar.* [6] *L.* þẏn owe. *Sed* thẏ nawne *in Ar.* [7] To me. So that theme traytour he let take an hast, And prẏuẏliche with oute noẏse in to Themese him cast, And let him stilliche a drenche, that no noẏse were. And this was, loo! his good rewarde, thogh hit i nogh nere *Ar.* [8] In robe of roiall dignite, that was well bẏ sette *Ar.* [9] For *Ar.* [10] *Deest Ar.*

An

An robe he let hym ssape verste of blod rede scarlet þere.
þe ssarpe stones [1] bỳ þe strete hỳs taỳlors were.
Vor he let hym mỳd hors [2] to" drawe fram strete to strete,
þat þe peces ffelle of ỳs fless aboute monye & grete.
[3] þe taỳlors corue so monge peces, vor ỳs robe ne ssolde powe.
He ne dorste þo carỳe nozt of þe wỳnter couwe.
Suþþe he let smỳte of ỳs hede by þe ssoldren, as me seỳ,
And let ỳt sette vpon tour of Londone an heỳ.
And so he was heỳ man ỳmad, as he bỳhet hỳm to ỳs mede.
Alle traytors & [4] louerd suỳken God late hem so spede.

KNOUT was þo alone kỳng, as wo seỳþ, of [5] Engelon,
Of Norþweỳe, [6] of Denemarch, & gret poer adde anhonde,
Ac Edmond þe gode kyng, þat so vỳllỳche me slou þo,
Adde tueỳe gonge sones, ar he were to deþe ỳdo,
Edward & [7] Edmond, & breþeren al so tueỳe
Seỳnt Edward & Alfred, þat in Normandỳe were beỳe.
Vor þes were kyng Edmond nezt, & ỳs eỳrs also.
Kỳng Knout þozte hou he mỳzte best herof do,
[8] To bỳnỳme hem her erỳtage, & mỳd wuch wrong he mỳzte,
And mỳd wuch treson, bote he adde som colour of rỳzte.

---

[1] In the *Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] His taillours corne him anche a robe, that none coueỳte wolde, Ne that he ne durst after neuer carie for the colde *Ar.* [4] Lord swykes *Ar.* [5] Engelond, *Ar.* [6] And of *Ar.* [7] Edmunde, half bretherne tweỳ *Ar.* [8] To byneme hem her heritage how that he myght, As hit were bỳ coloure of summe maner ryght. For thogh manỳ maỳ do atte his lust some thyng, Of wrong he wolle make a ryght as by colouryng *Ar.*

Vor

Vor wanne man may do wat he wole & vnrygt ynou,
Ofte he bryngþ vor coueytyse to rygte pur wou.
He made a gret parlement, & brogte heye men þerto.
Ac wo seyþ, yncle noþyng wyþoute lokyng do.
þo bed he þe court segge soþ, & rygt vnderstonde,
Wat forewarde þer were ymad [1] in fourme of Engelonde,
Bytucne hym & kyng Edmond, þe wule he was alyue,
And wam Edmond made [2] hys eyr of ys londe wyþoute striue,
And wam of ys gonges soncs wardeyn ek ydo,
And wat þyng he adde assygned ys tueye breþeren al so.
Herof he bed hem segge soþ, as yt were glosyng.
Vor he ne kepte, he seyde, myd vnrygt of no monne's þynge.
þo stode þer somme vp, þat adde ynome her red,
Vorto paye kyng Knout, & nogt Edmond þat was ded,
And seyde byuore al court, þat kyng Edmond byqueþ
Hys kynedom & al ys lond kyng Knout byuore ys deþ,
And þe warde of ys tuo sones, vorte hii of elde were.
Alas! alas! þe trecherye, þat me mygte yse þere!
Vor þe dede was vergyte anon, & þe quike vorto paye,
[3] Hii bytoke þe qued her soule, þe kunde eyrs to bytraye.
þys word was yholde stable, & yloked vor dome.
Kyng Knout of Edmonde's londes anon seysyne nome,
[4] And huld hym þo al clene kyng of al Engelond,
Of Norþweye, of Denemarch, gret poer he adde an honde.

---

[1] And fourme *Ar.* [2] His heire with oute any stryue, And to whom his yong sones in warde shulde be do, *Ar.* [3] Hure soules by toke they to the fende, the ryght heire to be tray *Ar.* [4] And helde him self a lone kyng of all Engelond, And Norwey and Denemarch, and grete power hadde in hond *Ar.*

Ech

Ech þozte he was Godle next, þat mẏzte abbe ẏs grace;
Of so gret poer þer bẏuore me ne kneu non in non place.
þo he was of al Engelond kẏng, wẏþoute [1] mone,
He bẏgan to cuþe anon, þat he was kẏng [2] one.
Alle þat were ozt [3] ẏsẏb Edmond þe kẏnge,
[4] Oþer in alẏance of enẏ loue, to deþe he let bringe,
Oþer flemd hem out of Engelond, non byleued nere,
Bote ẏs tueye zonge sones, þat so feble & tendre were.
He ne mẏzte, vor þe worlde's ssame, hem to deþe bringe.
[5] He sende hem out of Engelond, to [6] & heye kẏng
[7] Bẏsyde Denemarch, þat he hem to deþe brozte,
So ver [8] in onekeþelond, þer non man of hem ne rozte.
Awey! sely zonge þẏnges, frendeles were hii þere,
þat so ver, as mẏlde lomb, to deþe ẏlad were.
þo hii to þe kynge come, [9] þat he hem to deþe brozte,
Vor þe heẏe blod, [10] of wam hii come, þe kyng hym bẏþozte,
An adde reuþe of hem gret, & ẏs wille gan wẏþ drawe,
An ne mẏzte, vor reuþe, vor non þyng bring hẏm of lẏf dawe.
[11] To þe kẏng of Hongari þẏs selẏ chẏldren tueye
He sende hem vor to norẏsy, þat he warded hem wel beẏe.

---

[1] Any mone, *Ar.* [2] A lond *Ar.* [3] Sibbe sir Edmunde *Ar.* [4] Or of Aliaunce in any wey, to dethe *Ar.* [5] But sente *Ar.* [6] An *Ar.* [7] A lyte bẏ side *Ar.* [8] In couthe lande, wher no man of hem rought. Alas! the sely *Ar.* [9] To dethe that hem shulde haue brought, *Ar.* [10] They of come, he him sone by thought *Ar.* [11] To the kẏng of Hungarẏ the sely children tweẏe. The kyng hem faire vnderfeng for hure heigh nobleẏ, So long fort Edmunde, that was the quene brothe [*sic*], Spoused his doughter, and seth made the other, That hizt Edwarde, spousy the emperoure's nevew *Ar.*

þe kyng hem vayre vndervong, & honoured in ech wyse,
An gret deuyte tolde of hem, vor her gentryse,
So longe, þat he let Edmond, þat was þat on broþer,
Sspousy ys owe dozter, & suþþe he let þe oþer,
þat het Edward, spousy þe emperoure's [1] mowe.
þo adde hii boþe ywyued wel, & nozt tolowe.
[2] Ac" Edmond leuede lute wule, & no chyld [3] nadde alyue.
Ac Edward þe oþer adde þre chyldren by ys wyue,
A sone, þat [4] het Edward, & doztren also tueye,
Margarete & Cristyne, þat gode wommen were beye.
þys gode chyldren azte be euermo in [5] munde.
Vor Engelond, zyf hii nere, were zut out of kunde,
As ze mowe [6] hure her afterward, in kyng Henrye's lyf,
Hou Engelond com to kunde azen þorn þe god Mold ys wyf,
[7] þat þes Margarete dozter was, Mold þe gode quene.
Vor þys lond were zut out of kunde, zyf hii nadde ybe, ych wene.

---

[1] *Non tantum cognata, sed filia re vera erat Henrici II. Imperatoris, nomenque ejus erat Agatha.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] Hadde *Ar.* [4] Height Edgar, and also doughtren twey, *Ar. Et quidem recte* Edgar. [5] Mynde. For Engelond, yf they nad i be, hadde be oute of kynde *Ar.* [6] Here afterwarde, in Harry the furste's lyf, I hure, how *Ar.* [7] That doughter was of Mergarete, as ich vnderstande, By twene hure and Macolyn kyng of Scotland. Knut of all Engelond was thoo kyng thorough oute. Hit is no nede to eesshe, yf he were kene and proute. Tho he was of Edmunde's sones, and al that with him were, Delyuered, he was proute i nough, and yet he was infere O kyng Ethelrede's ii. sones, that were in Normandye, Aluered and Seynt Edwarde, lest hii wolde a stye, Thorough Richard, duc of Normandye, *Ar.*

Kyng

Kẏng Knout of al Engelond was þo kẏng alout.
Me ne dar noȝt esse, wer he were kone þo & prout.
þo he was of Edmonde's sones, & of al, þat mẏd hym were,
Delẏuered, he was fers ẏnou, ac somdel he was in fere
Of Edmonde's tueye breþeren, þat wonede in Normandye,
Alfred & Seẏnt Edwarde, laste hii gonne astẏe
þoru þe duc of Normandye, þat her vncle was.
Hym þoȝte were he sẏker of hem, hẏm ne doutede of no cas.
Seẏnt Edwarde's moder þeruore he of sende,
Emme þe quene of Engelond, þat [1] he hẏder wende,
[2] þoru conseẏl of her broþer, þat was þe duc Rẏchard,
An þoru ensent of hẏr tueye sones, Alfred & Seẏn Edward,
An were yspoused hẏm to wẏf, & oure quene were al so.
Wat halt ẏt to telle longe? þẏs dede was ẏdo.
Vor kẏng Edmond was aslawe a Seẏnt Androwe's tẏd, ẏch wene,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and sẏxtene.
And to þe [3] lammasse afterward he spousede þe quene,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and seuentene.

---

[1] She *Ar.* [2] And the on of hure bretherne, that was duc Richarde, And thourgh assent of hure sones, Aluered and Edewarde, and spoused hẏm to wẏue *Ar.* [3] Anð þa to-ꝼoꝼan KΓ. Auȝ. het ꝼe cẏnȝ ꝼeccan hım Æðelꝼeðeꝼ laꝼe þeꝼ oðꝼeꝼ cẏnȝeꝼ hım to cþene. Ricaꝼðeꝼ ðohtoꝼ:. Chron. Sax. sub an. MXVII. *Male proinde in Cod. Ar. significatur, hasce nuptias celebratas fuisse* A. D. MVII. (As in the ẏer of grace Ml. and seuene) *Edmundumque occisum* A. D. MVI. (For as in the ẏer of oure lorde Ml. and sixe ẏere Edmunde Irenside, her sone in lawe, slayne was ere.) *Et tamen in hoc ipso Codice* Parliamentum (*sive potius* magnum *vel* commune concilium) *Oxoniense* A. D. M.XVIII. *tentum fuisse rectissime etiam asseritur.*

ȝut to be þe sykerore, after þys spousynge,
He let ys barons of Engelond to Oxenford bringe
A þousend as in þe ȝer of grace and eyȝteþe ȝer,
An a parlement vor hys stat of hem made þere.
So þat ȝyf þer eny was, þat aȝen hym herte bere,
Hym þoȝte hys poer non þyng nas, ac [1] as vor noȝt yt were.
[2] As was to hym al clene ysuore, þer nas non byhynde.
Þo was he al clene loucred, to bynde and vnbynde.
A wyf, þat het [3] Aylyne, he adde er of gret fame.
By hyre he adde an sone, Harald was hys name,
þat of þe kunde was of Denemarch, in eyþer alf al out.
By Emme he adde anoþer sone, þat het Hardeknout,
þat beye were kynges after hym, as me ssal sone rede,
þys kyng was þo poruout al man of noble dede.
Þo he was alone kyng of grete londes þre,
Hym þoȝte al þe world ne myȝte aȝen ys poer be.
And naþeles he bygan ys herte in bocsumnesse amende,
An þoȝte on þe vayre grace, þat houre Louerd hym sende,

---

[1] All *Ar.* [2] All were clene to hym i swore, ther was none he hynde *Ar.* [3] Helene *Ar. quam Ælfgifam, sive Ælgivam, appellant alii. Quin etiam & hoc notandum, plerosque scriptores eandem concubinam, non uxorem, Canuti fuisse asserere. Unde sane doctissimus Bradius in textu historiæ suæ* (*p.* 129.) *Cnute* not long before he died, appointed his eldest son *Swane*, by his first Wife * *Elgiva*, to be king of *Norway*, and his second Son *Harold*, by the same Woman to be king of *England*, and *Harde-Cnute* his Son by *Emme*, king of *Danemarke; ex Hovedeno nimirum* 251. *a. al in notis*, * By most Writers reported to have been a Concubine, she was Daughter to a *Mercian* Noble-man, who is said to have been Earl of *Northampton*.

An

An louede Englysse men, and Engelond þerto,
An muche louede holy chyrche & susteynde also,
An restorede abbeys, þat destrud were byuore,
An chyrchen let vp arere, þat were arst as verlore,
An let arere monye nywe, & in stedes mest þere
[1] As he adde men aslawe, & bataylcs ydo er,
[2] An vp Assesdone & þer aboute mest chyrchen he let rere,
As vor her soulen, þat yslawe were þere.
Vor he & þe kyng Edmond mest armes þere bere,
An mest man slazt þoru hem & bataýles þer were.
Seynt Alfen's body," þat y martred was
At Greneswuch þoru hys fader, as we tolde þat cas,
At Seyn Poule's of Londone, as yt was anerþe ydo,
Hys owe honde nome yt vp, &, as yt byuel þerto,
Het let yt fayre honourý, & sende yt atte fyne
To þe munstre of Canterbury, [3] as he lyþ zut in ssrýne.
þe þrydde zer ych vnderstonde, þat he was alone kyng,
Fram hys lond of Denemarch me brozte hym tythyng,
þat he was þere yworred vaste of hys fon.
He nome wyþ hym of Engelond zod knyzt monyon,
An myd gret poer & muche folc þuderward vende anon,
So þat he sone come bysydę hys fon echon,
An byleuede hym þer al nyzt, & al hys ost al so,
An þozte anon amorwe strong bataýle do.
A gret erl of þys lond, Godwyne was hys name,
Myd hys poer myd hym was, þat monyon dude ssame.

[1] Where he *Ar.* [2] As vpon Asshedoune and a bonte there, As for the sowles of hem that slayne there were. Seynt Alphę Erchebysshoppe's body *Ar.* [3] And ther hit was in shrýne *Ar.*

Vor þys lond, as me ſeal hure, ofte he dude bytraye.
He þozte þo hou he myzte þe kyng Knout best paye.
By nyzte [1] hym & hys poer he let army þere,
And wende so anonywar, [2] as þe kynge's fon were,
[3] An fond hem, as wo seyþ, aslepe. he leyde on hem to grounde,
An slou and to drof hem alle in a lutel stunde.
Amorwe" þo þe kyng wolde wende vp hys fon,
An myste Godwyne & hys men, of gyle he dradde anon,
þat þe Englysse hym bytraye wolde, he þozte of luþer won
Vor to sle þys Godwyne, and þe Englysse echon.
An naþeles he wende toward hys fon myd al hys poer vaste,
Vor to smyte an batayle, & þo ne wond he atte laste
Nozt of hem bote caroyne, & þe bodyes dede al so,
þo he vond, þat Godwyne such andede adde y do,
An delyucred hym of hys fon, & ybrozt hym so aboue,
Euereſt he louede hym þe more, & al Englysse vor hys loue.
þo he seyd, þat Englysse men so gode in nede were,
An hys fon were ouercome, noþyng he nas in fere.
[4] þo he adde one þe kynedom of grete londes þre,
Hym þozte [5] al þe world ne myzte azen hys poer be.

[1] Hym self and *Ar.* [2] Wher the *Ar.* [3] And founde hem muche del a slepe, so that in a stonde This Enmys of Swethe londe hii brought all to grounde. Ulf and eke Ergall of Swethe lond kyngus Fust [*sic*] to kyng Knutus host, at his comyngus, Muche harme had i doo, but in this case wyse Godewyn with his men gate of hem the pryse. A morwe *Ar.* [4] Tho hadde he al on the kyngdomes of *Ar.* [5] That in all the worlde ne myght his pere be. Of all his proude dedis ne can iche telle nought, Bute of on tale ich wole, as hit cometh in thought *Ar.*

Of

Of al hys proute dedes I ne may verbere nozt,
þat I ne mot zou telle of on, nou yt comþ in my þozt.
A þousend as in þe zer of grace, & on & tuentý þerto,
As in þe vyfte zer þat kyng Knout in such poer was ydo,
He [1] wende, as noble syre, fram londe to londe,
þat [2] hym þozte al world ne ssolde azen hym stonde.
As he wende aboute by þe see, & such poer adde an honde,
Up achaere he sat adoun, al vp þe see sonde,
An [3] enresonede hys men, as hii byuore hym stode,
So þat þe tyme com of þe see flode,
þat yt bygan to wexe vaste, at yt deþ atte tyde.
þe kyng byheld þe wexynge an hoker al asyde,
So þat þe water vaste waxe [4] vppard hey & wyde.
[5] þozte þys grete louerd, zut ychelle abyde.
þo yt was ney to hym ycome, baldelyche [6] spac
An sturnelyche to þys water, þo yt alles out brac.
" Water," he seyde, " [7] wat þencst on? ych rede ne com
no ver.
" Under stond, þat þou art al clene in my poer.
" Vor þat lond, vp wan þou vrnst, & vp wan ych sytte her,
" Is clene mya al aboute. vor þou wost ynabbe no per.
" þeruore yoh [8] ote þe þyne wexyng anon lete,
" þat þou ne be so hardy nozt, þyn louerde's cloþes to wete,

---

[1] Wende a boute as *Ar.*
[2] He thought in all the worlde none shulde him withstonde *Ar.*
[3] Spak to his *Ar.*
[4] *Potius*, uppard (*idem quod Anglo-Sax.* uppeapd.)
[5] yut thought this grete lorde he wolde a byde ther *Ar.*
[6] He spak *Ar.*
[7] What thenkest thow? I rede come no ner *Ar.*
[8] Hote *Ar.*

" Ne hys lymes, ac vp [1] mynowe let me in pes sytte,
" [2] Oþer, by þe fey þat ych ou to þe, ychelle rekeny mytte.
þe water dude vorþ hys kunde, & wax euere vaste,
So þat to þys grete louerd hyt com atte laste,
[3] An watte hys ssone & hys vet. so longe yt wax an hey,
þat yt watte hys brych al aboute, & euere vpard yt stey,
So þat hys hupes smourte, & of cold were ney.
þys grete louerd sturte hym vp, þo he oþer ne sey,
An wed hym vp to londe, hym þozte er late ynou.
He byheld toward þe water, & hys grete herte wyþ drow."
" Wyte," he seyde, " al men, þat anerþe wonyeþ her,
" [4] þat yt nys bote þe pure masse eny kynge's poer.
" Ne þat no man ys wurþe to be ycluped kyng,
" Bote þe heye kyng of heuene, þat wrozte al þyng,
" þat haþ heste of water, and of erþe al so.
" Heuene & helle & ech þyng mot nede hys heste do,
" An habbe hym as louerd, vor ynam non y wys,
" þeruor me to clupye kyng, myd vnryzt yt ys.
" þeruor ych byhote God, þat yne ssal kynge's croune
" Neuere bere anerþe, vor my poer ys þer doune.
He wende hym vorþ to chyrche, & bynore þe rode com,
An wyþ meke herte pyteslyche hys kynge's croune nom,

---

[1] My nawne *Ar.* [2] Or elles, by the fey that is me, ich wolle fyght mytte *Ar.* [3] Hit wette his hosen and his shone, and yut for pruyt he nolde Ryse fort he nedes moste, or elles drenche he shulde. And thenne he sturte vppe of the water he thought late i now, And be hilde towarde the water, & his grete hert with drow *Ar.* [4] That hit is bute the mase any kynge's power *Ar.*

An

An sette vpon the rode heued, & seyde þat he alone
Was wurþe to croune bere, & oþer kynges none.
He bỳleuede þe croune þere, sỳkỳnde wel sore,
An þerafteṛ vp hỳs heued ne com he namore.
An me seyþ, þat he ne bar neuere þe croune of Engelond,
Ac ne bar þulke ne non oþer þerafter, ỳch vnder stonde.
Sỳnþe god man he becom & aforced hym ỳnou,
An bỳhet God euereft afterward to bỳleue wou,
An God & holỳ chỳrche to louỳe mỳd al hỳs mỳgte,
An make godes lạwes, & susteỳne ech rỳgte.
þes byheṣte he held vol wel, & gode lawes ỳ nou
He made þe beste þat mỳgte be, & to ech godenesse drou.
Vor þe manslaẓt þat he adde ỳdo, & þe vnrỳẓt ỳ lome,
And voṛ þe monỳe gode cas þat hỳm ofte come,
He byhet God to wende þe holy weỳ to Rome,
So þat he & hỳs knỳgtes wỳþ gode herte þen weỳ nome.
An as he toward Rome wende bỳ monỳ alond,
Wanne he enỳ luþer lawes in enỳ stude vond,
þe prince, oþer louerd of stude, sone he out soẓte,
And bote he granted hỳm amendement, mỳd tresour he ỳt boẓte,
An vor he was man of such poer, vewe aẓen hỳm wroẓte,
So þat euere ware he come gode lawes he broẓte.
[1] Gengỳl men þat he vond in prison ek ydo,
Oþer in warde mỳd vnrỳẓt, he boẓte hem out also.
At Rome he was auonge uaỳre, and asoỳled also.
Aẓen he wende to Engelond, þo al þys was ỳ do.
þo he com aẓen, at Glastỳnburỳ hỳm longede ar he were,
Vor loue of kỳng Edmond, þat ỳbured was þere,

[1] Goude men *Ar.*

þat

þat he cluped hys broþer, vor þe treuþe þat bytuene hem was her.
þat bodi he honourede y nou þe he com þere,
And al þe stude vor hys loue, & dude vayr offrynge,
An amendede þat hous myd mony a ryche þynge,
An zef hem londe and rentes, and confermede al so
þe zeftes, þat oþer kynges hadde er yzyue þerto,
Of rentes and of londes, as þe kyng Cuþred,
An kyng Centwyne & Ine, & suþþe kyng Alfred,
Edward and Aþelston, Edmond and Edgar.
Her zeftes he confermede, & to make ech man ywar,
To holde þys zeftes stable, amansy he let al so
Alle þat aboute were her zeftes euere vn do.
He confermede her londes, as frelyche to holde y wys,
By gode chartre & her rentes, as þe kyng huld hys.
þys kyng Knout was tuenty zer kyng of Engelond,
An in a þousend zer of grace & þrytty, ych vnderstonde,
An syxe he deyde at Ssafteburý, & at Wynchestre myd gret prute
At Seyn Swyþynes he was ybured, þere as he lyþ zut.

HARALD, [1] þe kynge's sone Knout, after hym was kyng.
ycrouned he was at Oxenford, a ssrewe þorn alle þyng.
Of þe kunde he was of Denemarch, of þe eror [2] wyf y bore.
þe lasse he louede Englysse men, & Engelond þer uor.

---

[1] *Desunt omnia metra, ad Haraldum hunc spectantia, in Cod. Ar. in quo tamen de eadem multa scripsit auctor prosaicus.*

[2] *Hinc ait scriptor prosaicus in Ar.* In the yere of oure lorde

þę vorste ȝer þat he was kyng, Emme, þe gode quene,
He drof out of Engelond, (& hys ssrewede made ysene)
His stepmoder, hys fader wyf, þat quene adde ybe tuye
Of Engelond, & þat hys fader let vette in Normandye.
þo þys quene was of londe ydryue, þoru hyre wyþerwyne,
Heo wende to þe erl of Flaundres, þat het Baldewyne.
þys erl hyre vayre vndervong, þat was hende & fre,
And tok hyre þe castel of Bruges, inne vorto be.
þere was þys gode quene, wyþoute eny striuynge,
Vorto hyre stepsone was dede, Harald þe luþer kynge.
Vor he nas kyng bote four ȝer, & syx monþes vnneþe,
Ar he lay at Oxenforde, & drou toward þe deþe,
And deyde þer in pyne ynou, & suþþe hys bodi me bet
To þe abbey of Westminster, & bured yt vayre þere.
In þe ȝer of grace a þousend, & on & fourtyþe ȝere,
þys kyng deyde in Auerýl, mony glad man was þere.

HARDEKNOUT hys broþer þo þen wey sone nome
Fram Denemarch in to Engelond, & to Sandwych com.
þoru þe baronye of Engelond & of Denemarch al so
Ichose he was to be kyng, vor hii ensemede þerto.
Vor he hadde somdel to Engelond more kunde þan þe oþer,
Vor he was, in hys moder alf, Seynt Edwarde's broþer.
[1] Sone so he was kyng y mad, after hys moder he sende
þe quene Emme to Flaundres, & bygan hyre stat amende,

---

lorde M.XXXVI. Knutus sone Harolde of Erle Elfelmus | doughter toke the regne.
[1] As soon as he was *Ar.*

An

An huld hyr vayre, as ryȝt was, hys moder & quene al so,
Ac þys Hardeknout nas kyng noȝt ſollyche ȝeres tuo.
Vor þer fayled[1] of" ten dawes, þat he ne deyde[2] of" ywys.
At[3] Lamhupe he was ded, & ybured he was & ys
At Seyn Swythyne's at Wynchestre[4] by hys fader þat lyth þere.
Kynges of Denemarch in þys manere were
Kynges here of þys lond, ech after oþer.
þe sone vorst after þe fader, þe broþer after þe broþer.
And Engelond was out of kunde syxe & tuenty ȝer,
In worre & pyne & sorwe ynou, as Seyn Dunston[5] by het her.
Ac þo þys þre kynges were ded of Denemarch, þere nere
[6] Byleuede namon in Engelond, þat of þe kunde were.
þo moste yt nede come aȝen to þe ryȝt eyr of kunde,
þe holy man Seyn Edward, þat euere worþ in munde.
Vor [7] Aldred, hys eldore broþer, was arst aslawe here
Wyþ treson in Engelond, ychylle telle in wuch manere.
Atyme, to speke myd hys moder, to Engelond he com,
[8] An gret folc of Normandye myd hym hyder he nome.
[9] An" þe false erl of Engelond, Godwyne was ys name,
(þat [10] euere" adde wyþ treson þys lond y do ssame,)
[11] And dorter he adde god, he þoȝte he wolde fonde
Make hyre ȝut, ȝyf he myȝte, quene of Engelond.
þat [12] Aldred nolde spousy noȝt hys dorter he was in fere,
Vor prute & hys heynysse, ȝyf þat he kyng were.

---

[1] *Deest Ar.* [2] *Deest Ar.* [3] *L.* Lamhuþe. *Nam* Lamhethe *in Ar.* [4] Be for his fadre three [*l.* there] *Ar.* [5] Seide er *Ar.* [6] Bylafte no mo *Ar.* [7] Aluered *Ar.* [8] And muche peple *Ar.* [9] *Deest Ar.* [10] Ofte tyme *Ar.* [11] A doughter *Ar.* [12] Aluered *Ar.*

To þe ȝongore broþer Seÿnt Edward hÿs hope was more ÿnome,
Vor he was sÿmple & myldore, & [1] eþ to ouercome.
þeruore þo he seÿ Alfred so gret heynesse drawe,
He þoȝte hou he myȝte do, þat he were of lÿf dawe.
To þe heÿe men of Engelond vaste he wende aboute,
And seÿde, Engelond mÿȝte be of Alfred in gret doute.
[2] Vor he þoȝte, ȝÿf he were kÿng, þat folc of Normandÿe
Al maÿstres make in Engelond, þoru" strengþe & tricherÿe;
An deserÿth hem also þoru Normannes he þoȝte,
þeruore mÿd hÿm of Normandÿe so muche folc he broȝte:
So þat [3] hey men of þe lond he broȝte al to hÿs wÿlle,
[4] þat hii nome Aldred, & al hÿs folc, mÿd trÿcherye stille,
An ladde hem vaste ÿbounde to Guldeforde al so.
Aweÿ! selÿ gultelese men, lute adde hii mÿs do.
þo hii come to Guldeforde, þÿs erl Godwÿne þe ssrewe
Lete þÿs gultelese man sette al arewe,
An telle out euere þe teþe man, & þe nÿne þoru out he nome,
And let smÿte of her alre heuedÿs, & made a reufol dom.
þo þe teþe was alÿue, he þoȝte of more wou.
Hÿm þoȝte þer were to monye alyue of ÿnou.
Alle þat were alyue bÿleued, a rewe ef sone he drou,
An tolde of hem þe teþe out, & þe nyþe slou.
So þat [5] þer byleuede alÿue vewe þo,
And þulke out of Engelond he drof mÿd muche wo.

[1] Lithlyche to *Ar.* [2] He saide, yf he were kyng, folke of Normandÿe All mastres in this londe shulde be an hÿe, And disherite Englyssh men thourgh *Ar.* [3] Certeÿne men *Ar.* [4] So that theÿ toke Aluered in a tyme all stÿlle *Ar.* [5] He ne laft but fewe a lÿue thoo, *Ar.*

Alfred

Alfred hii ladde to Ely, & [1] pulte out boþe hys eye,
An hulde hym þere in prison, [2] vorte sely mon gan deye.
Vas þys of þys Godwyne a ssrewe & luþer dom,
Zut owre Lorde, ar he deyde, gret wreche þere of nom.
Vor, as ze ssolle her after hure, he deyde in pyne ynou,
An ssrewede þat he dude lute he bylou.

SEYNT Edward in Normandye was þo byleuede alone
As bar, as wo seþ, of þe kunde, as he sprong of þe stone.
He dradde vor he was alone of þe tem byleuede þere,
An vor þe traytors of Engelond so false & luþer were,
Leste he were of hys fon þoru treson ybozt,
An, vor loue of hys erytage, so to deþe ybrozt.
To God he made hys pleynte, ofte wepynd wel blyue,
An namelyche þe wule hys fon of Denemarch were alyue.
" Help me," he seyde, " in þys wo, Lord, bydde ych þe.
" [3] Vor my frend & my nexte ney stondeþ azen me.
" My fader, þat leuede here in worre & in stryf,
" In worre & sorwe & sor ynou he endede hys lyf.
" My breþeren beþ boþe aslawe þoru treson al so,
" [4] My neueus beþ yfloynd, & out of Engelond ydo,"

[1] Putte *Ar.* [2] Fort that he ganne deye. Me seith, that his nauell gutte oute I take was, A knyt to a post, and afterward a pas He was i made by the poste ever goo a boute, Fort he hadde i drawe hym selfe his guttes al oute. Nas this of this Godewyne a full luther dome? *Ar.* [3] For thulke that shulde my frendes be stondeth a yest me *Ar.* [4] And my Cosyns i flemed of londe both twoo, *Ar.*

An

" An my moder [1] ywedded to my meste fo,
" An ych alone byleued, woder ssal ych, Louerd, go?
" Hii þat of my erytage al louerdes beþ
" Wylneþ alle þyng most my deþ, as men yseþ.
" [2] And al pouere, Louerd, ycham to þe byleued ywys,
" An þou wolt, Louerd, help be to hym þat faderles ys.
" Al to soþe yt ys ycome, þat Seynt Dunston gan telle.
" þe wreche of my [3] vncle deþ, þat hys stepmoder let quelle,
" My fader abogte yt dere ynou, & my breþeren bo.
" So þat þer nys non byleued, bote ych, Louerd, & nanmo.
" Nys yt vyne & sykty ger, Louerd, non mon ago,
" þat to Engelond, vor fulke deþ, vorst com such wo.
" Hou longe ssal yt ylaste? Louerd, wyþ drau þyn honde.
" Of þy wreche sende som ende, & reu on Engelond.
þo þys kynges of Denemarch alle þre were dede,
An Alfred al so aslawe, þe barons nome to rede,
An oþer heye men al so, as God zef þat eas,
An chose Seynt Edward to her kyng, þat kunde eyr þo was,
As he was þerto ychose, er þan he were y bore.
þo was yt to soþe y come, þat yseyd was byuore,
þat Seynt Peter at Glastynbury to byssop Brygtwold seyde.
þo com vorst pes to Engelond, after [4] þe wrecchede.
Me sende after hym to Normandye, to Engelond [5] þat he com,
[6] An lute folc of Normandye myd hym hyder nome,

[1] I wedded was to *Ar.* [2] Alon pouer bilafte icham to the, Lorde, I wys. Lorde, as the luste, helpe the childe that faderles is *Ar.* [3] Uncle's deth, that my [*l.* hys] stepmoder *Ar.* [4] *Deest Ar.* [5] *Deest Ar.* [6] A fewe folke of Normandye heder with him he nome. So that with litell vncouthe *Ar.*

So

So þat myd lute onekeþ folc to Engelond he drou.
þe heymen come agen hym myd joye & prute ynou,
An vnderuonge hym as her louerd vayre þoru all þynge,
An anester day at Wynchestre crouned hym to kynge.
I sacred he was þo to kyng of erchebyssopes tuo,
Of Canterbury & Euerwyk, & other byssopes al so.
It was in a þousend ger, & fourty & tuo,
After þat God anerþe com, þat he was crouned so.
þo was joye in Engelond al oute in eche syde.
Hys godenesse & hys gode los aboute sprong wel wyde,
þat þer nas non god prince, ne kyng in none londe,
þat ne wylnede enqueyntance of hym, ych vnderstonde.
þe emperour of Rome to hym in gode loue ywys
Obleged by hys messagers al þyng þat was hys.
Vor Edmonde's sone yreneside, þat hys on broþer was,
Hadde ywedded hys cosyne, he was glad of þat cas.
An Seyn Edward ney kun was þe kyng of France al so,
þat eche þyng clene þat hys was he obleged hym to.
So þat þer nas prince nour, þat at hys wylle nas,
Bote he one of Denemarch, þat euere hys so was.
Seynt Edward, vor al hys god, debonere was y nou,
An namelyche to pouere men, to non prute he ne drou.
Reuful he was to neody men, of hys almesse large & fre.
Of more deuocyon non man in chyrche ne myzt be.
He was selde yseye worþ, ne in glotonye, ne in prute.
þey hys tresour were ylore, þer of he tolde lute.
So holy lyf he ladde & god, so chast and so clene,
[1] þat hey men of þe lond wolde hem alday mene,

[1] That the hegh men of the londe wolde hit al day be mene,

þat hii nadde non eyr bytuene hem, & þat gret peryl yt was,
Vor þer myȝte come to al þe lond muche wo vor such cas.
Vor ȝyf he adde an kund eyr byȝyte by hys wyf,
The sykeror were þat lond, wuþ oute worre & stryf.
[1] þe erl Godwyne, þe false man, þat þe kynge's broþer slou
Aldred, as ych tolde er, an doȝter god ynou
Of holy lyf & clene adde, Edyþe was hyre name,
þat, as yt ys of hyre ywryte, & of hyre holy fame,
þat as þe rose spryng of þe brer, þat ssarp & kene ys,
Al so com þe clene mayde of þe luþer man y wys.
þys luþer man was vaste aboute to hey men ylome,
To brynge yt þerto, ȝef he myȝte, þat þe kyng hys doȝter nome.
Me seyde þe kyng, þat he moste nede weddy wyf,
An þat þet mayde was hym best, vor hyr clene lyf.
þe kyng hym byþoȝte pryuelyche & stylle,
þat in such cas god yt was, to do þe wylle.
An vor heo was so clene mayde, & of so holy lyue,
þe betere hym were in holynesse to nyme hyr to wyue,[a]
þan an heye kynge's doȝter, of [2] verre londe y broȝt,
þat to hys holy lyue nolde acordy noȝt.

---

mene, And that he ne hadde non heire gret perille hit was, *Ar.*

[a] Godewyne erle a doughter he hadde, that was of grete fame, And of clene lyf also, Edithe was hure name. And as the Roos of a brere spryngeth that kene is, Also spronge this holy mayde of luther kynd i wys. And suth that the kyng nede muste wedde a wyf, Me saide the mayde was to him good for hure clene lyf, That hit was better to him to haue hure to wyf *Ar.* [2] Ferne *Ar.*

[1] An weddede þys mayde," þat so holy & clene was,
More vorto paye [2] þat lond, þan vor eny oþer cas.
Longe hii were to gadere, þys gode kyng & quene,
Ac of ogt bote of holynesse lute yt was ysene.
Vor God, as hii seyde ofte, hii toke to wytnesse,
þat bytuene hem neuere nas bote clannesse.
Boþe hii were at one [3] worde, to lybbe in clene lyue.
[4] So þat hii were wyþoute eyr, me þyncþ, vor al hys wyue.
þe kyng of Denemarch & hys men þretned hym wel vaste.
So þat hii [5] greyþed hym hyderward atte laste.
A Wytesonedaỳ, as Seynt Edward at hys masse stod,
[6] An bed vor þe pes of þe lond, þat God yt sende god,
Rygt atte sacryng he stod as he lowe,
In þe chyrche of Westmynster, as men [7] byhelde ynowe,
Hii þat hym were mest priue, asked wu yt were
þe kyng þo he hem come, & wy he made such chere?
" Certes, syres," quaþ þe kyng, " yhered be Gode's sonde,
" þe luþer men of Denemarch, myd her kyng of þe londe,
" To her olde luþerhede yturnd adde her þogt,
" To [8] worry owr suete pays, þat owr Louerd vs aþ ybrogt.
" An to day, in þys god tyme, her poer clene hii nome,
" [9] An þe wynd hem payde wel, & to þe see hii come,
" Vorto destrue Engelond, as hii abbeþ ofte ydo.
" An þulke tyme, þat ge yseye þat ych somdel lou so,

[1] So that he this maide wedded, *Ar.* [2] The *Ar.* [3] Accorde, *Ar.* [4] So that heirles was the kyng, for all the quene his wyf *Ar.* [5] Dight *Ar.* [6] And bade to him and to his londe God shulde sende pees gode, Atte sacryng he stod, right as thogh he lowgh, *Ar.* [7] Hit seigh i nowgh *Ar.* [8] Destourbe *Ar.* [9] For the *Ar.*

" þe

" þe kyng by an laddre [1] to þe ssyp clam an hey,
" An þreu vp to doun in þe see, & adrenctþe, as ych yseý,
" An hys men, as in wanhope, wende hem azen blyue,
" [2] So þat ych hopye to God paýs, þe wule ycham alýue.
Messagers to Denemarch sone ysend were,
And, as þe kyng adde ysed, [3] to soþe hii founde þere.
Neuer eft hii of Denemarch hyder nolde come.
Vor god prince al alond varþ þe bet ylome.
Vor þe lond was fyue & syxty zer in worre & in sore,
As [4] he habbeþ yhurd byuore, & afterward zut more,
As ze ssolle hure her afterward. ac þe wule he was kyng,
þat lond was in god loue & pes, wyþoute eche stryuynge.

SEYNT Edward brozte to Engelond out of Normandye
Men, [5] þat adde hym fleme ydo god & corteysye.
And Roberd a clerc he louede mest, vor he zef hym þe bys-
soprýche
Of London, & suþþe of Canterbury þe erchebyssoprýche.
þo he was erchebyssop, luþer he was and prout.
þe kyng hym [6] louede, & alle hys dedes þoru hym dude al out.
þer was vp þe quene Emme, þe kynge's moder, y do
A luþer sclaundre, & vp þe byssop of Wynchestre al so,
þat [7] hii in contenance to folyche hem bere.
þe erchebyssop tolde þe kyng more [8] þan þer were,

---

[1] To shipward clam an hiegh, And fell doune in the see, and a dreynte neigh, *Ar.* [2] So that as for the Danes may ich be withoute stryue. Messagers *Ar.* [3] The sothe they *Ar.* [4] ye *Ar.* [5] That, while he flemed was, hadde do him courteseye *Ar.* [6] Loued euer most, and dude by him al oute *Ar.* [7] Hii to gedere in contenaunce *Ar.* [8] Than sothe were, *Ar.*

þat þer was foul lecherye bytuene hem y do,
[1] And þat þoru þe quene hyr sone was Alfred to deþe ydo,
And þat he ne myȝte noȝt byleue, bote he amendement toke
Of so vyl dede, wanne he adde her soules to loke.
þe kyng leuede hym wel ynou, & suer he nolde abyde,
þat he nolde verst nyme vengeance in hys syde.
þe byssop he bynome verst al hys lay fe,
[2] And suþþe hym in prison, & bynome hym hys se.
Hys moder he dude in warde, & scars lyf lede her fonde
In þe abbeye of Worwell, & bynome hyre hyr londe.
þys quene made deol y nou, & hyr lettres wyde sende,
[3] To byssopes, þat heo truste to, yre stat vorto amende,
[4] And þat heo wolde þoru fury yre, ȝyf me wolde þat heo bere,
Oþer trede, ssewy, þet heo gulteles were.
þe kyng was meok & mylde ynou, an, as þe byssopes bade,
Wolde hys moder do alout, bote as þe oþer yt made.
And naþeles hii were aton," as hii wolde desyre,
þat hys moder [5] hyre skere ssolde myd fury yre.

[1] And that Aluered her sone thorgh her was dede also, Be cause that Knut and Hardeknut sheo loued thorgh al thing More that Ethelred, and other of his Ospring. As the commune fame was thorgh oute all the lond, That sheo loued Knut in hert, me wrong dude vnderstande. The Erchebisshop seide, he ne myght let hit be so nought, And that to amendement hit moste nedes be brought. The kyng hym leued of this thing, and seide he nolde a bide, *Ar.* [2] And brought him in prison, and him by name his see *Ar.* [3] To heghe men, that heo truste to, *Ar.* [4] And seide, that sheo wolde thorgh fuyr ire, if that me hure bede, Preue, that heo was gultless of that ilke dede. The kyng was meoke and mylde i nowe after summe's rede, Wolde haue lette his moder goo, but summe hit with sede. Atte laste hii were atte on *Ar.* [5] Skere her self shulde *Ar.*

þe erchebyssop Roberd hurde of þys dome,
An, þey he nere [1] nozt ybe, to þys conseyl he com.
þe byssopes [2] he ladde a conseyl, "Louerdynges," he seyde,
" [3] Ich wene vor hys moder my louerd þe kyng zebede,
" þat nys as no woman, ac as þe deuel ych doute,
" þat, vorto ssende hyre owe sone þe kyng, heo ys aboute,
" þat seyþ he ys [4] amansed, vor hyre copynere
" þe byssop [5] he deþ in warde, of wan heo wole hyr skere.
" zyf heo skery hyre of hym, hou wole heo vorþore mo
" [6] Skere of þat heo aþ ydo, hyre sone's zret wo,
" Of þat [7] heo Alfred hyre sone radde to deþe bringe,
" And þat heo porueyde poyson to hyre sone þe kynge?
" Ac zyf heo hyre [8] skere wole of eche of þys þynge,
" And heo hyre skerynge do after my lokynge,
" And heo of scapye harmylks þe gultes echon,
" [9] Icholle, vor me & vor þe kyng, þat gult nabbeþ non,
" And grante, þat my dygnyte me be al bynome,
" And þat heo & þe byssop ek to hyre [10] sta azen come.
" Let nyme four yrene ssares vor hyr sulue al afure,
" An fyue vor þe byssop, & zyf heo yt may [11] dure,

---

[1] Nat i bede, to *Ar.* [2] He spake to thus, Lordynges, *Ar.* [3] The kyng for the quene his moder heder vs hath i bede. She fareth nat as a woman, but as a deuell, ich doute, And for to shende *Ar.* [4] A cursed *Ar.* [5] That he dude in warde, of wham she thenketh hure skere. yf sheo clenseth hure self of him, *Ar.* [6] Skere hure of *Ar.* [7] She Aluered hure sone let to deþ *Ar.* [8] Purge *Ar.* [9] Ich graunte, for me and for the kyng, that gultles mote she goon, And graunte, that all my dignyte me be all by nome, *Ar.* [10] Stat *Ar.* [11] Endure *Ar.*

" Wanne hii lyggeþ in þe flor to steppe vp echon
" After oþer bareuot, and heo bỳleue non,
" þat heo ne steppe wỳþ folle fot wyþoute quakỳnge,
" And [1] ȝyf vet bet þanne sauf, woute enỳ wemmỳnge,
" Graunteþ hem al quỳt. ac ȝyf heo quakeþ [2] out,
" Oþer stepþ bỳsyde, oþer hyre vet in enỳ wemme be ỳbrogt,
" Holdeþ hem gultỳ of þe dede, & lateþ hem also
" Al her lỳf, as wỳckemen, in strong prison be ỳdo.
þys fourme was ygranted þo, & certeyn daỳ al so
At Scỳn Swythỳne's at Wỳnchestre, wanne yt ssolde be ỳdo.
þo me tolde þe [3] quene vore, heo was glad ỳnou.
So þat þoru al Engelond [4] þys word sone drou,
þat, þo þe daỳ was ỳcome, so muche folc þer com,
þat me nuste ware hem ỉmnỳ, vorto se þỳs dom.
þe heỳe men neỳ of Engelond were þere echone,
[5] To se Gode's grace of þe quene, bote erchebỳssop one.
Ac he feỳnede hỳm somdel sỳk, &, neỳ þe see to be,
He bỳleuede at Douere, ȝỳf need were, to fle.
þe quene, þoru þe kynge's heste, [6] ỳbrogt was also
Fram Worwelle to Wynchestre, [7] þỳs jugement to do.
To Seyn Swythỳne's ssrỳne þen weỳ heo nom [8] wel rỳȝt,
Gladlỳche þo heo þuder com, & bỳleued al nỳȝt.
In wop & in orỳsons, þat reuþe yt was to se,
And euere bed þe holyman hyre help vorto be.

---

[1] ỳf her feet be thanne saf with oute *Ar.* [2] Ought, *Ar.* [3] Quene her of, heo *Ar.* [4] The tythyng here of drow. And thoo the day *Ar.* [5] To see this purgyng of the quene, saf the Erchebisshop a lone *Ar.* [6] I brought forth was tho *Ar.* [7] Hure purgacion to doo *Ar.* [8] Full *Ar.*

As

As heo vel in a lute slep, Seyn Swýthyn to hýre com.
" Dozter," he seýde, " be studeuast to vnderuonge þý dom.
" Icham Swýthyn, wam þou [1] býst, & verzýf þý sone þys dede,
" An to passý þe furý ýre, [2] nane þou non drede.
þe quene heo was glad, þo heo awok, of þat þýs godemon seýde,
[3] þet folc com þýcke a morwe, to se þys wonder dede,
An þe heymen come echon, þen dom to hure sone.
An þe kyng, þen dom vorto zýue, an heý sat on hýs trone.
Býuore hým, vorto auonge hýr dom, þe quene me brozte al so.
þe kýng hýr esste sturnelýche, wer heo wolde þe dom do?
[4] þe quene wepude wel sore, þe kýng ansuerede þýs:
" Sýre kýng, þou art mý louerd & mý sone ýwýs.
" Ich emme þat þe bere, & vor þe gronede ýlome,
" þe wule þou in mý wombe were, & ar þou fram me come.
" A sclaundre ýs vp me ybrozt of mý chýldren tueye,
" Of þe and Alfred þý broþer, þat mý sones were beýe,
" þat ých ssolde atte rede be, þý broþer to deþe brýnge,
" And þe vorto apoýsoný. & zut of þrýdde þýnge,
" þat ých sunne of lecherýe mýd Aýlwýne al so,
" þat ýs býssop of Wýnchestre, ssolde abbe ýdo.
" Ich [5] clupýe God to wýtnesse, þat [6] me to daý ýhure,
" þat, gýf ých [7] of enýʺ gultý am, [8] þatʺ ých mote þoru þýs fure
" Brenne býneþe & perýsý, þat me mowe ýse þe wreche.
" An zýf ých gulteles am þer of, þat God þet soþe teche.

---

[1] Biddest, *Ar.* [2] Haue thow no drede *Ar.* [3] The peple *Ar.* [4] The quene thenne wepýng sore, to the kýng seide thus: *Ar.* [5] Take *Ar.* [6] He this daý hit hure, *Ar.* [7] *Desunt Ar.* [8] *Deest Ar.*

þe quene was þo vorþ ylad [1] myd mony a wepynde eye
Of byssopes and of heymen, & of opere þat yt yseye.
Hyre ryche clopes were of ydo, bote þat [2] heo was by weued
[3] Hyre body wyþ a mantel, a wympel aboute her heued.
þe legges bare bynepe þe kne, þat me myzte eche stape yse.
Awey! vnele bycome yt quene so bar vorto be.
Me brozte vorþ [4] þys fury ssares, & leyde [5] ys al arewe,
[6] In þe bare erþe ysuope, Gode's grace to ssewe.
þe byssopes [7] blessede þe ssares, & þe quene al so,
An ladde hyre vorþ in eyþer half, [8] þys jugement to do.
þe quene þozte al on God, & to heuene caste hyre eye,
And ne lokede no þyng donward, &, as hii alle yseye,
[9] Heo stap vp þys fury yre, euerych stap al clene.
Nuste heo hyr sulf wanne yt was, ne blenyte nozt ene.
þer was joye & blysse y nou, & [10] mony a wepynde eye,
Vorst vor fere, & suþþe vor joye, þo hii þys yseye.
þe byssopes, þat hyre ladde, vor joye [11] wepe al so,
And [12] hereie God & Seyn Swythyn, þo þys [13] myracle was
ido,

---

[1] With many a wepyng tere Of lordes and barons, and other that were there *Ar.* [2] She *Ar.* [3] With a light mantell, and a veile a boute hur hefed. Hure legges bare by nethe kne, me myght see her shappe. Selcouth thing hit was to see a quene so barfote stappe *Ar.* [4] Thes *Ar.* [5] Hem *Ar.* [6] Upon the playne erthe ther, Godde's *Ar.* [7] Blessed tho the quene, an prayde for hure also, *Ar.* [8] Her *pro* þys *in Ar.* [9] Heo stapped vppon the fuyry shares, harmeles al clene. Herself he nust whanne hit was, ne blenched heo na ene *Ar.* [10] Many a weping eye, *Ar.* [11] Wepte *Ar.* [12] Heried *Ar.* [13] *Deest Ar.*

An

An ladde hỳre outward of þe chỳrche, þe quene bỳgan to crie:
" Vor þe loue of Jhesu Crist, ne doþ nozt [1] þe vỳlenỳe,
" To do mỳ penance wỳþoute, ac in alle manere,
" [2] As ỳt me ỳloked war, in holỳ chỳrche here.
" Madame," [3] quaþ þe byssopes, " þou [4] ast ydo ỳwỳs.
" So helpe me God," quaþ þe quene, [5] " ỳnuste nozt er þỳs.
" No fur ỳne velde, nene seỳ in þysse place.
" Bote nou ỳch ỳt verst ỳse, [6] ỳrede be Gode's grace.
" Ledeþ me þanne to mỳ sone, ỳat he mowe ỳse
" Mỳ vet aboue, & eke bỳneþe, were hii ỳwemmed be.
þo hii brozte hỳre to þe kỳng, þe kỳng lỳggỳnge hii wonde,
Wepỳnde & open heued, to sprad al to þe grounde.
Hỳt was longe ar he mỳzte speke, vor deol þat he made.
Atte laste he ros vp, as þe bissopes hỳm bade,
And vel to ỳs moder vet, adoun anon akne.
" Moder," he seỳde, " ych abbe mỳs ỳdo azen God & azen þe,
" [7] þat Inam nozt wurþe to be þỳ sone, ac per Seynt charỳte,
" Vor þe pỳte þat of þe Magdaleỳn God adde, vorzỳf ỳt me.
" Sone," quaþ hỳs moder þo, " as al [8] þỳs men ỳseþ,
" God aþ vaỳre ỳssewed, þat we gultelese bi þ.
" Atte bỳgunnynge þeruore azen þe bỳssop ych rede
" [9] Amendement do, þat ys gultelesse of þe dede.

---

[1] This *Ar.* [2] As hit ordeỳned to me was, in holy *Ar.* [3] Seide *Ar.* [4] Hast it do er this *Ar.* [5] I nust hit nat I wỳs. No fuỳre Ich felte, ne saỳ in this ilke place *Ar.* [6] Heried *Ar.* [7] I ne am not worthỳ be thi sone, For muche the gilte Ich haue. For thy of God and of the mercỳ now ich craue *Ar.* [8] Thes folk I seeth *Ar.* [9] Amendement let be do, that gilteles is of that dede. Sithen thow maiste a yenste me, for ich mote be mỳlde, As kendeliche the moder ought to the childe *Ar.*

" And

" And suþþe aȝen me þou mýȝt, vor ich mot nede be mýlde,
" As kunde of moder wole & blod aȝen mý chýlde.
þo þe býssop was ýcome [1] wepynde wel sore;
þe kýng vel doun to hýs vet, & crýde hým mýlce and ore.
þe byssop [2] wepýnde al so ver ȝaf ýt hým anon.
So þat þoru þe kýnge's bone, þe byssopes echon;
[3] Ech after oþer, asoýlede þen kýng of þýs trespas
Mýd ȝerden in hýs naked rug; & þat gret pyte was.
þre strokes þe moder ek; [4] wepýnde wel sore,
ȝef hym [5] to asoýlý; & ne mýȝte vor reuþe more.
þo custe þe kýng [6] hýs moder, & þe býssop suþþe also;
And herede ȝerne Seyn Swythýn, þat such myracle adde ýdo.
þe kýng þo [7] mýd gode herte delyuery het anon,
Boþe quene and býssop, her maners echon.
Nýne tounes þe quene anon of þat hyr owene was
ȝef þe house of Seyn Swýthýn, vor þys holy cas.
And þe býssop oþer nýne of hýs erýtage ýwýs.
Vor he nyne furý ssares ýȝeue was al þýs.
þe kýng [8] confermed her maners, & hym sulf ȝef al so
Tueye God gode maners Seýn Swýthýn þerto,

---

[1] Wepýng full *Ar.* [2] Wepýng also for gaf him a non *Ar.* [3] Assoilled him right there of his trespas With ýerdes on his naked rigge, þat grete pite was *Ar.* [4] Wepýng full *Ar.* [5] For absolution, for rewthe sheo ne mýght no more *Ar.* [6] And his moder, and the bisshoppes also, And hered God and Seynt Swethýne of this miracle i do *Ar.* [7] With goude hert let deliuere a non, Bothe the quene and bisshop, her londes every chon *Ar.* [8] Confermed al this, and him self yaf there to II. good Tounes for that he hadde mýsdoo, That wolde be xx. in all, hit was nat lite there. Hit wolde fynde the Couent wortes i nowe

þat wolde be tuentỳ vnder al, & þat nas nozt lute þere.
Vor ỳt wolde fỳnde hem lek worten ỳ nowe bỳ þe zere.
Vor gode þe nexte kỳng Edward, þat after hỳm come,
Ne zef hem nozt follỳche so muche wyþynne hỳs kynedom.
þo abbey of Seỳn Denỳs Seỳnt Edward zef also
þe priorỳe of Derheste, & londes þat þer beþ þerto.
þe erchebỳssop of Canterburỳ sorỳ ỳnou was þo,
þo he hurde of þe quene al hou ỳt was ỳgo.
Hỳm þozte wel longe, ar he were ouer see,
[1] And byleuede al hỳs byssoprỳche, & necome neuere eft aze.
þe quene & eke þe bỳssop, þe wule hii alỳue were,
Muche honourede Seyn Swỳthyn fram zere to zere.
Hỳs moder wende out of þỳs lỳf, Emme þe god quene,
In þe a þousend zer of grace & tuo & fỳfty ỳch wene.
Seynt Edward huld at [2] Wỳndelsore a uaỳr feste wỳþalle,
And as a zong man bỳuore [3] hỳm seruede in þe halle
He spurnde mỳd hỳs on vot, þat he vel almost abrod,
[4] Ac he hente mỳd hỳs oþer, so þat he abode.
þe erl Godwỳne, þe false man, seỳde þo, " [5] þat þe on broþer,
" As ze seþ, in nede helpþ þere þat oþer.
þo ansuerede þe [6] kỳng & seỳde, " so mỳzte me
" Mỳ broþer helpe, Godwỳne, zỳf he moste vor þe.

---

nowe euery yere. To the abbey of Seỳnt Denỳs Seỳnt Edwarde, ỳaf also The Priourỳ of Derhurst, *Ar.*

[1] He bilafte his bỳsshopriche, and neuer cam a ỳee *Ar.* [2] Wỳnchestre a fest grete with alle *Ar.* [3] Hem *Ar.* [4] But þe other fote him halpe, so that *Ar.* [5] Ther the on brother, Ase ye seith, in nede ofte helpeth the other *Ar.* [6] Kyng, so myght my brother me Ofte haue holpe, and he most for the *Ar.*

þo

þo was þys luþer Godwyne [1] of ssamed suyþe sore,
" Syre," he seyde, " ȝut me þyncþ, [2] þat yuortrou þou art more
" To me of þy broþer deþ, & leuest hem ych yse,
" þat in falsnesse þe tolde, þat ych ssolde þy traytor be.
" [3] As wys deme God þat soþe, þat of ech þyng wot ende,
" And also late þys mossel bred þoru my þrote wende,
" Wyþ out harm of me, as I nadde neuere in non cas
" Gult of þy broþer deþ, ne þy traytor neuere I nas.
Mossel he dude in to hys mouþ, ac the kyng yt blessed er.
Hyt byleuede amydde hys þrote, astrangled he was ryȝt þere,
And deyde atte borde al styf, wyþ ssendnesse inou.
Out al bynepe þe borde [4] Haral hys sone hym drou.
[5] A þousend ȝer in þe ȝer of grace & þre & fyfty þys was.
Lute harm, þey ech traytor ended in such cas.
Of al hys kun in Engelond Seynt Edward nadde nozt on.
Vor hys broþeren were aslawe, oþer [6] yfleynd echon.
þeruore þo þys holy man [7] as" in to elde wende,
To þe emperour of Rome after hys [8] neueu he sende
Edward, [9] Edmonde's sone þat was Yrene syde,
þat hys eyr were after hym, ȝyf he myȝte alyue abyde.

[1] Ashamed *Ar.* [2] Thow mystrowest me more, And puttest vpon me thi brother, and nelt I leue me, For all that ich a quyt was by men of Noblete: And also wys neuer this morsell thourgh my throte passe, As ich of thi brother deth never gulty nas. The morsell to his mothe he putte, but blessed was hit er Of a bisshop, So that ther with a strangeled he was ther. He deyde styff atte borde in shamefull deth i now *Ar.* [3] *F.* ac. [4] Harold *Ar.* [5] A Ml. as in the yere of grase and. liii. this was *Ar.* [6] I flemed *Ar.* [7] *Deest Ar.* [8] Cosyns [*l.* cosyn] *Ar.* [9] That was the sone of Edmunde Irenside, That he his heyre were *Ar.*

þys

þys emperour hym sende, myd gode loue & fre,
Edward & Agace hys wyf, & her chyldren þre
þe ȝonge [1] Edward Adelyng, & also Margarete,
And [2] Cristyne her soster, þat god were & suete.
þo hii come to Engelond, glad was þe kyng þo,
Vor he nadde in hys fader alf kunnesmen nanmo.
þys was in a þousend ȝer & seuene & fyftỳ þerto
As in ȝer of ȝrace, þat þys dede was ydo.
Ac Edward deyde sone, & ybured was wyþ gret prute
At Seyn Poule's at Londone, as hys bones beþ ȝute:
And hys sone [3] Edward bote ȝong & tendre nas,
þeruore þe kyng vor hys deþ þe sorrore was.
[4] Vor þat chyld was wel ȝong, eyr & kyng to be,
And he wuste wel, þat in þe lond [5] muche wo me ssolde y se.
And vor hys vncle in Normandye hym adde [6] yusteyned er,
þo he was [7] fleyne & frendeles, [8] mo þan þrutty" ȝer,
He wolde, þat hys sone sone after hym kyng were
Wyllam duc of Normandie, ryȝt lawe þey yt nere.
[9] Vor he was in hys moder alf next of hys blod,
And þer nas non in hys fader alf þat þer to was so god.
þer uore þys Wyllam bastard Engelond he byhet,
And byqueþ in hys deþ vnel, ar he þat lyf let.

---

[1] *Lege*, Edgar Athelyng, *cum Ar.* [2] Christiene *Ar.* [3] *Repone*, Edgar, *cum Ar.* [4] For his sone Edgar to yonge was kyng to be *Ar.* [5] Muche stryf shulde be *Ar.* [6] Susteyned *Ar.* [7] Fleme *Ar.* [8] Negh xxx. *Ar.* [9] For in his moder half quene Emme he was the nexte bloode, And as for the loude's prough him thought none so goode *Ar.*

And

And þat muche vor þe londe's prou, vor hỳs neuen so gong was.
Hou [1] Wyllam bastard was bỳgyte, Icholle telle þat cas.
Rychard duc of Normandye, Emme broþer þe quene,
Adde a sone, þat het Roberd, þat duc was suþþe, Ich wene.
Roberd, þys noble duc, as he wende ouer lond,
A wel vayr mayde, as hỳm þozte, matresche he vond.
þỳs mayde hỳm payde suyþe wel, mỳd god wille he hỳr nom,
And huld hỳre as hỳs lefmon, as wo seỳþ in hordom,
And byget on hỳre þỳs Wỳllam, &, vor he was so ỳbore
Out of spoushod, me cluped hỳm Wyllam bastard þeruore.

[1] *Metra hac de re desunt in Ar. in quo tamen sequentia, eo pertinentia, narravit scriptor prosaicus, quibus similia itidem videas tam in Polychronico, quam & in Lelandi nostri Collect. Vol. VI. p.* 296. After him [Richarde the *IIIde.*] Robert his sone [was duc of Normandỳe,] a man of grete worthinesse. After him William Bastard, of wham this geste folweth. Robert duc of Normandỳe in a tỳme as he dwelled in a toune of Normandie, i cleped Faleys, he caste his chere to a mayde in the toune, that me cleped Herlote. And, when sheo was broughte to the duke's bedde, and shulde go therto, she toke her smok a boue atte coler hem, and rent hit doune to the foot, and leide it a weỳ fram hure. And whenne sheo was esshet, whỳ she dude soo? she answered and seide, hit was nat curtasỳe ne reson that thinges, that touched her feet & hure lowe thynges, shuld touche her lorde's mouthe ne visage, & so thulke same nỳght the duc gat on her William Bastard. And after hure slepe sheo a woke, and made a grete gronỳng and syghỳng. So that the duc hurỳng that, esshet of hure, why sheo sighed so? And sheo answered, "Lord ich haue "worderliche [*f.* wonderliche] "i mette. Me thought," quod sheo, "that a grete tree growe "oute atte my wombe, and "by shadowed alle Norman- "dye." And after, whenne hit came to the tyme, when the childe was i bore, a non, þourgh

Ar þat chẏld were ẏbore, a wel wonder cas
þe moder mette bẏ hẏre chẏld, þat in hẏr wombe was,
þat hẏs gottes were to drawe aboute al Normandẏe,
And eke aboute al Engelond, þat was to sẏgnẏfẏe,
þat he ssolde be duc of Normandẏe, & kẏng of Engelond,
And bothe, as ẏt suþþe vel, holde in hẏs honde.
þe chẏld ek þo ẏt was ẏbore, & to grounde com,
Out of hẏs moder wombe verst, boþe hẏs honden he nom
Vol of þe poudre & of þe erþe sturnelẏche ẏnou,
And closedes to gader & hẏs fustes boþe adrou.
þo was yt jugged, þat he ssolde be, wẏþ oute faẏle,
Hardẏ kẏng & stalwarde, & muche do of bataẏle.
Al yt bycom to soþe suþþe. he bygan ȝong ẏnou,
To cuþe wat he wolde be, þat so ȝong hẏs fustes adrou.

þourgh necgligence of women attendẏng a boute his moder forẏetẏng hẏm, he was walwed into the strawe that was bẏ, and had caught his. ii. hondes so fulle ther of, that vnnethe, with oute grete harme, me mẏght delẏuere hit oute of his hondes. Wherfor, muche folke demed, he shulde wexe to summe grete auoire of worlde's ricchesse. And as this childe was after in norẏsshẏng in Valeẏs, a grete man [*sic hæc concipiuntur*] of the contre, I hote William Tallmage. So that a burgeẏs, where as this childe was in norẏsshẏng, praẏde this William to come to his house, and visite his lorde's sone. This William Tallenage & alle his kẏnne hadde euer i hated this childe's fader and his kynne, and ẏut not withstondẏng that he cam to the hous, wher this childe was inne. And as non as this childe, that vnnethe coude speke, saugh him, sodeẏneliche hit gan chide towardes this man, and so ferde towardes him, that me toke grete hede there of, supposyng hit myght nat be withoute grete ordinaunce of God.

þat

þat chýld wax so wel & ýþen, as seýde fremde & sýbbe,
þat he wolde be a noble mon, ȝýf he moste lybbe.
Hýs fader adde of hym eke gret joýe & prýs,
þat so gode sýgne adde so ȝong, to be stalwarde & wýs.
Ar he were of sene ȝer old. þoru out moný a lond
þe pope sende creýserý toward þe holýlond.
Roberd duc of Normandýe þe croýs nom atten ende,
And ȝarked hým wýþ oþere to þe holylonde to wende.
At Festamp, ar he wende vorþ, he made al Normandýe
Suerýe, holde hýs ȝong sone, as to scýgnorýe.
ȝong duc he was on of sene ȝer vnneþe.
Vor þe fader ne com neuere aȝen, ar he were broȝt to deþe.
And þýs ȝong chýld byleued duc, & gret þyng adde an honde.
þýs was ar Seynt Edward were kýng of Engelond.
And Seýnt Edward byleuede vorþ mýd hým, as he adde er ýdo
Myd hys fader in hys nede, & mýd výȝ grantsyre al so.
þeruore þo he was kýng, gret loue he gan bede
þýs Wyllam, vor hii susteýned hým so in hys nede.
So þat suþþe in hýs elde, þo hýs lýf was neý ydo,
As in þe ȝer of hys kýnedom tuentý & tuo,
Of þe croune of Engelond he nuste wat best do,
Vor Edgar, hys neuen sone, wel ȝong was þerto
To be kýng of Engelond, & hýs owe lyf ssoȝt was,
And he dradde of gret contek alonde vor þat cas.
Hym þoȝte to ȝýue Wyllam þýs lond, hyt was best to do.
Vor he was wurþe, & of hýs blod, & best ýt couþe wyte also.
þeruor he ȝaf ýt hým, as he byhet hým byuore,
And sende to hým mýd þe ȝýfte to Normandye þeruor

þe

þe erl Harald þe quene broþer, as me wende, & oþer mo.
Ac soþ ẏt ẏs, þat þe erl Harald passede þe see þo,
Wẏþ gret poer & folc ẏnou, so þat, as God ẏt wolde,
Wyþ wẏnd he was in strange londe ẏdrẏue, þer he nolde.
þere hii were, as strange men, [1] grẏmẏlẏche vndervonge,
And ẏnome to albe of here, & ybrozt in bendes stronge.
Sẏr Gwẏ of Pountyn was hẏs name, þat hẏm adde in bende,
And askede hem gret ramson, in prison verto wende.
Harald was of heẏe herte, & suor raþer he wolde
zẏue þe duc of Normandẏe of hẏs tresor & of hys golde,
þat so noble duc was & god, [2] þan a such alue man as he was.
To þe duc he sende sone, to helpe hẏm in þat cas.
þe duc sende to Sẏr Gwẏ, so [3] þat Sẏr Gwẏ anon
And adde Harald to þe duc, & hys felawes echon.
þe duc vaẏre hẏm vnderuong, & honoured hẏm ẏ nou,
So þat, as ryzt was, gret loue bytuene [4] hẏm drou.
Harald, vor to paẏe hẏm wel, sende hẏm sone hẏs sonde,
Hou þe kẏng hym [5] made after hẏm hys eẏr of hẏs londe.

[1] Greuẏliche vnderfonge In Sir Guẏ de Pounsoun's lond, and i prisoned wonder strong. And whenne theẏ hadde ther a while thus i dwelte in bende, Sir Guy asked hem Raunson grete, of prison for to wende *Ar.* [2] Than suche half man *Ar.* [3] That he a non Ladde Harolde thọ to him, and his felawes echon *Ar.* [4] Hem drowgh. Harold than, to queme the duc, seide sone his sonde, *Ar.* [5] Maked after his daẏ heire of Engelond. And Harold swor to the duc, and to him fast bonde, That to his bẏ houe al on he wolde kepe the londe, And that the duke's doughter, whenne that tẏme come, That ẏong was thoo, in foreward to wẏf Harolde nome. And thus Harolde was i swor to do thes thinges twoo With also gret othe and bonde, as men mẏght doo *Ar.*

And þat he wolde take hym to wyte hys lond he vnderstode
To hys byefþe, & þat he wolde wardeyn be hym god.
As strong vorewarde as hii myȝte hii made & as hard,
And vp holy relykes Harald suor to Wyllam bastard,
Treulyche to wyte Engelond to hym, vorte he come,
And þat he hys one doȝter to wyue also nome,
þat ȝond was at þulke tyme, so þat þys þynges tuo
Wyþ as gret oþ he suor hym, as man myȝte do.
þo þys vorewarde was ymad hard & strong y nou,
Harald toward Engelond wyþ gode loue drou.
þe kyng he tolde al þat cas, þat bytuene hem was ydo,
Hou he wolde to Wyllam trywe be, an hys doȝter spousy al so.
þo was þe kyng glad ynou, þat he wel to hym truste,
[1] And bytot hym þat lond, þat he wel to þys Wyllam yt wuste,
Seynt Edward wuste of hys deþ, ar he henne wende,
Vor Seynt Jon euuangelyst byuore longe word sende,
And sende hym tokne by a ryng, þat at Westmynstre ȝut ys,
þat Seynt Edward þer byuore Seyn Jon ȝef ywys.
þe kyng þo þet word hym com, & þen ryng yseȳ,
He þonkede God þat he wuste, þat hys deþ was so neȳ.
Hys gode he delde pouere men, & made hys bernes bare,
And hys tresorye al so god, & to God hym made al ȝare.
Glad he was of Westmynstre þat he [2] let hym sulf rere,
þat byuore hym was ybroȝt to grounde, þoru luþer kynges þat were.

---

[1] And by toke him all the londe, to the duc that he wyst *Ar.* [2] Lette vppe a rere *Ar.*

Ac

Ac [1] vorþ chyrche vnhalwed was, þeruor hym was wo.
He þozte [2] lete hys halwy to mydewynter anon þo.
þey Seyn Peter hymsulf [3] yhalwed adde er,
zut he moste efsone vor þe nywe worke þere.
He sende after hys [4] baronye, at mydewynter [5] myd hym to be.
þo þe feste ygadered was, deol me myzte yse.
Vor þo yt ssolde murgost be, þe kyng vnelede anon.
And naþeles glad he was hym sulf, [6] vor he wuste gon.
And vor joye of hys deþe, & vor þe heye feste also,
þe trauayl he nome to hym al, þat hem wolde vane to do.
He ber þe croune, & huld þe deys myd oþer atyl al so,
And myd gret semblant þe feste huld vorte þre dawes were ydo.
A Seyn Jone's day he sey þat al com to god endynge,
He made ac conferment to Westmynstre of eche þynge,
þat þoru hym hem yzyue was, oþer þoru eny oþer kynge,
So þat no kyng after hym ne dude no destour brynge.
þe chyrche [7] he let halwy as a Chyldery masse day.
Wel feble he was þere hym sulf, as al [7] þat folc y say.
In a þousend zer of grace, & sixe & sixty þerto,
Hyt was þat þys holyman þys dede let do.

[1] For the churche *Ar.* [2] To habbe halwed hur atte midwynter thoo *Ar.* [3] Her hadde halwed er *Ar.* [4] Barons, *Ar.* [5] Negh *pro* myd *in Ar.* [6] For he wiste hoder gon. yut bare he the crowne, & helde the deys with other a tyre also, And with gret chere iii. dayes helde his feste so. A Seynt Johen's day, of all to make good endyng, He confermed by his chartre in all maner thyng To Westmynstre the fredomes i vsed yut huder to, And ho that a yenst hem ought dude, let sentence ther on doo. The churche he lette halwe a Childermasse day *Ar.* [7] The *Ar.*

þo hẏt was al wel ẏdo, & ẏbrozt to god ende,
þe kẏng feble & sẏk ynou to hẏs bed gan wende.
þo was þer deol & sorwe ynou of men þat wuste þat cas,
Vor hii wuste, þat to Engelond muche wo to come was.
Worre & slazt, and oþer wo, & honger & gret wou.
þe quene vel bẏ hẏm adoun, & byclupte hẏm vaste ẏnoz
Vorto hete hẏs colde lymes, þat non hete ne come to,
þoru hete of hẏre owe bodẏ, & of hẏre cloþes al so.
þe kyng lay as he were ysuowe almest dawes tuo.
He gan, as he awoke of slepe, hẏs eyen þo vn do.
He sat [1] vpard vp hẏs bed, hẏs honden held vp anheẏ.
" Louerd," he seẏde, " þat ech þẏng madest queynte & sleẏ,
" And changest [2] poer & kẏnedoms alat þẏ nowe rede,
" And monne's sones wrecche senst of her fader mẏs dede,
" zẏf þẏng, þat ẏch nou ẏseẏ, [3] come of þẏ soþnesse,
" zet me poer yt to telle in al my feblesse,
" Vorto ssewe þẏ poer, þat hii þat yt ẏseþ
" Douty þe, & of þe sẏnne, þat hii in beþ,
" Repentẏ mowe, & þer of hem amendẏ so,
" [4] þat hii ssulde hem fram þe harm, þat þou þencst hem do.
Anon as þẏs holymon [5] adde hẏs oryson ẏ do þere,
Stalward man of speche he was, holy man as he were,
þo gan he to [6] tellen þus: " þulke tẏme þat ych was
" [7] As man fleẏne in Normandye, me com monẏ god cas.

[1] Upwardes on his bedde, *Ar.* [2] Power and kyngdom atte thẏne awne wille, And mannes sonns sendest wreche of his fader's ille *Ar.* [3] Come shall of thẏ Rightwesnesse, *Ar.* [4] And pray the shilde hem fro the harme, that thow hem thenkest doo *Ar.* [5] Hadde doo his prayere, Strong i now his speche was *Ar.* [6] Segge *Ar.* [7] Flemed man in Normandẏe, me cam *Ar.*

" Men

" Men of relẏgyon ẏch louede wel ẏ nou,
" An to me hem, þat best were, [1] at vore alle oþer ych drou.
" [2] An tuene holẏ men at vore alle oþer mest yc louede þere.
" Nou wot ẏch wel, þat [3] monẏ daẏ in heuene boþe hii were.
" Hii tolde me, þat" to Engelond after me ssolde come.
" Hii seẏde me of þe wrecchede, [4] þat alonde aþ ȝare ẏbe.
" þe wreche hẏeþ & sone comeþ. & þat ssal me ẏse.
" Vor prestes, mẏd vnclene honde & mẏd lechor's mode
" Al soẏled, sacrẏeþ Gode's flesh & hys blod.
" Ssepurdes hii [5] bet luþer, vor hii ne [6] w ẏteþ noȝt
" Her ssep fram þe [7] wolues. vor be hem ybroȝt
" þe melke & þe wolle clene. of oþer [8] þẏng hii nolle telle.
" þe ssepurdes and þe ssep [9] al so ssulle to pẏne of helle.
" As god heẏmen of þe lond robbeors felawes beþ.
" Pouere men, þat hii mowe ouer, hii huldeþ as ȝe ẏseþ.
" Nou wole vr Louerd ssake hys suerd, hys bowe ẏs ẏbend,
" And [10] prest aþ ẏmade, vorto smẏte men þat bet mẏswende.
" þo seyde ẏch mẏd drerẏ mode, ȝẏf hii wolleþ turne her þoȝt,
" An sorẏ be, & [11] bete her sẏnne, wolle vr Louerd vorȝẏue hem oȝt?

[1] By fore *Ar.* [2] Ac ii. holy men be fore *Ar.* [3] Manẏ a daẏ bothe in heuen theẏ were. And now ryght bothe hii come to me, and the angwysses some Hii tolde me, that *Ar. adeo ut in Cod. nostro Harleyano metrum integrum omittatur.* [4] That longe in londe hath be, Of whiche the wreche hiegh faste, as me shall i see. For Prestes with vnclene hondes, and with lecherous mode, All i foẏled, vseth to sacre Godde's flesh & blode *Ar.* [5] Beth *Ar.* [6] Kepeth *Ar.* [7] Wolues, to hem that buthe by taught *Ar.* [8] Thẏnges nele I tell *Ar.* [9] Also bothe shulleth to Hell. And also Robbers of the londe high mennes felewes beth. Power men, that hii mowe, hii buẏldeth as ẏe seeth *Ar.* [10] Redy *Ar.* [11] Let *Ar.*

" þat ẏs vor noȝt," þe oþer seẏde, " vor þe folke's herte ẏs
" So ẏharded, þat hii beþ blynde & deue ẏwẏs,
" þat hii nolleþ non god þẏng ẏhure ne ẏse.
" þo seẏde ẏch, [1] wer vr Louerd wole euere wroþ be,
" [2] Wer he nolle grace do, & be of mẏlce more?
" Wanne þat loud, after so gret joẏe, so vol worþ of sore,
" Wat ende ssal þerof be, & wanne enẏ blẏs,
" Oþer comfort, after such sor?" þo seẏde þe oþer þys:
" A grene wexẏng tre, þat ẏs fram hẏs more
" Ismyte adoun, & þe brede of þe þre londes þerfram ybore,
" Wanne ẏt ẏs eſt bẏ hẏm sulue, wẏþout ech monne's rede,
" Iturnd aȝen to hẏs rẏȝte more, þat er was as dede,
" And bẏgẏnþ to blowe, & suþþe to bere frut,
" þanne me maẏ, wo ẏt [3] ẏsucþ, to bote hopye ȝut.
þo þe quene, & hẏre broþer Harald, hurde þẏs,
And Roberd, þat wardeyn was of þe palays ẏwẏs,
Hii wepe, & made deol ẏ nou, vor hii seẏe þe soþnesse,
[4] In wuche lecherẏe & oþer sẏnne þe prestes songe her masse;
And hou þe heẏe men of þe lond þe pouere to grounde broȝte,
þe wreche, þat God wolde do, nas noȝt vor noȝt hii þoȝte.
þe sẏȝte bytokneþ þus, as ẏt was vnderstonde:
þẏs tre þe noble kynedom bẏtokneþ of Engelonde.
þe more bytokneþ þe rẏȝte kunde, þat ech of oþer come,
Fram kẏng Alfred [5] þe kunde more, þat furst was ẏheled at Rome,

---

[1] Whether oure *Ar.* [2] Whether he woll yet grace *Ar.* [3] Seeth, for bote *Ar.* [4] ow in lecherie *Ar.* [5] The monarke, tha anoẏnted was atte Rome, *Ar.*

To

To Seynt Edwarde's fader, & to hym sulue al so.
Ac þo he deyde wyþoute ryȝt eyr, þe wexynge was ydo,
And þat tre ysmyte fram þe more ouer þre londes brede.
Vor þe kynges were of Engelond of vn kunde sede.
Verst Harald þe quene broþer, & Wyllam bastard also,
And suþþe hys sone Wyllam, þe rede kyng, þerto.
Ac after þat Wyllam, þe rede kyng, yssote was by cas,
And þe gode Henry hys broþer after hym kyng was,
Seynt Edwarde's nece, þat of hys fader kunde come,
And of þe ryȝte kunde of Engelond, kyng Henry to wyue nome,
þat was Mold þe gode quene, þat in gode tyme was ybore;
þo smot verst þys tre aȝen to hys kunde more,
And Normandy þoru þe kyng, & þoru þe quene Engelond
Joyned were þo kundelyche in one monne's honde.
[1] In a þosend ȝer of grace & syxe & syxty ryȝt,
After vr suete Louerd in hys moder was alyȝt.
Kyng he was þre & tuenty ȝer, & syx monþes þerto,
And þre woke & syx dawes, ar hys lyf were ydo.
þo Seynt Edward adde þys ytold, he closede boþe hys eye,
And þe verþe day of Janyuere in þys manere gan deye.
Al þe franchyse of Engelond, & al joye & blysse,
Myd hym was vaste ybured, þo me bured hym ywys.
And þat me vond sone afterward myd mony deluol cas.
At Westmynstre a tuelfþe day þys gode man ybured was.

---

[1] Whenne Seynt Edwarde thus tolde, he ganne to close his eyghe, The iiii. day of Januare thenne ganne he deye, In the yere of oure Lorde. Ml. lxvi. right After that oure swete Lorde in his moder a light. Kyng he was. xxiii. yere and vi. moneths ther too, And iii. wokes and vi. dayes er his lyf was i doo. Al the fraunchise *Ar.*

HARALD þys false erl, þo Seynt Edwarde dede lay,
Hym sulue he let crouny kyng þulke sulue day
Falslyche. vor Seynt Edward so wel to hym truste,
[1] þat he bytot hym Engelond, þat he yt wel wuste
To [2] Wyllamme's byoſþe bastard, duc of Normandye.
Ac hym sulf he made kyng [3] myd such trecherye.
Ac þe gode tryw men of þe lond wolde [4] abbe ymade kyng
þe kunde eyr, þe gonge chyld, Edgar Aþelyng.
[5] Wo so were next kyng bykunde, me clupeþ hym Aþelyng.
þeruor me clupede hym so, vor bykunde he was next kyng.
Ac Harald made hys wey byuore, [6] as myd suykedom,
Myd gyftys & myd vayre byheste, & auong þe kynedom.
So þat somme hym chose alout, & somme hem hulde stylle,
[7] And soffrede as hii nogt ne mygte al oþere's wylle.
So þat Harald was kyng, to wom þe hele þe kynedom.
And Seynt Edwarde's sygte by hym to soþe come.
Vor þo bygan þe wow vorst, as me mygte yse,
þat ssolde, as Seynt Edward seyde, by þre kynges day be.
Vor [8] Coste, Harald broþer, þat he drof er in to Flaundre
By kynge's day Edward hym sulue to gret sclaundre,

[1] Thenne he by toke him *Ar.* [2] Williame's by houe *Ar.* [3] With fals trechourie *Ar.* [4] Haue maked *Ar.* [5] He that were nexte kyng by kynde, Ethelyng he was, And there fore me cleped hym so, for nexte heire he was *Ar.* [6] All with swikeldom, With yeftes and with faire by hestes, to vonge the kyngdom *Ar.* [7] And suffred thulke tyme as men that myght not haue her wille. So that Harolde to wrothur hele helde the kyngdome, And sone, as Seynt Edwarde seide, after ward hit come. And thoo by ganne the wrake ferste, as all men myght i see *Ar.* [8] *Pro* Toste. *At is Ar.* Tostyn, Harolde's.

He

He com anon þo vppen hym myd gret poer & eye,
Myd Harald [1] Darfagor kyng of Norþwey,
And myd gret poer of Norþomber to Euerwyk hii com,
And muche [2] folc in þe Souþ syde boþe slowe" & nome.
Kyng Harald com agen hym myd poer strong ynou.
[3] Bysyde Euerwyk hys ost agen hym he drou,
In a stude, þat me clupede [4] Stamford brugge þo,
And nou me clupeþ yt Batayle brugge, vor þe batayle þat was þo.
þer hii smyte to gadere, & made a sory pley.
Vor þere was Tost aslawe, & þe kyng of Norþwey,
And her syde [5] al byneþe; to ende yt com so
þat Seynt Edward byuore seyde of þelke breþeren tuo,
þat hii ssolde to gadere fyzte, & Harald aboue be.
[6] þer me myzte of þulke word þat soþnesse yse.
Fram anon amorwe vorte myd ouer none,
þo" batayle laste strong, ar [7] he were ydon,
þe Englysse ouer þe brugg droue þe oþer at laste.
Ac þo þat water was bytuene, hii stode azen vaste.
[8] On body þer was of Norþwey, betere nas þer non.
Vor he at stode vp þe brugg myd anax al on,
And drof the Englysse men azen, [9] hym ne myzte non atstonde.
And slou mo þan fourty of hem myd hys owe honde,

---

[1] *Lege*, Harfager. [2] Folke, that hem with stode, bothe slawe *Ar.* [3] A lite by side Euerwik the hostes geder drough, *Ar.* [4] Stayneforde *Ar.* [5] Was all by nethe; to ende cam hit thoo *Ar.* [6] Ther of me myght atte thulke tyme all the sothe i see. Fram ernemorwe fort hit was myddeouer noue, The *Ar.* [7] Hit *Ar.* [8] A man ther was *Ar.* [9] That non myght him withstande.

And

And wuste hem so vorte after none vorte on myd gyle nome
A ssyp, & ar he were ywar vnder þe brugg com,
And smot hym ar he were ywar vnder foundement lowe
Myd a sper, & so an hey, þat he deyde in a þrowe.
A stalwarde pece þat was, nou God cuþe hys soule loue.
Þo þozte þe Englysse vor hys deþ þat hii were al aboue,
And passede þe brugge anon, and slowe to grounde,
So þat þe oþer partye bynebe was in astounde.
Þo' Harald yseý hys broþer aslawe, [1] & þe kyng Arfager
Of Norþweý & her folc, he ne huld nour hys pere.
He ne zeld nozt wel her mede, þat wyþ hym hys fon slowe,
Þeruore hys men þe lasse her herte to hym drowe.
And þat hii kudde hym afterwarde, azen William bastard,
[2] As ze ssole sone yhure, vor he was euere assreward.

MUCHE aþ he sorwe ybe ofte in Engelond,
[3] As ze mowe here & er yhure & vnderstonde,
Of mony batayle þat aþ ybe, & þat men þat lond nome,
Verst, as ze abbeþ yhurd, þe emperours of Rome.

And slough him self fourty with a sparthe in hande. So atte laste vnder him pryuyliche on came lowe, And in the foundement him smote, that he deide in a throwe. Then were the Englysshmen a boue in lytell stounde, And passed the brugge, and slowe downe to grounde. Tho *Ar.*

[1] And Harolde Herfager, He toke gret pruyte ther of, and helde non his pere, And yelde not well *Ar.* [2] As ye mowe ther of hure he after [*f.* here after] warde *Ar.* [3] As ye mowe i hure by wryt, as Ich vnderstande, Of many batailles that hath i be of men this londe that nome, Of Giauntes ferste & Brutonus, and suth of men of Rome. Of Saxons suthe and Danes thenne, and Normannus atte laste. And yut there wolle be more wrake, Icham fulle sore a gaste *Ar.*

Suþþe

Suþþe Saxons & Englỳsse mỳd bataỳles stronge.
Atte laste heỳ of Normandỳe, þat maystrus bet ȝut here;
Wonne ỳt & hȏldeþ ȝut, ỳ chollc telle in wuche manere.
[1] þo Willam bastard hurde telle of Haralde's suỳkedhede;
Hou he hadde ỳmad hym kỳng, & mỳd wuch fals hede.
Vor þat lond hỳm was bỳtake, as hỳt welle wuste,
To wỳte ỳt to hỳm wel, & he wel to hỳm truste.
As þe hende he dude verste, & messagers hym sende,
" þat he vnderstode hỳm bet hỳs dede vorto amende,
" And þoȝte on þe grete oþ, þat he hym adde her ỳdo,
" To wyte hym wel Engelond, & to spouse hỳs doȝter also,
" And hulde hỳm þerof vorewarde, as he bỳ het ek þe kỳnge,
" And bote he dude bỳtỳme, he wolde sende hỳm oþer tỳþỳng,
" And seche hỳm out ar tuelf monþe, & hỳs rỳȝtỳs wỳnne,
" þat he ne ssolde abbe in to al Engelond, & erne to wyte hỳm.
Harald hỳm sende word, " þat folỳe ỳt was to truste
" To such oþ, þat was ỳdo mỳd strengþe, as he wel wuste.
" Vor ȝỳf a maỳde treuþe plỳȝte, to do a fole dede
" Al one priuỳlỳche, wỳþ out hyre frendes rede,
" þulke vorewarde ỳs vor noȝt. & wat loker ỳt aȝte her,
" þat ỳch suor anoþ, þat was þo al in þỳ poer,
" Wyþoute consel of al þe londe, of þỳng þat mỳn noȝt nas?
" þeruor ned oþ ỳsuore, nede ỳbroke was.
" And ȝỳf þou me wolt seche in Engelond, ne be þou no so sturne
" Syker þou ne ssalt me fỳnde in none hurne.

---

[1] *Hìc perplura prosaice habentur in Ar. haud paucis nimirum metris in eodem prætermissis.*

þo

þo Willam hurde, þat he wolde sustenẏ hys trecherẏe,
He let of sende hys knẏȝtes of al Normandẏe,
To conseyly hẏm in þys cas, & to helpe hẏm in suche nede,
And he gan of her porchas largelyche hem bede,
As hii founde suþþe in Engelond, þo ẏt ywonne was,
þe betere was toward hẏm her herte vor þẏs cas.
þe duc Wẏllam hys wẏlle among hem alle seẏde,
þat four þẏnges hym made mest bẏgẏnne þulke dede.
Vor Godewyne, Haralde's fader, to deþe let do
So vẏllẏche Alfred, hẏs cosyn, & hẏs felawes also.
And vor Harald adde hẏs oþ ẏbroke, þat he suor mẏd hẏs rẏȝt honde,
þat he wolde to hẏs byofþe wytẏe Engelond.
And vor Seynt Edward hẏm ȝef Engelond al so.
And vor he was next of hys blod, & best wurþe þerto,
And vor Harald nadde non ryȝt bote in falshede.
þes þẏnges hym made mest bygẏnne þẏs dede.
And vor he wolde, þat all men yseẏe hẏs trywede,
To þe pope Alysander he sende in such cas hẏm to rede.
Haralde's falshede þo þe pope ẏseẏ þere,
And perauentere me hẏm tolde more þat soþ were,
þe pope asoẏled & blessed Wẏllam & al hẏs,
þat into þẏs bataẏle mẏd hẏm ssolde ẏwẏs,
And halewede hẏs baner, þat men at vore hẏm bere.
þo was he & al hẏs gladdore þan hii er were.
So þat þẏs duc adde aȝen heruest al ȝare
Hẏs barons & hẏs knẏȝtes, mẏd hẏm vorto fare.
To þe hauene of Seẏn Walrẏ þe duc wende þo
Mẏd þe men þat he hadde, & abẏde mo.

After

After heruest þo her ssẏppes & al hii preste were,
And wẏnd hem com after wẏlle, her seẏles hii gon rere,
And hyderwarde in þe se wel glad þen weẏ nome.
So þat bẏsẏde Hastẏnges to Engelond hii come,
Hem þoȝte, þo hii come alond, þat al was in her honde.
At see sone as þe duc Wẏllam hẏs fot sette alonde,
On of hẏs knẏȝtes ȝradde, " holde vaste Wyllam nou
" Engelond, vor þer nẏs non kẏng bote þou.
" Vor syker þou be, Engelond ẏs nou þẏn ẏwẏs.
þe duc Wẏllam anon verbed al hẏs,
þat none nere so wod, to robbẏ, ne no manere harm do þere
Vpe þe lond, þat hẏs was, bote hem þat aȝen hẏm were.'
And an fourtẏ nẏȝt hẏ bẏleuede þere aboute,
And conseẏlede of bataẏle, & ordeẏnd her route.
Kẏng Harald sat glad ẏnou at Euerwyke atte mete,
So þat þer come a messager, ar he adde ẏ ȝete,
And seẏde, þat duc Wẏllam to Hastynges was ẏcome,
And hẏs baner adde ẏrerd, & þe contreẏe al ẏnome.
Harald, a man wẏþ gret herte corageus ẏ nou,
As he of non man ne tolde, þuderwarde vaste drou.
He ne let noȝt clupẏe al hẏs folc, so wyllefol he was,
And al vor in þe oþer bataẏle hẏm vel so vaẏr cas.
þo þe duc Wẏllam wuste, þat he was ẏcome neẏ,
A monek he sende hẏm in message, & dude as þe sleẏ,
þat lond, þat hẏm was ẏgẏue, þat he ssolde ẏt vp ȝelde,
Oþer come, & dere em þe rẏȝt myd suerd in þe velde.
ȝẏf he seẏde, þat he nadde non rẏȝt þerto,
þat vp þe pope lokẏnge of Rome he ssolde ẏt do,

And

And he wolde þerto stonde, al clene wyþoute fyȝte,
Wer Seynt Edward yt hym ȝef, & wer he adde þerto ryȝt.
Harald sende hym word aȝen, þat he nolde hym take non lond,
Ne non lokynge of Rome, bote suord & ryȝt honde.
Þo yt oþer ne myȝte be, eyþer in hys syde
Conseylede and ȝarked hem, bataýle vorto abyde.
Þe Englysse al þe nyȝt byuore vaste bygon to synge,
And spende al þe nyȝt in glotonye & in dryngynge.
Þe Normans ne dude noȝt so, ac hii cryde on God vaste,
And ssryue hem ech after oþer, þe wule þe nyȝt ylaste,
And amorwe hem lete aselý wyþ mylde herte ynou.
And saþþe þe duc wyþ hys ost toward þe bataýle drou,
An stounde he gan abyde, & hys knyȝtes rede.
" ȝe knyȝtes," he seyde, " þat bet of so noble dede
" þat nere neuere ouercome, ne ȝoure elderne naþemo,
" Understondeþ of þe kyng of France þat ȝoure elderne dude wo,
" Hou my fader in Parus amydde hys kynedom,
" Myd prowesse of ȝoure faderes myd strengþe hym ouercome.
" Vnderstondeþ hou ȝoure elderne þe kyng nome al so,
" And helde hym vorte he adde amended þat he adde mys do,
" And Rychard, þat was þo a chyld, hii ȝelde Normandye,
" þat was duc her byuore, & to suche maystrie,
" þat at eche parlement, þat he in France were,
" þat he were ygurd wyþ a suerd, þe wule þat he leuede þere,
" þat þe kyng of France ne hys so hardy were,
" þat atte parlement knyf ne suerd bere.
" Vnderstoundeþ eke þe dedes, þat þulke Rychard dude al so,
" þat he ne ouercome noȝt kynges alone, ac ȝut more þerto.

" Ac

" Ac he ouercom þe deuel, & adoun hým caste
" To gadere as hii wrastled, & bond hýs honden vaste
" Bý hynde at hýs rugge. of such prowesse ȝe þenche,
" Ne ssame ȝe noȝt þat Harald, þat euere was of luþer wrenche,
" An býuore ȝou was versuore, þat he wole mýd hýs taýle
" Turne hys wombe toward vs, & hýs face in batayle.
" Vnderstondeþ þe suýkedom, þat hýs fader and he wroȝte,
" And hii þat mýd hým beþ, þo hii to deþe broȝte
" So výllýche Alfred mý cosýn, & ȝoure kunes men also.
" Hou myȝte in ený wýse more ssame be do?
" Monýe, þat dude þulke dede, ȝe mowe here to daý ýseý.
" Hou longe ssolle her luþer heued aboue her ssoldren be?
" Adraweþ ȝoure suerdes, & lokeþ wo maý do best,
" þat me se ȝoure prowesse fram þe Est to þe West.
" Wote awrete þat gèntýl blod, þat so výllýche was ýnome
" Of houre kunes men. vor we mowe wel. vr týme ýs nou ýcome.

þe duc nadde noȝt al ýsed, þat mýd ernest gret
As ys folc wel atyled to þe bataýle sscet.
A sueýn, þat het Taýlefer, smot vorþ byuore þere,
And slou anon a Englysse man, þat a baner bere,
And efsone anoþer baneur, & þe þrýdde almest al so,
Ac hým sulf he was aslawe, ar þe dede were ydo.
þe furst ende of hys ost býuore Harald mýd such gýnne
So þýcke sette, þat non man ne myȝte come wýþynne,
Wýþ stronge targes hem býuore, þat archers ne dude hem noȝt,
So þat Normans were ney to grounde ýbroȝt.
Wyllam byþoȝte an queintyse, & bygan to fle vaste,
And hýs folc vorþ wyþ hým, as hii were agaste,

And